



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

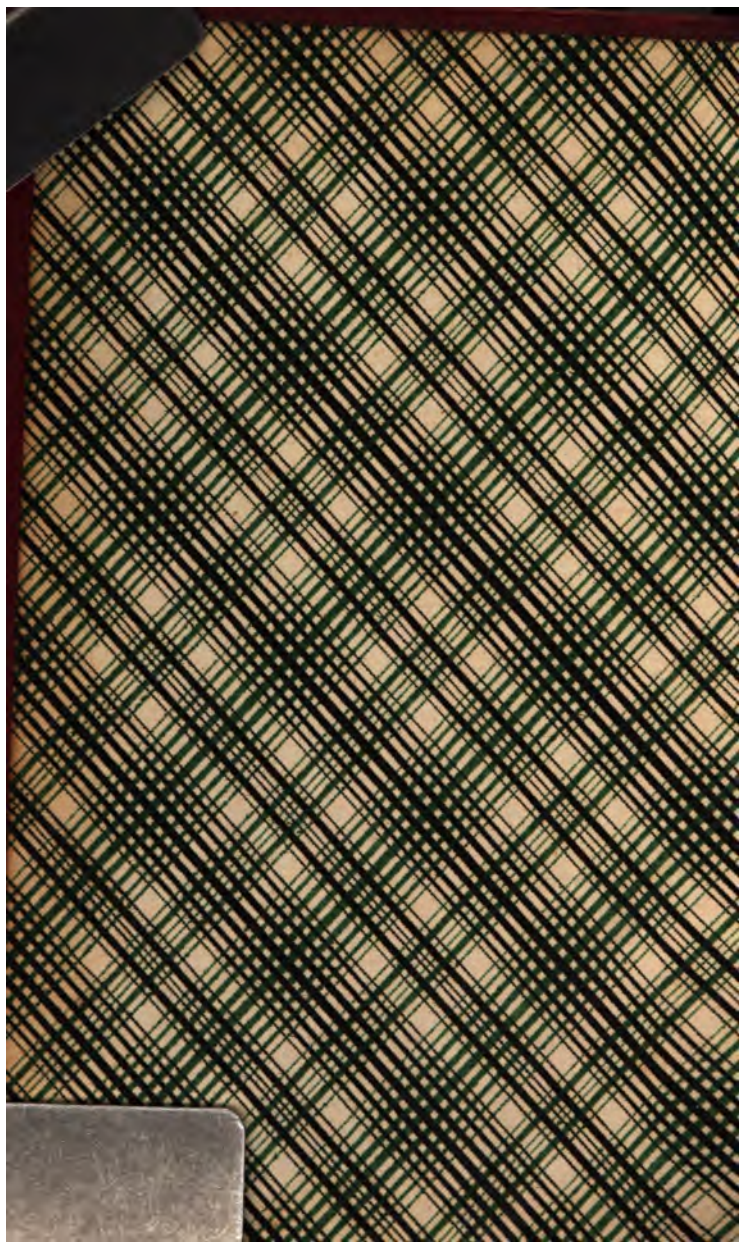
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

GRAMMAR
OF
FRENCH GRAMMARS.



SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.'S SELECT LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

* * S., M., & Co.'s School Catalogue may be had gratis.

LATIN AND GREEK.

ARNOLD'S HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK	1s. 6d.
BLAND'S LATIN HEXAMETERS AND PENTAMETERS...	2s. 6d.
BOSWORTH'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CONSTRUCTING...	2s. 6d.
BOSWORTH'S LATIN CONSTRUCTING	2s. 6d.
BOSWORTH'S ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY, with Eng. Notes	2s. 6d.
CAREY'S LATIN VERSIFICATION SIMPLIFIED	2s. 6d.
CLARKE'S INTRODUCTION TO THE MAKING OF LATIN	2s. 6d.
COOMBIE'S GYMNASIUM, sive SYMBOLA CÆSTRA	2s. 6d.
COWIE'S QUESTIONS ON DITTUS	2s. 6d.
DONNEGAN'S NEW GREEK AND ENGLISH LEXICON	2s. 6d.
EURIPIDES:—THE MEDEA, PHRIGIAN, HECUBE, and	
ORRESTES; POESCH'S Text, with literal translation	
into English Prose. With index to the Medea. By	
T. W. C. EDWARDS, M.A. &c., at Cambridge, &c.	

By the same Author, and on the same Plan, are
1. THE PROMETHEUS UNBOUND, with literal translation
done by EDWARDS, M.A. &c., at Cambridge, &c.
Buck's Text. — 2s. 6d. at Cambridge, &c.

EDWARDS' ACCEPTED FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR	1s. 6d.
EDWARDS' ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY	2s. 6d.
EDWARDS' LATIN INTRODUCTION	2s. 6d.
EDWARDS' SENTENTIAE SELECTAE	2s. 6d.
EDWARDS' ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY	2s. 6d.
EDWARDS' GREEK INTRODUCTION	2s. 6d.
HODGKIN'S SELECTS OF THE GREEK CLASSICS	2s. 6d.
HOOKE'S KEY TO THE GREEK CLASSICS	2s. 6d.
JACOBS' LATIN READER	2s. 6d.
JACOB'S HEBREW AND LATIN GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO THE GREEK CLASSICS	2s. 6d.
SCHREVELL'S GREEK AND LATIN GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
TAYLER'S ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY	2s. 6d.
lated into English	2s. 6d.
VIRGIL'S ÆNEID, with literal translation	2s. 6d.
lation into English Prose	2s. 6d.

FRANCE AND ITALY.

ALLISON'S CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE	1s. 6d.
ALLISON'S LA FRANCE, &c. &c.	2s. 6d.
DOUVILLE'S FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
JORDAN'S GREEK AND LATIN GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
LE NOUVEAU FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
LEVIZAC'S FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
MARTINELLI'S FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
NOERDKE'S GREEK GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
NOERDKE'S LATIN GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
RAEKEN'S FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
VOLTAIRE'S FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.
WANOSTRUP'S FRENCH GRAMMAR	2s. 6d.



SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.'S SELECT LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

* * S., M., & Co.'s School Catalogue may be had gratis.

LATIN AND GREEK.

	s.	d.
ARNOLD'S HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK	12mo.	3 0
BLAND'S LATIN HEXAMETERS AND PENTAMETERS.....	12mo.	3 0
BOSWORTH'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CONSTRUING.....	12mo.	2 6
BOSWORTH'S LATIN CONSTRUING	12mo.	2 6
BOSWORTH'S ETON GREEK GRAMMAR: with Eng. Notes	12mo.	4 0
CAREY'S LATIN VERSIFICATION SIMPLIFIED	12mo.	2 6
CLARKE'S INTRODUCTION TO THE MAKING OF LATIN	12mo.	3 6
CROMBIE'S GYMNASIUM, SIVE SYMBOLA CRITICA	12mo.	6 0
COWIE'S QUESTIONS ON DITTO	12mo.	2 6
DONNEGAN'S NEW GREEK AND ENGLISH LEXICON ..	8vo.	42 0
EURIPIDES:—The MEDEA, PHENISSÆ, HECUBA, and ORESTES; Porson's Text, with literal translation into English Prose. With Index to the Medea. By T. W. C. Edwards, M.A. £1; or separately, each	8vo.	5 0

By the same Author, and on the same Plan, 8vo. 6s. each.
I. THE PROMETHEUS CHAINED OF ÆSCHYLUS; Blomfield's Text.—II. THE AGAMEMNON OF ÆSCHYLUS; Brunck's Text.—III. THE PHILOCTETES OF SOPHOCLES; Brunck's Text.—IV. THE ALCESTIS OF EURIPIDES; Monck's Text.

EDWARDS' ACCENTED ETON LATIN GRAMMAR	12mo.	2 6
EDWARDS' ETON LATIN ACCIDENCE	12mo.	1 0
EDWARDS' LATIN DELECTUS	12mo.	2 6
EDWARDS' SENTENTIE SELECTÆ.....	12mo.	2 6
EDWARDS' EXEMPLA GRÆCÆ MINORA	12mo.	2 6
EDWARDS' GREEK DELECTUS	12mo.	3 6
HODGKIN'S SKETCH OF THE GREEK ACCIDENCE	8vo.	3 0
HOOKE'S KEY TO THE GREEK TESTAMENT	12mo.	3 6
JACOBS' LATIN READER. Part I. 12mo. 2s. 6d.; Part II. 12mo. 3 0		
JACOB'S BROMSGROVE LATIN GRAMMAR	12mo.	4 0
MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX	12mo.	3 0
SCHREVELIUS' GREEK AND ENGLISH LEXICON (Valpy's) ..	8vo.	15 0
TAYLER'S ETON GREEK GRAMMAR, literally trans- lated into English	12mo.	4 0
VIRGIL'S BUCOLICS, Heyne's Text; with literal trans- lation into Eng. Prose. By T. W. C. Edwards, M.A. 1m. 8vo. 8 0		

SPANISH AND ITALIAN.

FRIEND	18mo.	2 0
HAISE; Vocabulary, &c. ..	18mo.	2 0
CH GRAMMAR	Cr. 8vo.	7 6
COPIES	Oblong	1 0
VERBS	On a large Sheet	3 0
DE NOTRE SEIGNEUR	12mo.	4 0
ENGLISH DICTIONARY	12mo.	9 0
AND FRENCH DICTIONARY Small	8vo.	10 6
GRAMMAR	12mo.	7 6
ES FOR WRITING GERMAN	12mo.	6 6
MAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY	18mo.	7 0
RE DE CHARLES XII. Par Catty ..	12mo.	4 0
FRENCH GRAMMAR. By J. C. Tarver ..	12mo.	4 0

45. 319.

NEW
GRAMMAR
OF
FRENCH GRAMMARS,
COMPRISING
THE SUBSTANCE OF ALL THE MOST APPROVED
FRENCH GRAMMARS EXTANT,
BUT MORE ESPECIALLY OF THE
STANDARD WORK "LA GRAMMAIRE DES GRAMMAIRES,"
SANCTIONED BY THE FRENCH ACADEMY AND THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS.
WITH
NUMEROUS EXERCISES AND EXAMPLES, ILLUSTRATIVE
OF EVERY RULE.

For the Use of Schools and Private Students.

BY M. DE FIVAS,
FRENCH MASTER IN THE ROYAL HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH,
CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE GRAMMATICAL SOCIETY OF PARIS, &c.

It lets you see with one cast of the eye the *substance* of a hundred pages.
(*Addition.*)
La Langue française ne saurait être désormais étrangère à aucun homme
civilisé.
(*Préface du Dict. de l'Acad. française.*)

FIFTH EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED BY
SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO., STATIONERS' COURT;
OLIVER & BOYD, AND W. WHYTE & CO. EDINBURGH;
W. CURRY, JUN^R. & CO. DUBLIN;

AND TO BE HAD OF EVERY BOOKSELLER IN
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

M DCCC XLV.

[Price Three Shillings and Sixpence bound.]



...a few of the numerous literary
notices of this Work:—

...most complete Grammar of the French Language.
...almost as if he looked into a map, so well-defined
...by M. De Fivas."—(*Scottish Lit. Gazette.*)

...systematic and distinct that we have seen:—the
...clear and precise in its definitions; and the
...most appropriate and useful.—(*Edin. Chronicle.*)

...the clearest, most concise, philosophical, and satis-
...—(*Edinburgh Journal.*)

...and the Exercises judiciously selected.
...introduced with advantage into every School where the
...are studied."—(*Edinburgh Advertiser.*)

...of this work are, its embodiment of the latest
...of the French language. In the writing and ar-
...M. De Fivas has displayed great skill."—(*Scotsman.*)

...and comprehensive. It contains the latest
...French academicians."—(*Gateshead Observer.*)

...and clear to the most obtuse understanding;
...being individually easily understood, and conse-
...the pupil step by step to a thorough acquaint-

...the best recommendations of this well-written
...orthography and practice of the language
...to be the case with 595 out of the

...are admirable. We cordially recommend it
...cannot fail to secure it an established

...the best French Grammar we have ever met
...to a thorough knowledge of the lan-

...to give "everything useful and nothing
...our examination has gone, he appears
...and every one of them copiously illus-

...IN STATIONERS' HALL.

PREFACE

TO THE FIRST EDITION.

Presque partout, deux hommes d'esprit, de nation diverse,
qui se rencontrent, s'accordent à parler français.—
(*Préf. du Dict. de l'Acad. franç.*)

WE read, in a recent London publication, that there are about six hundred French Grammars for the use of English students. Now, *How many of these exhibit the orthography and rules of the language as they are fixed at the present day?* The impossibility of satisfactorily answering this question, first suggested to me the idea of producing a work that should embody the latest decisions of the French Academy, with the most lucid and concise rules of the most approved modern French Grammarians. The single fact of the French Academy having lately published a new edition of their Dictionary, generally revised and greatly enlarged, shows in an obvious point of view the call that is made for a new and improved French Grammar.

The French Academicians are the first literary body in France; their Dictionary is the regulator of the French language, and in jurisprudence it stands as a law. The preceding edition of this learned work appeared in 1762. When the first Revolution broke out, the Convention seized the copyright of it as national property, and appointed the Parisian booksellers, Smith and Maradan, to re-publish the work, which they did in 1798; that edition, however, is not authentic, and was never acknowledged by the Academy.

Since 1762, the French language has undergone many changes and modifications. Some words have become obsolete, and some old ones have been revived. The new political institutions have

also exercised great influence over the art of speaking; moreover, the rapid advances in the Arts and Sciences have enriched the language with many new terms, the most useful of which are interspersed throughout the examples and exercises of this work.

Among other improvements, the French Academicians have now sanctioned the orthography called "of Voltaire";* that is, the substitution of *a* instead of *o*, in the words, *faible*, *monnaie*, *connaître*, *paraître*, *Français*, *Anglais*, &c., and in the termination of the Imperfects and Conditionals of all verbs; as, *je voulais*, *je voudrais*, &c. They have likewise decided, that words terminating in *ant* or *ent*, such as *puissant*, *élément*, &c., should retain the *t* in the plural: *puissants*, *éléments*, &c.

My plan, in this publication, has been to give every thing useful, and nothing superfluous.† I have studied to make the definitions at once clear and precise, that they may be readily understood and easily retained. When I judged it necessary, I have also presented the rules in a new light, in order to adapt them to the capacity of youthful students. I have further

* This orthography had fallen into general oblivion, from the death of Voltaire till 1790, when a reviser of the press, named Colas, in the office of the *Moniteur*, took it into his head to introduce it in that newspaper. Those curious as to this fact can easily ascertain, that on the 31st October 1790, in the *Moniteur*, as everywhere else, *avoit*, *prouvoit*, &c., were printed with an *o*; and that the change of the *o* into *a* took place next day.

† Some grammarians devote fifty pages to the declensions of nouns and pronouns, while the French language has no declension.‡ Many encroach on the province of the Teacher, and encumber their pages by giving a repetition of all the conjugations interrogatively and negatively, when one, as a model, is quite sufficient. Others, give elaborate treatises on pronunciation, which can never be properly learned from books, and are quite unnecessary, since a good French Teacher can now be found in every town and village of the United Kingdom, from whom more knowledge of pronunciation will be obtained in one lesson than in one year from all the books ever published on this subject.

‡ La Langue française n'a point, et ne peut avoir, de déclinaisons; on doit purger nos Grammaires de tout ce fatras, de toutes ces superfluités qui sont plus propres à nuire qu'à servir à l'intelligence de la Langue.

DEMANDRE, *Dict. de l'Elocution française*.

PREFACE.

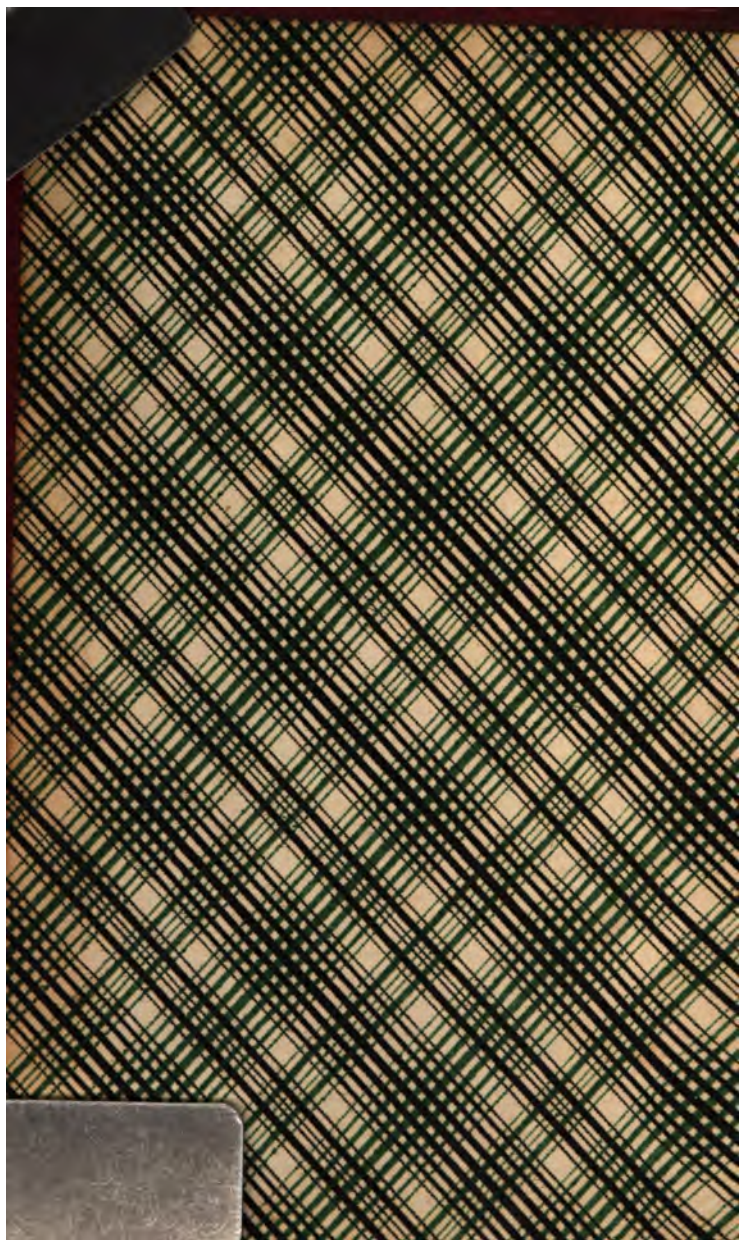
v

endeavoured to arrange and distribute the matter, so as to embrace, within a narrow compass, much more information than is usually found in grammatical class-books. Indeed, there is not a useful Rule or Observation in the largest grammar in print that is not to be found in this.

The *Exercises* illustrate every thing that can be reduced to rules in the French language. This branch of the work has, for several years, engaged my special attention. The phraseology is all founded on the highest French classical authorities; and, although a few sentences in this, may perhaps be met with in former grammars, it is not from that source that they have been selected, but from the productions of the French Academy, of Bossuet, Fénelon, Buffon, or other authors who have written with purity and elegance. Moreover, it has been my study throughout, to introduce in the Exercises, a moral precept, an historical or a geographical fact, or a conversational phrase; and thus to impart useful information along with grammatical rules.

This is not a bookselling speculation, which will account for the reasonableness of the price; but the careful production of a Teacher, anxious to have, without any other view, a textbook after his own mind, embodying those rules and remarks, which, from long experience in tuition, he has found to be most effectual in accelerating and perfecting the study of the French language.

This Grammar, though only now offered to the public in a complete state, may be said to be fully established. It has gone through three editions in parts, and in that form has obtained, the Author gratefully acknowledges, numerous literary recommendations, and the approval of the most eminent French Masters in all parts of the British empire.



*** S., M., & Co.'s School Catalogue may be had gratis.

12

[illegible]

1.570. 8 0

12mo. 2	0
12mo. 2	0
Cr. Av. 7	6
Along 1	6
new Sheet 2	9
12mo. 4	0
12mo. 3	0
all Av. 10	6
12mo. 7	6
12mo. 6	6
12mo. 7	0
12mo. 4	0
12mo. 4	0

OF CHARACTERS AND MARKS.

THE orthographical signs used in the French language are, — the *accents*, the *apostrophe*, the *hyphen*, the *dialysis* or *dialysis*, the *cedilla*, the *parenthesis*, and the different marks of *punctuation*.

OF ACCENTS.

Accents are small marks placed upon vowels, either to point out their true pronunciation, or to distinguish the meaning of one word from that of another which is spelt alike, but has a different meaning.

There are three accents in the French language, — the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

The *acute* accent (') is never used but over the vowel *e*, as in *vérité*, truth ; *été*, summer.

The *grave* accent (`) is used over the vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *voilà*, there is ; *père*, father ; *règle*, rule.

The grave accent is placed —

Over the preposition *à*, to, in order to distinguish it from the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, *il a*, he has ;

Over the adverb *là*, there, to distinguish it from the article *la*, the, or the pronoun *la*, her, it ;

Over the adverb or pronoun *où*, (where, in which, to which, etc.), to distinguish it from the conjunction *ou*, or ;

Over the preposition *dès*, from, since, to distinguish it from the compound article *des*, of the, some.

The *circumflex* accent (^) is used with any of the vowels, the sound of which it always lengthens ; as in *âge*, age ; *tête*, head ; *épître*, epistle ; *dôme*, cupola ; *flûte*, flute.

The circumflex accent is placed —

Over the adjective *sûr*, sure, to distinguish it from the preposition *sur*, upon ;

Over the adjective *mûr*, ripe, to distinguish it from the substantive *mur*, wall ;

Over *dû*, participle past of *devoir*, to owe, to distinguish it from the compound article *du*, of the, some; but the accent is only used in the singular masculine of the participle, as there can be no mistake in the feminine singular, nor in the plural of either gender;

Over *tû*, participle past of *taire*, to be silent, to distinguish it from the pronoun *tu*, thou;

Over *crû*, participle past of *croître*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, participle past of *croire*, to believe.

OF THE APOSTROPHE.

The *Apostrophe* is a small mark in the form of a comma ('), which is placed over the line between two letters, to denote the elision or suppression of a vowel at the end of one word before another beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, as in *l'ame*, the soul; *l'homme*, the man; instead of *la ame*, *le homme*.

A, E, I, are the only vowels liable to be thus cut off.

The A is suppressed only in *la*, article or pronoun.

The I suffers elision only in the conjunction *si* (if) before the pronoun *il* and its plural *ils*, but never before *elle* or *elles*, or any other word whatever.

The elision of the E occurs, not only in the masculine article and pronoun *le*, but also in the monosyllables *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *ce*, *de*, *ne*, *que*, and moreover: —

1. In *jusque*, before *à*, *au*, *aux*, *ici*.

2. In *puisque* and *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, *une*, or a word with which these conjunctions are immediately connected; as—*Puisqu'ainsi est*.—*Puisqu'il le veut*.—*Quoiqu'elle soit*.

However we write: — *Puisque aider les malheureux est un devoir*. — *Quoique un peu fier*. — *Quoique étranger*. — *Quoique invisibles, il est toujours deux témoins qui nous regardent: Dieu et la conscience*.

3. In *quelque*, before *un*, *une*; as, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*; and also in *quel qu'il soit*, *quelle qu'elle soit*.

4. In *presque*, in the compound word *presqu'île*; and likewise in *grande*, in the words *grand'mère*, and *grand'tante*.

4 OF THE HYPHEN, DIÆRESIS, AND CEDILLA.

But no elision of the *a* or *e* takes place in *le, la, de, ce, que*, before *oui, huit, huitième, onze, and onzième*; neither in the pronouns *le* or *la*, after a verb in the imperative mood, nor in the adverb *là*: so we say, *le oui et le non; le huit ou le onze du mois; menez-le à Paris; ira-t-il là avec vous?*

The final *e* of the preposition *entre* is retained before the pronouns *eux, elles*, and before *autres*; but it is always retrenched when *entre* forms a compound word with another word beginning with a vowel; as—*entr'acte, s'entr'aider, s'entr'accuser, entr'ouïr, entr'ouïr*.

OF THE HYPHEN.

The *Hyphen* (in French *tiret* or *trait d'union*) is a short horizontal line, thus —, which is used principally in connecting compound words, and between a verb and a pronoun, when a question is asked, as in *arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow; *chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece; *parlez-vous?* do you speak? *avez-vous?* have you?

OF THE DIÆRESIS OR DIALYSIS.

The *Diæresis* (in French *tréma* or *diérèse*) is a mark of two points, thus ~, put over the vowels *e, i, u*, to intimate that they form a distinct syllable from the vowels that precede them, as in the words *ciguë*, hemlock; *Moïse*, Moses; *Saül*, Saul; which are pronounced *Ci-gu-e, Mo-ise, Sa-ul*.

OF THE CEDILLA.

The *Cedilla* is a kind of comma placed under the letter *c*, when it is to be pronounced like *s*, before the vowels *a, o, u*, as in *Français*, French; *garçon*, boy; *reçu*, received.

All other marks and characters used in writing French are the same as in English.

OF NUMBER.

THERE are two numbers in French ; the *singular* and the *plural*. The singular refers to one person or thing, and the plural refers to more than one.

OF CASES.

THERE are no *Cases*, and consequently no declensions in the French language ; and the Grammarians who have admitted some, have failed in accuracy. We express by prepositions, and especially by *de* (of or from), and *à* (to or at), the relations which the Greeks and the Romans marked by the different terminations of their nouns.

OF GENDER.

THE French language has only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*. The gender of *animate* or *living* beings presents no difficulty, as all males are *masculine*, and all females are *feminine* ; but it is only by practice that one can learn the gender of *inanimate* objects, and of animals whose names are the same for the male and female, such as *éléphant*, an elephant ; *buffle*, a buffalo ; *cygne*, a swan ; *perdreix*, a partridge ; *baleine*, a whale ; *truite*, a trout ; *saumon*, a salmon.

It is not possible to give general and precise rules by means of which one may, on every occasion, distinguish, by the mere aspect of a substantive, of what gender it is. Several Grammarians, however, have given treatises on the genders ; but, those treatises are extremely incomplete ; some of their rules are vague, and above all liable to a great many exceptions. The truth is, the perfect knowledge of the gender of substantives can only be the work of time. It is by reading with attention, and by having recourse, in cases of doubt, to

dictionaries, that one will acquire insensibly a complete acquaintance with the genders. Nevertheless in cases of doubt, and in the absence of a dictionary, it may be of some practical utility to know that about nine tenths of nouns ending in *e* not accented are feminine; the final *e* mute being, in French, the distinctive mark of the feminine gender. Nouns ending in *ion* are also for the most part feminine.

To the student who understands Latin, perhaps it may not be unimportant to know, that of nouns derived from that language, those from feminine nouns are mostly feminine, and those from masculine or neuter nouns, masculine; as *foi* from *fides*, *loi* from *lex*, *fourni* from *formica*, *génie* from *genius*, *collège* from *collegium*, *poème* from *poëma*, *incendie* from *incendium*, &c.

We have generally marked the gender of Nouns in the Exercises throughout this work, in order to facilitate the acquirement of this part of French Grammar.

Note.—Since writing the above, and its going through several editions, there has appeared in London a valuable work on the French language, with the following remarks on Gender:—

“The French language has no neuter; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine. Foreigners experience great difficulty in that respect, for, as the article, pronoun, and adjective which refer to a noun, must agree with it in *gender*, as well as in *number*, much attention must be paid to ascertain the former. To enable them to do this, *no general rules can efficiently be given*, on account of the numberless exceptions which occur. We think that *practice* and *ear* are the safest and most correct guides which can be followed, and, in fact, they are the only ones which the French themselves have, who hardly ever make a mistake, if we except the uneducated.

“The French call the termination in an *e* mute, a feminine termination; any other is called masculine. This distinction arises probably from the circumstance that most nouns of the feminine gender end with an *e* mute; thus, *la table*, *la rue*, *la plante*, *la tête*, *la fenêtre*, *la chambre*; but to this general rule there are innumerable exceptions.”

PART I.

THERE are, in French, nine sorts of words, or, as they are commonly called, PARTS OF SPEECH; namely,

1. ARTICLE.	4. PRONOUN.	7. PREPOSITION.
2. SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN.	5. VERB.	8. CONJUNCTION.
3. ADJECTIVE.	6. ADVERB.	9. INTERJECTION.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ARTICLE.

The *Article* is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends.

The French article is *le, la, les*, the.

As the French language has borrowed much from the Latin, there is every reason to think that we have formed our *le* and our *la* from the pronoun *ille, illa, illud*. From the last syllable of the masculine word *ille*, we have made *le*; and from the last syllable of the feminine *illa*, we have made *la*; it is thus also that from the first syllable of that word, we have made our pronoun *il* (he), which we use with verbs, as likewise from the feminine *illa* we have made *elle* (she).

We use *le* before substantives masculine in the singular; *la* before substantives feminine, also in the singular; and, as the letter *s*, in the French language, is the sign of the plural when it is added to the singular, we have formed *les* from the singular *le*. *Les* serves equally for both genders.

When *le* or *la* comes before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the *e* or *a* is cut off, and an apostrophe is put instead of the letter omitted. (See page 3.)

From the foregoing remarks it follows that the learner is to translate the English article

The, by: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{le} \text{ before a noun masculine singular.} \\ \textit{la} \text{ before a noun feminine singular.} \\ \textit{l'} \text{ before a noun, either masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or } h \text{ mute.} \\ \textit{les} \text{ before any noun in the plural.} \end{array} \right.$

A or *an* is translated by: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{un} \text{ before a noun masculine.} \\ \textit{une} \text{ before a noun feminine.} \end{array} \right.$

The English prepositions *to* and *at* are generally rendered in French by *à*; and *of* and *from* by *de*, or *d'* if the word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

EXERCISE I.

The father. — *The mother.* — *The children.* — *The brother.* —
père m. *mère f.* *enfants pl.* *frère m.*

The sister. — *The uncle.* — *The aunt.* — *The relations.* — *A son.* —
sœur f. *oncle m.* *tante f.* *parents pl.* *fils m.*

A daughter. — *The man.* — *The women.* — *A boy.* —
filie f. *homme h.m.* *femmes pl.* *garçon m.*

The day. — *The night.* — *The sun.* — *The moon.* — *The*
jour m. *nuît f.* *soleil m.* *lune f.*

stars. — *A history.* — *The school.* — *A book.* — *The page.*
étoiles pl. *histoire f.* *école f.* *livre m.* *page f.*

CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLE.

Whenever the prepositions *à* (*to* or *at*) or *de* (*of* or *from*) precede the article *le* before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated, we contract *à le* into *au*, and *de le* into *du*; and before plural nouns of either gender, *à les* is changed into *aux*, and *de les* into *des*.

A and *de* are not contracted with *le* before nouns which begin with a vowel or *h* mute, but then the article suffers elision.

Nor are *à* and *de* ever contracted with *la*.

The learner will therefore translate

To the, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{au} \\ \textit{à la} \\ \textit{, '} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant, or } h \text{ aspirated.} \\ \text{before a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant, or } h \text{ aspirated.} \\ \text{before a noun masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel, or } h \text{ mute.} \\ \text{before any noun in the plural.} \end{array} \right.$
or
at the,
by:

Of the, or from the, by :	{	du	{ before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated.
		de la	{ before a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated.
		de l'	{ before a noun masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute.
		des	{ before any noun in the plural.

To a, to an,
at a, at an
are translated by: { à un before a noun masculine.
à une before a noun feminine.

Of or from a
or an, by: { d'un before a noun masculine.
d'une before a noun feminine.

EXERCISE II.

To the king.—To the queen.—To the hero. — To the scholars.—
roi m. reine f. héros h asp. écoliers pl.
Of the master.—Of the house.—Of the church.—Of the coat. —
maître m. maison f. église f. habit h m.
Of the curtains.—To a dictionary.—Of a grammar.—To a pen.—
rideaux pl. dictionnaire m. grammaire f. plume f.
Of a penknife.—At the hotel.—From the garden.—To the
canif m. hôtel h m. jardin m.
town.—Of the harp. — To a watch. — From a clock. —
ville f. harpe f. h asp. montre f. horloge f.
Of the ladies.—At an inn.—From a village to a town.
dames pl. auberge f. — m.

GENERAL RULES ON THE ARTICLE.

I. The article must always agree in gender and number with its noun.

II. The article and the prepositions *à* and *de*, whether contracted or not, are generally repeated in French before every substantive, although often omitted in English.

• EXAMPLE.

Le lis est le symbole de la candeur, de l'innocence et de la pureté.	The lily is the emblem of candour, innocence and purity.
---	---

EXERCISE III.

The lion is the king of animals. — The rose is the
— m. est roi m. art. animaux pl. — f.

queen of flowers. — Idleness is the mother of all
reine f. art. fleurs pl. art. paresse f. mère f. de tous
 vices.—The love of life is natural to man. —
art. — pl. amour m. art. vie f. naturel art. homme h.m.
 She (is learning) drawing, music, and dancing.—
Elle apprend art. dessin m. art. musique f. et art. danse f.
 I write to the nephew and niece.—The Creator of
J'écris neveu m. pr. art. nièce f. Créateur m.
 heaven and earth. — The vigour of mind
art. ciel m. pr. art. terre f. vigueur f. art. esprit m.
 and body. — The fox is the emblem of cunning.
pr. art. corps m. renard m. emblème m. art. ruse f.

III. OF THE ARTICLE *du, de la, de l', des*, USED IN A PARTITIVE SENSE, *i. e.* implying a part, not the whole.

Du for the masculine, *de la* for the feminine, *de l'* before a vowel or *h* mute, *des* for the plural, answering to the English partitive words *SOME* or *ANY* expressed or *understood*, must be repeated before every noun in French.

EXAMPLES.

Envoyez-moi <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande, et <i>des</i> raisins.	<i>Send me some bread, meat, and grapes.</i>
Avez-vous <i>de la</i> monnaie ?	<i>Have you any change ?</i>

EXERCISE IV.

Give me *some* paper, ink, and pens. — Take
Donnez-moi papier m. encre f. et plumes pl. Prenez
some tea or coffee. — Put in *some* sugar and cream.—
thé m. ou café m. Mettez-y sucre m. crème f.
 Offer him *some* cheese, eggs, butter, and milk. —
Offrez-lui fromage m. œufs pl. beurre m. lait m.
 Drink *some* wine, *some* beer, or *some* water. — Eat
Buvez vin m. bière f. eau f. Mangez
some hash. — Bring me *some* oil, mustard,
hachis m. h asp. Apportez-moi . huile h.m. moutarde f.
 pepper, and salt. — Have you *any* money? — Has she *any*
potre m. sel m. Avez-vous argent m. A-t-elle
 wool or thread?—Is there *any* ripe fruit in the garden?
laine f. fil m. Y a-t-il ²mûr ¹—m. dans jardin m.
 Yes; there are apricots, peaches, pears, and apples.
il y a abricots, pêches, poires, pommes.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the name of any person or thing that exists, or of which we have any notion: as, *Alexandre*, Alexander; *Londres*, London; *homme*, man; *vertu*, virtue.

Substantives are either *proper* or *common*.

The substantive *proper*, or *proper name*, is the name appropriated to one person, or one thing only: as, *Bonaparte*, *Paris*.

The *common* noun is that which belongs to persons, or things of the same kind: as, *homme*, man; *arbre*, tree; which appellation equally suits all men, all trees.

Among common nouns, we must distinguish the *collective nouns*; so called, because, although used in the singular number, they present to the mind the idea of several persons or things.

Collective nouns are divided into *general* and *partitive*. The former express a whole body: as, *armée*, army; *forêt*, forest. The latter express only a partial number: as, *multitude*, a multitude; *quantité*, a quantity.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF
FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

THE plural of Substantives, either masculine or feminine, is formed by adding an *s* to the singular; as,

le père,	<i>the father.</i>	les pères,	<i>the fathers.</i>
la mère,	<i>the mother.</i>	les mères,	<i>the mothers.</i>
l'enfant,	<i>the child.</i>	les enfants,	<i>the children.</i>
le moment,	<i>the moment.</i>	les moments,*	<i>the moments.</i>

* It was formerly the practice to leave out the *t* in the plural of substantives and adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent*, but at present the adjective *tout* (all) is the only word that drops the *t* in the plural masculine; as,

Tous les parents.

Tous les habitants.—(*L'Académie.*)

All the relations.

All the inhabitants.

To *tout* might be added *gent*, plural *gens*; but *gent* singular is only used in familiar poetry; as, *la gent marécageuse*, the marshy tribe.

EXCEPTIONS.

1st EXCEPTION. — Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural; as,

le lis,	<i>the lily.</i>	les lis.	<i>the lilies.</i>
la voix,	<i>the voice.</i>	les voix,	<i>the voices.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>	les nez,	<i>the noses.</i>

EXERCISE V.

The *trees* of their *orchards*. — The *flowers* of our *gardens*. —
arbre leurs verger fleur nos jardin
 The *palaces* of the *kings*. — Buy me four *pounds* of *walnuts*.
palais roi Achetez-moi quatre livre noix
 — The *fashions* of the *French*. — The *crosses* of the *knight*. —
mode Français croix chevalier
 The *laws* of those *countries*. — The *movements* of the *armies*. —
loi ces pays mouvement armée
 The *spoons* and *forks* are on the table. — He has
cuisse et art. fourchette sont sur — f. Il a
 three *sons* and two *daughters*. — The *lilies* of the *fields*.
trois fils deux fille p. 9 champ

2d EXCEPTION. — Nouns ending in the singular in *au*, *eu*, *œu*, or *ou*, take an *x* instead of an *s* in the plural; as,

chapeau,	<i>hat.</i>	chapeaux,	<i>hats.</i>
jeu,	<i>game.</i>	jeux,	<i>games.</i>
vœu,	<i>vow.</i>	vœux,	<i>vows.</i>
bijou,	<i>jewel.</i>	bijoux,	<i>jewels.</i>
hibou,	<i>owl.</i>	hiboux,	<i>owls.</i>

The following words in *ou*, conform to the general rule, taking an *s* in the plural:

clou,	<i>nail.</i>	sou,	<i>penny.</i>
filou,	<i>pickpocket.</i>	trou,	<i>hole.</i>
fou,	<i>fool.</i>	verrou,	<i>bolt.</i>
licou,	<i>halter.</i>		

EXERCISE VI.

A *fleet* of twenty *ships*. — The *boats* of the *sailors*. —
flotte f. vingt vaisseau bateau matelot
 He (found himself) between two *fires*. — *Owls* are
Il se trouva entre deux feu art. hibou sont
hideous birds. — The *knives* are on the *sideboard*. —
pr. art. hideux 'oiseau couteau sur buffet m.
 (There are) many *pickpockets* in *London* and *Paris*. —
Il y a beaucoup de filou à Londres et à —

Fill up those *holes*. — Give him six *pence*. — Our doors
Remplissez ces trous *Donnez-lui* — *sou* *Nos portes*
 have *bolts*. — He has sold the *pictures* and the *jewels*.
ont pr. art. verrou *vendu* *tableau*

3d EXCEPTION. — The most part of nouns ending in *al* or *ail* in the singular, form their plural by changing the final *al* or *ail* into *aux*; as,

canal,	canal.	canaux,	canals.
hôpital,	hospital.	hôpitaux,	hospitals.
travail,	work.	travaux,	works.

The following nouns in *al* and *ail* take an *s* in the plural:

attirail,	apparatus, implements.	éventail,	fan.
bal,	ball.	gouvernail,	helm, rudder.
carnaval,	carnival.	portail,	the gate of a church.
détail,	particulars.	régail,	treat.

THE FOLLOWING NOUNS ARE IRREGULAR:

Singular.	Meaning.	Plural.
	Heaven,	cieux.
ciel	{ skies in painting; the top of a bed; the	cieux.
	{ sky under which a country lies,	
œil	eye,	yeux.

(Small round or oval windows are called *œils-de-bœuf*.)

aincul	{ paternal and maternal grandfathers,	ainculs.
	{ ancestors, those who preceded our grandfathers,	ainculs.
ail	garlic,	ails.

Bétail, subst. masc. sing., and *Bestiaux*, subst. masc. pl., are synonymous, both meaning *cattle*.

EXERCISE VII.

The *horses* of the *generals*. — The *marshals* of France. —
cheval *général* *maréchal* —

The English *admirals*. — These *corals* are beautiful. — The *balls*
anglais *amiral* *Ces corail sont superbes.* *bal*

of the nobility. — He sells *fans*. — Our Saviour
noblesse f. *Il vend* *pr. art. éventail* *Notre Sauveur*

ascended into *heaven* in presence of his disciples. — Open
monta *à art. ciel pl. en présence de ses* — *Ouvrez*

your *eyes*. — She has the portraits of her two *grandfathers*.
** art. œil* *Elle a* — *ses deux aïeul*

— His *forefathers* have filled high stations.
aïeul *ont rempli de grandes charges.*

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

THE *Adjective* is a word which expresses a particular quality or distinction ascribed to a substantive.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, person ; or *chose*, thing. Thus, *fidèle*, faithful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say, *une personne fidèle*, a faithful person ; *une chose agréable*, an agreeable thing.

In English, the adjectives never vary on account of gender and number, but in French they change their termination, in order to agree, in gender and number, with the substantives to which they relate.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an *e* mute to the masculine singular ; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
prudent,	prudente,	<i>prudent.</i>	petit,	petite,	<i>little.</i>
grand,	grande,	<i>great.</i>	joli,	jolie,	<i>pretty.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

1st EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *e* mute do not change their termination in the feminine ; as,

un homme aimable, an amiable man.	une femme aimable, an amiable woman.
un jeune garçon, a young boy.	une jeune fille, a young girl.

EXERCISE VIII.

Their house. is *small*, but it is well *situated*. —
Leur maison f. est petit mais elle est bien situé
 That street is narrow and dark. — The meat is cold ; the
Cette rue f. étroit et obscur viande f. froid
 water is hot. — This pear (is not) ripe. — Avoid
eau f. chaud Cette poire f. n'est pas mûr Evitez

bad company. — (She is) a *clever* woman. — She
 art. *mauvais* *compagnie* f. *C'est* *habile* *femme*. *Elle*
 has a *black* gown and a *red* scarf. — The *eldest* sister
 a ²*noir* ¹*robe* f. ²*rouge* ¹*écharpe* f. ²*ainé* ¹*sœur*
 is *prudent*, *well-informed*, *rich*, and *pretty*.
 — *bien instruit* *riche* *joli*

2d EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *f* change that letter into *ve* for the feminine; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
actif,	active.	neuf,	neuve, <i>new</i> .
bref,	brève, <i>brief</i> , <i>short</i> .	vif,	vive, <i>lively</i> .

3d EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *x* change the *x* into *se*; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
heureux,	heureuse, <i>happy</i> .	paresseux,	paresseuse, <i>idle</i> .
jalous,	jalouse, <i>jealous</i> .	vertueux,	vertueuse, <i>virtuous</i> .

The following in *x* form their feminine thus :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
doux,	douce, <i>sweet</i> , <i>mild</i> .	roux,	rousse, <i>red</i> .
faux,	fausse, <i>false</i> .	vieux,	vieille, <i>old</i> .

EXERCISE IX.

Is she *attentive*? — Catherine de Médicis was *ambitious*,
Est-elle *attentif* — — — *était ambitieux*
imperious, and *superstitious*; she was a *native* of Florence. —
impérieux et superstitieux * *natif de* —

Joshua (brought down) the walls of the *proud* Jericho. —
Josué *fit tomber* *mur* *orgueilleux Jéricho* f.

The Italian language is *sweet* and *harmonious*. — That
²*italienne* ¹*langue* f. *doux* *harmonieux* *Cette*
news is *false*. — The *new* tower is in the *old* town.
nouvelle f. *faux* ²*neuf* ¹*tour* f. *dans* *vieux* *ville* f.

4th EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*, *on*, and *et*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant, and adding an *e* mute after it; as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
cruel,	cruelle, <i>cruel</i> .	chrétien,	chrétienne, <i>Christian</i> .
pareil,	pareille <i>similar</i> .	bon,	bonne, <i>good</i> .
ancien,	ancienne, <i>ancient</i> .	net,	nette, <i>clean</i> .

The following adjectives follow the *general rule*, except in the additional accent :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
complet,	complète,	<i>complete.</i>
incomplet,	incomplète,	<i>incomplete.</i>
discret,	discrète,	<i>discreet.</i>
indiscret,	indiscrète,	<i>indiscreet.</i>
inquiet,	inquiète,	<i>uneasy.</i>
prêt,	prête,	<i>ready.</i>
secret,	secrète,	<i>secret.</i>

EXERCISE X.

The soul is *immortal*.—I (am reading) *ancient* history.—
am f. est immortel Je lis art. 2 ancien 1 histoire f. h m.
 We are in the nineteenth century of the *Christian*
Nous sommes dans dix-neuvième siècle m. 2 chrétien
 era. — She (is not) pretty, but she is *good*. — That poor
1 ère f. Elle n'est pas joli mais est bon Cette pauvre
 woman is *dumb*. — Are you *ready*, sister? — Your mother is
femme muet Etes-vous prêt ma sœur? Votre mère
 very *uneasy*. — That person is extremely *indiscreet*.
très inquiet personne f. extrêmement indiscret

5th EXCEPTION.— Adjectives ending in *eur*, formed from a participle present by the change of *ant* into *eur*, make *euse* in the feminine ; as,

<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
connaissant,	connaissanceur,	connaissanceuse,	<i>knowing, a judge.</i>
flattant,	flatteur,	flatteuse,	<i>flattering, a flatterer.</i>
mentant,	menteur,	menteuse,	<i>lying, a liar.</i>
trompant,	trompeur,	trompeuse,	<i>deceiving, deceitful.</i>

OBSERVATION.— Words of this sort are real adjectives, but are for the most part used as substantives. About a hundred follow this rule.

The following must be excepted, forming their feminine by the change of *eur* into *eresse* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
demandeur,	demanderesse,	<i>a plaintiff.</i>
défendeur,	défenderesse,	<i>a defendant.</i>
enchanteur,	enchanteresse,	<i>enchanting.</i>
pécheur,	pécheresse,	<i>a sinner.</i>
vengeur,	vengeresse,	<i>avenging, an avenger.</i>

Inventeur, an inventor; *inspecteur*, an inspector; *persécuteur*, a persecutor, make, in the feminine, *inventrice*, *inspectrice*, and *persécutrice*.

As to the adjectives, or rather substantives used adjectively, ending in *teur*, which, though derived from verbs, are not formed from a participle present, by the change of *ant* into *eur*, they change *teur* into *trice* for the feminine; as,

Masc.	Fem.	
accusateur,	accusatrice,	an accuser.
bienfaiteur,	bienfaitrice,	a benefactor, a benefactress.
conducteur,	conductrice,	a conductor, a conductress.
instituteur,	institutrice,	a schoolmaster, a governess.

Upwards of fifty nouns follow this rule. .

Those who know Latin will see that the most part of substantives ending in *teur* and *trice* are derived from the Latin words in *tor* and *trix*; as, *accusator*, *accusatrix*, etc.

Adjectives ending in *eur*, not derived from verbs, and conveying an idea of *opposition* or *comparison*, follow the general rule of taking an *e* mute in the feminine; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
antérieur, antérieure, <i>anterior</i> .		majeur, majeure, <i>major</i> .	
citérieur, citérieure, <i>citerior</i> .		mineur, mineure, <i>minor</i> .	
extérieur, extérieure, <i>exterior</i> .		postérieur, postérieure, <i>posterior</i> .	
intérieur, intérieure, <i>interior</i> .		supérieur, supérieure, <i>superior</i> .	
inférieur, inférieure, <i>inferior</i> .		ultérieur, ultérieure, <i>ulterior</i> .	
meilleur, meilleure, <i>better</i> .			

Empereur, emperor; *ambassadeur*, ambassador; *gouverneur*, governor; *serviteur*, servant, make in the feminine *impératrice*, *ambassadrice*, *gouvernante*, *servante*.

Chasseur, hunter, has two feminines — *chasseuse* in prose, and *chasseresse* in poetry.

Chanteur, singer, has also two feminines — *chanteuse* and *cantatrice*. This last is used in speaking of a professional singer, or of an eminent female vocalist.

Words expressing *trades*, *professions*, &c. usually carried on by men, have no feminine, even when followed by women; as,

graveur,	an engraver.	imprimeur,	a printer.
sculpteur,	a sculptor.	docteur,	a doctor.

professeur,	<i>a professor.</i>	traducteur,	<i>a translator.</i>
auteur,	<i>an author.</i>	&c.	&c.

EXAMPLES.

Mademoiselle de Schurman, née à Cologne en 1606, était peintre, graveur, sculpteur, philosophe, géomètre. — (LE DICT. DE BIOGRAPHIE.)	<i>Mademoiselle de Schurman, born at Cologne in 1606, was a painter, an engraver, a sculptor, a philosopher, and a geometri- cian.</i>
Madame Deshoulières était un poète aimable. — (LE DICT. DES DICT.)	<i>Madame Deshoulières was an ami- able poetess.</i>
Madame de Staël est un de nos plus grands écrivains. — (BOISTE.)	<i>Madame de Staël is one of our greatest writers.</i>
Une femme auteur. — (L'ACAD.)	<i>A female author.</i>

EXERCISE XI.

She is a great talker and a great laugh^r. — Is she
C'est grand parleur rieur Est-elle
quarrelsome ? — Joan of Arc was the avenger of France. —
querelleur Jeanne d'Arc fut vengeur art. — f.
 She is the benefactress of the poor. — She is a good actress,
C'est bienfaiteur pauvre pl. bon acteur
 and a celebrated singer. — Minerva was the protectress of the
célèbre Minerve était protecteur
 fine arts. — The city of Troy was in Asia Minor. —
beaux-arts. ville f. Troie dans art. Asie f. Mineur
 (There is) a superior power.
Il y a supérieur puissance f.

There are seven adjectives ending in *c* which form their feminine thus :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
blanc, blanche, <i>white.</i>		public, publique, <i>public.</i>	
caduc, caduque, <i>infirm.</i>		sec, sèche, <i>dry.</i>	
franc, franche, <i>frank.</i>		turc, turque, <i>Turkish.</i>	
grec, grecque, <i>Greek, Grecian.</i>			

The six following terminations in *s* take *se* in the feminine :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
bas, basse, <i>low.</i>		gras, grasse, <i>fat.</i>	
épais, épaisse, <i>thick.</i>		gros, grosse, <i>big.</i>	
express, expresse, <i>express.</i>		las, lasse, <i>tired.</i>	

The following adjectives form their feminine irregularly :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
beau,	belle,*	<i>fine.</i>	long,	longue, <i>long.</i>
bénin,	bénigne,	<i>benign.</i>	malin,	maligne, <i>malignant.</i>
savori,	favorite,	<i>favourite.</i>	mou,	molle,* <i>soft.</i>
fou,	folle,*	<i>foolish.</i>	nouveau,	nouvelle,* <i>new.</i>
frais,	fraîche,	<i>fresh.</i>	nul,	nulle, <i>null.</i>
gentil,	gentille,	<i>genteel.</i>	sot,	sotte, <i>silly.</i>
jumeau,	jumelle,	<i>twin.</i>	traître,	traîtresse, <i>traitorous.</i>

* REMARK. — The feminines, *belle, folle, molle, nouvelle*, are formed from the masculines, *bel, fol, mol, nouvel*, which are used before a vowel, or *h* mute.

EXERCISE XII.

(Here is) a *handsome white* gown. — His *public* life is
*Voici beau ²blanc ¹robe f. Sa ²public ¹vie f. est
 irreproachable. — This table is too *low*. — This board is
irréprochable. Cette — f. trop bas planche f.
 too *long* and too *thick*. — This soup is too *fat*. — It is
long épais soupe f. gras C'est
 a *new* discovery. — Have you seen my *favorite* flower,
nouveau découverte f. Avez-vous vu ma ²savori ¹fleur f.
 the rose, so *fresh* and so *sweet*?
 — f. *si frais doux**

PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

Adjectives form their plural, like substantives, by the simple addition of an *s* to the singular ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
grand, <i>masc.</i>	grands, } <i>great.</i>
grande, <i>fem.</i>	grandes, }
savant, <i>masc.</i>	savants, } <i>learned.</i>
savante, <i>fem.</i>	savantes, }

This rule is without any exceptions for the feminine, but the masculine has the three following :

1st EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the plural masculine ; as, *gras*, fat ; *gros*, big ; *heureux*, happy.

2d EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *au* take *x* in the plural masculine; as, *beau*, handsome; *nouveau*, new; plural, *beaux*, *nouveaux*.

3d EXCEPTION. — Adjectives ending in *al* change this termination into *aux* for the plural masculine; as, *égal*, equal; *moral*, moral; plural, *égaux*, *moraux*.

A few adjectives ending in *al* follow the general rule, and take *s* in the plural, and others have no plural masculine; but these are adjectives seldom used.

Tout, all, is the only adjective that drops the *t* in the plural masculine. (See page 11.)

EXERCISE XIII.

Give some *entertaining* books to those *pretty little* girls.
Donnez ²*amusant* ¹*livre* m. *ces* *joli* *petit* *filles*
 — He has *powerful* enemies, but their efforts (will be)
Il a de puissant *ennemi* m. *mais* *leurs* — m. *seront*
vain and *useless*.—These chickens are *big* and *fat*, but those
vain et inutile *Ces* *poulet* m. *sont* *gros* *gras*
 partridges are very *lean*. — All the *general* officers were
perdrix f. *très* *maigre* *Tout* ²*général* ¹*officier* *étaient*
present.—The *old* and the *new* soldiers did *won-*
présent *vieux* *nouveau* *soldat* *furent* pr. art. *mer-*
veille *Je* *consens* *ces* — f.
ders. — I agree to all those conditions.

OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

There are commonly reckoned three degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive* is the adjective itself, merely expressing the quality of an object, without any comparison; as,

Un enfant *sage et studieux*. | A well-behaved and studious child.

EXERCISE XIV.

She is *satisfied* with her lot. — Socrates and Plato were
Elle est content de son sort. *Socrate* *Platon* *étaient*
 two *great* philosophers.—Virgil had a *fine* and *delicate*
deux *grand* *philosophe* *Virgile* *avait* ²*fin* ³*et* ⁴*délicat*
 taste.—The style of Fénélon is *rich* and *harmonious*.—The
¹*goût* m. — m. — *est* *riche* *harmonieux*.

Alps are *high* and *steep*. — The city of Rome is *full*
Alpes f. pl. *sont haut escarpé* *ville* f. — *rempli*
 of *ancient* and *modern* monuments.

²*ancien* ³*et* ⁴*moderne* ¹_____ m.

The *Comparative Degree* draws a comparison between two or more objects. There are three sorts of comparatives, viz. of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

The comparative of *superiority* is formed by putting the adverb *plus*, more, before the adjective, and the conjunction *que*, than, after it; as,

Athènes a été <i>plus</i> illustre <i>que</i>		Athens was more illustrious
Lacédémone.		than Lacedæmon.

N. B. — The comparative degree is often formed in English by adding *r* or *er* to the positive; as, *wise*, *wiser*; *great*, *greater*; and as these letters stand for the adverb *more*, they must be rendered in French by its corresponding adverb *plus*; thus, *wiser*, *plus sage*; *greater*, *plus grand*.

Plus must be repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE XV.

Virtue is *more* precious *than* riches. — He is
 art. *vertu* f. *est* *précieux* art. *richesses* pl. *Il*
happier than a king. — He is *more* fortunate *than* wise. — It is
content *roi.* *heureux* *sage.* *Il*
more noble to forgive *than* to (avenge one's self.) —
 _____ *de pardonner* *de* *se venger.*

The simplicity of nature is *more* pleasing *than* all the
simplicité f. art. _____ f. *agréable* *tout*
 embellishments of _____ art. — London is *more* populous
ornement m. art. — m. *Londres* m. *peuplé*
than Paris, but France is *larger* and *more* populous *than*
 _____ m. *mais* art. _____ f. *grand et*

England. — The Thames is *deeper* *than* the Seine.
 art. *Angleterre* f. *Tamise* f. *profond* _____ f.

The comparative of *inferiority* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it; as,

L'Afrique est <i>moins</i> peuplée <i>que</i>		Africa is less populous than
l'Europe.		Europe.

Moins is to be repeated before every adjective.

This comparative may also be formed by putting the verb in the negative, with *si*, so, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it; as,

L'Afrique n'est pas si peuplée | Africa is not so populous as
que l'Europe. | Europe.

EXERCISE XVI.

Shipwreck and death are *less* fatal *than* the
art. naufrage m. art. mort f. sont funeste
pleasures which attack virtue. — He is *less* polite and
plaisir qui attaquent art. vertu f. Il est poli
obliging *than* his brother. — She is *less* amiable *than* her sister. —
obligeant son frère. Elle aimable sa sœur.
Cæsar (was not) *less* brave *than* Alexander. — They are *less*
César n'était pas — Alexandre. Ils
happy *than* you think. — He (is not) *so* rich *as* his brother-
heureux vous ne pensez. n'est pas riche beau-
in-law.
frère.

The comparative of *equality* is formed by placing the adverb *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it; as,

Aristide était aussi vaillant que juste. | Aristides was as valiant as just.

Aussi must be repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE XVII.

Is he *as* clever, and *as* docile *as* his cousin? — He is *as*
Est-il habile — son — m. Il est
tall *as* you. — Your niece is *as* pretty *as* that girl. — Socrates
grand vous. Votre nièce joli cette fille. Socrate
was *as* valiant *as* wise. — Cicero was *as* pious *as* eloquent.
était vaillant sage. Cicéron pieux éloquent.
— It is *as* easy to do good *as* to do evil. —
Il aisé de faire art. bien m. art. mal m.
History is *as* useful *as* agreeable.
art. histoire h m. utile agréable.

The *Superlative Degree* expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree. There are two sorts of superlatives, the *relative* and the *absolute*.

The superlative *relative* expresses a relation or comparison with another object; it is formed by putting

before the comparative the article *le, la, les*, in its natural or contracted state.

EXAMPLES.

Le chien est l'animal *le plus fidèle*. | *The dog is the most faithful animal.*
 Ce sont les hommes *les plus sages* | *They are the wisest men in the as-*
 de l'assemblée.—(L'ACAD.) | *sembly.*

The superlative *relative* may also be formed by placing before the comparative one of the possessive adjectives, *mon, ma, mes*, my; *ton, ta, tes*, thy; *son, sa, ses*, his or her; *notre, nos*, our; *votre, vos*, your; *leur, leurs*, their.

EXAMPLES.

Mon plus puissant protecteur. | *My most powerful protector.*
Votre plus grand ennemi. | *Your greatest enemy.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

Gold is *the most pure, the most precious, the most ductile*,
 art. or m. *est pur, précieux,* —
 and, after platina, *the heaviest of all metals.* —
 après art. platine m. *pesant tout art. métal m.*
 The *least* excusable of all errors is that which is
 ——— art. erreur f. *celle qui*
 wilful. — The elephant is *the strongest* of all animals. —
 volontaire. éléphant m. *fort art. animal m.*
 I prefer my house to *the finest* palace. — *Our greatest*
 Je préfère ma maison beau palais m. *Nos grand*
 interests. — *Your most* cruel enemies.
 intérêt m. Vos cruel ennemi m.

The superlative *absolute* does not imply any relation to another object, but merely expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree; it is formed by putting before the adjective one of these words, *très,* fort,† bien*, very; *extrêmement*, extremely; *infiniment*, infinitely; *excessivement*, excessively; or any other adverb expressing a very high degree.

EXERCISE XIX.

Dublin is a *very* large and *very* fine city. — That lady is
 ——— *est grand beau ville f. Cette dame*
very charitable. — He is a *very* unfortunate man. — He
 ——— C'est ² ²malheureux ¹homme Il

* *Très*, from the Greek *τετς*, thrice; *très-heureux*, thrice happy.

† *Fort*, abbreviation of *fortement*, strongly.

(is not) *very* clever. — This soup is *very* hot. — That
n'est pas habile. Cette soupe f. chaud Cet
 work is *very* much esteemed by the learned. — Madame
*ouvrage m. * estimé de savant m. pl. —*

Dacier was *extremely* learned. — The Rhône is *extremely* rapid.
— était savant — m. rapide.

— God is *infinitely* just.
Dieu juste.

The three adjectives, *bon*, *mauvais*, and *petit*, and the three adverbs, *bien*, *mal*, and *peu*, form their degrees in the following manner :

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjectives.	{ bon, good.	meilleur, better.	le meilleur, the best.
	{ mauvais, bad.	pire, worse.	le pire, the worst.
	{ petit, little.	moindre, less.	le moindre, the least.
Adverbs.	{ bien, well.	mieux, better.	le mieux, the best.
	{ mal, badly.	pis, worse.	le pis, the worst.
	{ peu, little.	moins, less.	le moins, the least.

Plus mauvais, plus petit, plus mal, are also used, but never *plus bon, plus bien, plus peu*.

EXERCISE XX.

That wine is good, but this is better. — Lend me
Ce vin m. est mais celui-ci Prêtez-moi
 the best book in your library. — He writes well, but his
livre m. de votre bibliothèque. Il écrit sa
 sister writes still better. — The life of a slave is worse
sœur encore vie f. esclave m.
 than death itself. — He was a little better, but he is
que art. mort f. même. se portait mais est
 now worse than ever. — Speak less. — (It is) his least
maintenant que jamais. Parlez C'est son
 misfortune. — The remedy is worse than the disease. —
malheur m. remède m. est mal m.

Temperance is the best doctor.
art. tempérance f. médecin m.

There are some adjectives which have neither comparatives nor superlatives, because the qualities which they express are in themselves the highest degree of perfection, worth, etc.; such are *divin*, *éternel*, *excellent*, *immortel*, *immense*, etc. etc.

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

The Adjectives of Number are divided into *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*.

The *Cardinal* numbers are used to count and express the number of persons or things.

The *Ordinal* numbers mark the order and rank which persons or things hold with regard to one another.

Numeral adjectives are all of both genders, with the exception of *un*, *premier*, and *second*, which take an *e* in the feminine.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- 1 Un.
- 2 Deux.
- 3 Trois.
- 4 Quatre.
- 5 Cinq.
- 6 Six.
- 7 Sept.
- 8 Huit.
- 9 Neuf.
- 10 Dix.
- 11 Onze.
- 12 Douze.
- 13 Treize.
- 14 Quatorze.
- 15 Quinze.
- 16 Seize.
- 17 Dix-sept.
- 18 Dix-huit.
- 19 Dix-neuf.
- 20 Vingt.
- 21 Vingt et un.
- 22 Vingt-deux.
- 23 Vingt-trois.
- 24 Vingt-quatre.
- 25 Vingt-cinq.
- 26 Vingt-six.
- 27 Vingt-sept.
- 28 Vingt-huit.
- 29 Vingt-neuf.
- 30 Trente.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

- 1st Premier.
- 2^d Second, or Deuxième.
- 3^d Troisième.
- 4th Quatrième.
- 5th Cinquième.
- 6th Sixième.
- 7th Septième.
- 8th Huitième.
- 9th Neuvième.
- 10th Dixième.
- 11th Onzième.
- 12th Douzième.
- 13th Treizième.
- 14th Quatorzième.
- 15th Quinzième.
- 16th Seizième.
- 17th Dix-septième.
- 18th Dix-huitième.
- 19th Dix-neuvième.
- 20th Vingtième.
- 21st Vingt et unième.
- 22^d Vingt-deuxième.
- 23^d Vingt-troisième.
- 24th Vingt-quatrième.
- 25th Vingt-cinquième.
- 26th Vingt-sixième.
- 27th Vingt-septième.
- 28th Vingt-huitième.
- 29th Vingt-neuvième.
- 30th Trentième.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- 31 Trente et un.
- 32 Trente-deux.
- 33 Trente-trois.
- 34 Trente-quatre.
- 35 Trente-cinq.
- 36 Trente-six.
- 37 Trente-sept.
- 38 Trente-huit.
- 39 Trente-neuf.
- 40 Quarante.
- 41 Quarante et un.
- 42 Quarante-deux.
- 43 Quarante-trois.
- 44 Quarante-quatre.
- 45 Quarante-cinq.
- 46 Quarante-six.
- 47 Quarante-sept.
- 48 Quarante-huit.
- 49 Quarante-neuf.
- 50 Cinquante.
- 51 Cinquante et un.
- 52 Cinquante-deux.
- 53 Cinquante-trois.
- 54 Cinquante-quatre.
- 55 Cinquante-cinq.
- 56 Cinquante-six.
- 57 Cinquante-sept.
- 58 Cinquante-huit.
- 59 Cinquante-neuf.
- 60 Soixante.
- 61 Soixante et un.*
- 62 Soixante-deux.
- 63 Soixante-trois.
- 64 Soixante-quatre.
- 65 Soixante-cinq.
- 66 Soixante-six.
- 67 Soixante-sept.
- 68 Soixante-huit.
- 69 Soixante-neuf.
- 70 Soixante et dix.*
- 71 Soixante et onze.
- 72 Soixante-douze.

ORDINAL NUMBERS

- 31st Trente et unième.
- 32^d Trente-deuxième.
- 33^d Trente-troisième.
- 34th Trente-quatrième.
- 35th Trente-cinquième.
- 36th Trente-sixième.
- 37th Trente-septième.
- 38th Trente-huitième.
- 39th Trente-neuvième.
- 40th Quarantième.
- 41st Quarante et unième.
- 42^d Quarante-deuxième.
- 43^d Quarante-troisième.
- 44th Quarante-quatrième.
- 45th Quarante-cinquième.
- 46^h Quarante-sixième.
- 47th Quarante-septième.
- 48th Quarante-huitième.
- 49^h Quarante-neuvième.
- 50th Cinquantième.
- 51st Cinquante et unième.
- 52^d Cinquante-deuxième.
- 53^d Cinquante-troisième.
- 54th Cinquante-quatrième.
- 55th Cinquante-cinquième.
- 56th Cinquante-sixième.
- 57th Cinquante-septième.
- 58th Cinquante-huitième.
- 59^h Cinquante-neuvième.
- 60th Soixantième.
- 61st Soixante et unième.
- 62^d Soixante-deuxième.
- 63^d Soixante-troisième.
- 64th Soixante-quatrième.
- 65th Soixante-cinquième.
- 66th Soixante-sixième.
- 67th Soixante-septième.
- 68th Soixante-huitième.
- 69th Soixante-neuvième.
- 70th Soixante et dixième.
- 71st Soixante et onzième.
- 72^d Soixante-douzième.

* We say also, but less frequently, and not so well for euphony, *soixante-un, soixante-dix*. — (FRENCH ACADEMY.)

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

73	Soixante-treize.
74	Soixante-quatorze.
75	Soixante-quinze.
76	Soixante-seize.
77	Soixante-dix-sept.
78	Soixante-dix-huit.
79	Soixante-dix-neuf.
80	Quatre-vingts.
81	Quatre-vingt-un.
82	Quatre-vingt-deux.
83	Quatre-vingt-trois.
84	Quatre-vingt-quatre.
85	Quatre-vingt-cinq.
86	Quatre-vingt-six.
87	Quatre-vingt-sept.
88	Quatre-vingt-huit.
89	Quatre-vingt-neuf.
90	Quatre-vingt-dix.
91	Quatre-vingt-onze.
92	Quatre-vingt-douze.
93	Quatre-vingt-treize.
94	Quatre-vingt-quatorze.
95	Quatre-vingt-quinze.
96	Quatre-vingt-seize.
97	Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.
98	Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.
99	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.
100	Cent.
101	Cent un.
102	Cent deux.
200	Deux cents.
1000	Mille.
10,000	Dix mille.
1,000,000	Million.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

73 ^d	Soixante-treizième.
74 th	Soixante-quatorzième.
75 th	Soixante-quinzième.
76 th	Soixante-seizième.
77 th	Soixante-dix-septième.
78 th	Soixante-dix-huitième.
79 th	Soixante-dix-neuvième.
80 th	Quatre-vingtième.
81 st	Quatre-vingt-unième.
82 ^d	Quatre-vingt-deuxième.
83 ^d	Quatre-vingt-troisième.
84 th	Quatre-vingt-quatrième.
85 th	Quatre-vingt-cinquième.
86 ^h	Quatre-vingt-sixième.
87 th	Quatre-vingt-septième.
88 th	Quatre-vingt-huitième.
89 th	Quatre-vingt-neuvième.
90 th	Quatre-vingt-dixième.
91 st	Quatre-vingt-onzième.
92 ^d	Quatre-vingt-douzième.
93 ^d	Quatre-vingt-treizième.
94 th	Quatre-vingt-quatorzième.
95 ^h	Quatre-vingt-quinzième.
96 th	Quatre-vingt-seizième.
97 th	Quatre-vingt-dix-septième.
98 th	Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième.
99 th	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.
100 th	Centième.
101 st	Cent-unième.
102 ^d	Cent-deuxième.
200 th	Deux-centième.
1000 th	Millième.
10,000 th	Dix-millième.
1,000,000 th	Millionième.

Among the words which express an idea of number, there are some which are real *substantives*; these are divided into three sorts, called *collective*, *distributive*, and *proportional*.

The *collective* denotes a certain quantity or collection of things; as, *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une vingtaine*, a score; *un million*, a million.

The *distributive* expresses a part of the whole; as, *la moitié*, the half; *le quart*, the quarter.

The *proportional* denotes the progressive increase of things; as, *le double*, the double; *le triple*, the triple; *le centuple*, a hundred-fold.

REMARKS.—I. The *ordinal* numbers, the *collective* and *distributive* nouns take an *s* in the plural; as,

Les premières douzaines.		The first dozens.
Les sept huitièmes.		The seven eighths.

II. *Vingt* and *cent* are the only *cardinal* numbers which take an *s* in the plural, that is, when preceded by another number which multiplies them; as,

Quatre-vingts chevaux.		Eighty horses.
Cinq cents soldats.		Five hundred soldiers.

III. The preceding remark holds good when the noun is understood; as,

Nous étions deux cents.		We were two hundred (persons.)
-------------------------	--	--------------------------------

IV. But, when *vingt* and *cent* are followed by another number, or used for the date of the year, they do not take an *s*; as,

Quatre-vingt-dix chevaux.		Ninety horses.
Cinq cent vingt soldats.		Five hundred and twenty soldiers.
L'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt.		In the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty.

V. *Mille*, a thousand, never takes an *s* in the plural; but, *mille*, a mile, takes one: thus, *dix mille* is ten thousand, and *dix milles* means ten miles. In mentioning the Christian era, we abridge *mille* into *mil*; as,

Napoléon mourut en MIL huit cent vingt et un.		Napoleon died in one THOUSAND eight hundred and twenty-one.
---	--	---

VI. The French make use of the *cardinal* numbers,—1st, In mentioning all the days of the month, except the *first*: thus we say, *le deux mars*, the second of March; *le quatre mai*, the fourth of May; and, *le premier mai*, the first of May; *le premier juin*, the first of June.

Note.—Voltaire used to say *le deux de mars*, *le quatre de mai*; and Racine *le deux mars*, *le quatre mai*. With regard to grammatical correctness, the first construction is certainly preferable; but if we follow usage, which, as to language, is the rule of opinion, we must say *le deux mars*, *le quatre mai*. It is thus that our good authors almost always express themselves, as well as those persons who pique themselves on speaking purely, and who avoid every kind of affectation.

2d, In speaking of sovereigns; as, *Guillaume quatre*, William the fourth. The *first* of the series is excepted, for we say *Jacques premier*, *Henri premier*, and not *Jacques un*, *Henri un*; but we say indifferently, *deux* or *second*.

Henri *deux*, roi de France.

Catherine *deux*, impératrice de Russie.—(ACAD.)

François *second* succéda à Henri *second*.—(GIRARD.)

Henry the second, king of France.

Catharine the second, empress of Russia.

Francis the second succeeded Henry the second.

In speaking of the Emperor Charles V, and of Pope Sixtus V, we say *Charles-Quint*, *Sixte-Quint*.

EXERCISE XXI.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, in art. *Amérique f. fut découverte par Christophe Colomb* * the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two.— We have an m. * *Nous avons*

eighty (men of war) ready to sail, we (shall soon have)

vaisseaux de guerre prêts faire voile en aurons bientôt two hundred.— Our troops took five thousand prisoners.—

Nos troupes firent *prisonnier* (It is) four miles from this.— Send me the ²first ¹two dozens.

Il y a *millem.* *ici.* *Envoyez-moi*

— Your letter of the *fifteenth* of January (reached me) on *Votre lettre f.* * *janvier m'est parvenue* *

the *first* of February.— I arrived on the *second*.

* *février.* *suis arrivé* *

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

Louis the *sixteenth*, Louis the *eighteenth*, and Charles the *tenth*,

were brothers.— Francis the *first*, king of France, and *étaient frère François*

Frederick the *second*, king of Prussia, were great warriors. *Frédéric Prusse, étaient de grand guerrier*

— Louis the *thirteenth* was the founder of the French Academy. *est fondateur* ² ¹

— Charles the *fifth*, king of France, was surnamed the wise.— *fut surnommé* ^{p. 23}

Pope Sixtus the *fifth* was contemporary to Philip the *second*, art. *pape* *était contemporain de Philippe*

son of the emperor Charles the *fifth*.— James I, and Henry IV.

OBSERVATIONS ON WORDS that are alike in FRENCH and ENGLISH.

There are many substantives and adjectives which are alike in both languages, with the exception of the difference in pronunciation, and that some require accents in French; and there are others which differ only in their termination.

Most words are alike in both languages, when ending in —

<i>ace, ice,</i>	as,	{ place, préface, race, trace, avarice, justice, injustice, service, vice, etc.
<i>ade, ude,</i>	„	{ ambuscade, brigade, cavalcade, sérénade, fortitude, multitude, prélude, prude, etc.
<i>ance, ence,</i>	„	{ distance, ignorance, tempérance, éloquence, évidence, patience, silence, etc.
<i>ant, ent,</i>	„	{ constant, élégant, éléphant, instant, absent, accident, compliment, excellent, etc.
<i>ile, ule,</i>	„	{ docile, ductile, reptile, versatile, globule, mule, ridicule, etc.
<i>acle,</i>	„	{ miracle, obstacle, oracle, réceptacle, spectacle, tabernacle, etc.
<i>al,</i>	„	{ métal, minéral, local, moral, principal, général, naval, royal, libéral, radical, etc.
<i>ble,</i>	„	{ câble, charitable, fable, table, probable, Bible, éligible, visible, noble, double, etc.
<i>ge,</i>	„	{ âge, cage, charge, image, page, rage, collège, déluge, forge, orange, siège, etc.
<i>ine,</i>	„	- doctrine, famine, héroïne, machine, etc.
<i>ion,</i>	„	{ action, éducation, instruction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, etc.

Most English words ending in *ary, ory, our, or, ous, cy, ty*, and *y*, become French by changing these terminations in the following manner : —

<i>ary</i>	-	into <i>aire</i>	as	military,	<i>militaire.</i>
<i>ory</i>	-	„ <i>oire,</i>	„	victory,	<i>victoire.</i>
<i>our</i>	-	„ <i>eur,</i>	„	favour,	<i>faveur.</i>
<i>or</i>	-	„ <i>eur,</i>	„	doctor,	<i>docteur.</i>
<i>ous</i>	-	„ <i>eux,</i>	„	famous,	<i>fameux.</i>
<i>cy</i>	-	„ <i>ce,</i>	„	constancy,	<i>constance.</i>

ty (after a vowel) into *té*, as beauty, *beauté*.

y { (other than } „ *ie*, „ fury, *furie*; modesty, *modestie*.
the preceding)

Most proper names of women and goddesses ending in *a*, become French by changing that *a* into *e* mute; as,

Julia,	<i>Julie</i> .	Minerva,	<i>Minerve</i> .
Sophia,	<i>Sophie</i> .	Diana,	<i>Diane</i> .

EXERCISE XXII.

The sagacity of that animal is admirable. — That
f. cet m. est
instrument is very harmonious. — The history of the Royal
m. très h mu.
Society.—The rector of an academy.—He has the approbation
f. f. a f.
of the nation. — His memory is extraordinary. — The valour of
f. Sa f. f.
that general is regulated by prudence. — His courage is
ce réglée par art. f. Son m.
invincible. — The number of stars is incalculable. —
nombre m. art. étoile

Give this nosegay to Maria or Matilda.—Flora was the
Donnez ce bouquet m. à ou à était
goddess of flowers, and Pomona, the goddess of fruits.
déesse art. fleur art. —

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

The weathercock is the symbol of inconstancy. — The
girouette f. symbole m. art.
prosperity of the wicked is not durable. — An ambitious
f. méchants pl.
soul is seldom capable of moderation. — It is sometimes
l'âme f. rarement quelquefois
difficult to distinguish the copy from the original.—The sublimity
difficile de distinguer f. m. f.
of his sentiments is still superior to the energy of his
ses m. encore f. ses
expressions.—Magistrates and physicians formerly rode
f. art. magistrat art. médecin autrefois allaient
on mules. — Thalia is the muse of comedy, Urania that
des — f. art. f. celle
of astronomy.
art. f.

CHAPTER IV.

OF PRONOUNS.

THE word *Pronoun* is formed of the word *noun*, and of the Latin preposition *pro*, which means *instead of*.

In the French language, Pronouns are divided into five classes, viz. the *Personal*, the *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, the *Relative*, and the *Indefinite*.

§ I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, or personified objects.

There are *three persons* : the first is, the person speaking ; the second, the person spoken to ; the third, the person spoken of.

PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Examples.</i>	
<i>Subject,</i>	Je,	I,	Je donne,	I give.
<i>Object,</i>	{ moi,	{ me,	suivez-moi,	follow me.
		{ to me,	écoutez-moi,	listen to me.
		{ me,	il me flatte,	he flatters me.
	me,	{ to me,	il me parle,	he speaks to me.
	<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>Subject,</i>	nous,	we,	nous donnons,	we give.
<i>Object,</i>	{ nous,	{ us,	il nous voit,	he sees us.
		{ to us,	il nous parle,	he speaks to us.

The pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons are both masculine and feminine, that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS. — The *Personal* Pronouns are generally placed before the verb, *except* —

1. When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French ; as, *il parle de nous*, he speaks of us.

2. In interrogative sentences ; as, *parlez-vous ?* do you speak ?

3. When the verb is in the imperative *affirmative* (the

third persons excepted); as, *parlez-moi*, speak to me. But if the imperative is used with a negative, the personal pronouns are placed before the verb; as, *ne me parlez pas*, do not speak to me.

EXERCISE XXIII.

I speak French.—I have said that.—Lend me your pencil.—
parle français. ai dit cela. Prêtez votre crayon m.
Help me. — Believe me. — Write to me. — He hurts me. —
Aidez Croyez écrivez Il blesse
He sees me. — This picture pleases me more than the other.
voit Ce tableau m. plaît plus que autre.
— We praise God. — He knows us. — We tell him the
louons Dieu. connaît disons lui
truth, but he (will not) believe us. — He related to us the
vérité f. mais ne veut pas croire a raconté
history of his misfortunes.
histoire h m. ses malheur

PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.		Examples.	
Subject,	tu,	thou,	tu es heureux,	thou art happy.
Object,	{ toi,	thee,	je parle pour toi,	I speak for thee.
	{ te,	{ thee,	Dieu te voit,	God sees thee.
		{ to thee,	je te parle,	I speak to thee.
	Plural.			
Subject,	vous,	you,	vous chantez,	you sing.
Object,	vous,	{ you,	il vous connaît,	he knows you.
		{ to you,	je vous parle,	I speak to you.

REMARK. — When from politeness we use *vous* (you), instead of the singular *tu* (thou), the verb is put in the plural, but the adjective or participle following remains in the singular, and takes the feminine termination if we speak to a female; as,

Monsieur, vous êtes bien bon. | Sir, you are very good.
 Madame, vous êtes estimée. | Madam, you are esteemed.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Thou fearest God.—He (will do) it for thee.—He praises
crains Dieu. Il s'fera 'le pour loue
thee. — He (will speak) to thee.—You have spoiled this book.—
parlera avez gâté ce livre m.

How troublesome *you* are! — How good *you* are! — Ladies,
Que ²*importun* ¹*m.* ²*êtes* ³*bon* ¹*f.* ² *Mesdames*,
 how amiable *you* are! — I bring *you* the news-paper. — *You*
³*aimable* ¹ ² *apporte* *journal m.*
 (are fond of) flowers; if *you* like, I will give *you* this
aimex *art. fleur si voulez donnerai ce*
 fine nosegay.
beau bouquet m.

PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

		Singular.	Examples.	
Subject,	{	<i>il, m.</i> <i>he, it,</i>	<i>il donne,</i>	<i>he gives.</i>
	{	<i>elle, f.</i> <i>she, it,</i>	<i>elle donne,</i>	<i>she gives.</i>
Object,	{	<i>lui, m.</i> { <i>him,</i>	<i>il parle de lui,</i>	<i>he speaks of him.</i>
	{	<i>to him,</i>	<i>il lui parle,</i>	<i>he speaks to him.</i>
	{	<i>lui, f.</i> <i>to her,</i>	<i>je lui parlerai,</i>	<i>I will speak to her.</i>
	{	<i>elle, f.</i> <i>her,</i>	<i>il parle d'elle,</i>	<i>he speaks of her.</i>
Plural.				
Subject,	{	<i>ils, m.</i> <i>they,</i>	<i>ils mangent,</i>	<i>they eat.</i>
	{	<i>elles, f.</i> <i>they,</i>	<i>elles chantent,</i>	<i>they sing.</i>
Object,	{	<i>eux, m.</i> <i>them,</i>	<i>venez avec eux,</i>	<i>come with them.</i>
	{	<i>elles, f.</i> <i>them,</i>	<i>c'est pour elles,</i>	<i>it is for them.</i>
	{	<i>leur, m. & f.</i> <i>to them,</i>	<i>je leur parlerai,</i>	<i>I will speak to them.</i>

EXERCISE XXV.

He has done his duty. — *She* sings well. — *He* complains
à fait son devoir. *chante bien.* *se plaint*
 of her. — I (shall go) with *him*. — I (am writing) to *him*. —
irai avec *écris*

What (shall I say) to *her*? — *They* speak to *them* with respect.
Que dirai-je *m. parlent* —
 — *They* will return with *them*. — (Do not come) without
f. reviendront *m. Ne venez pas sans*
them. — *They* prefer the country to the town.
f. m. préfèrent campagne f. ville f.

N. B. — Although *I, thou, he, they,* are generally expressed by, *Je, tu, il, ils, elles*, there are cases in which they are translated by, *moi, toi, lui, eux*. For explanations respecting these pronouns, see the Syntax, p. 228.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *SE, SOI*.

Se, soi, Pronouns of the third person, are used both for persons and things. *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* generally after a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

SE,	<i>himself,</i>	<i>il se loue,</i>	<i>he praises himself.</i>
	<i>herself,</i>	<i>elle se flatte,</i>	<i>she flatters herself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	<i>il se détruit,</i>	<i>it destroys itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	<i>se louer,</i>	<i>to praise oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	<i>ils or elles se flattent,</i>	<i>they flatter themselves.</i>
	<i>to himself,</i>	<i>il s'attribue,</i>	<i>he attributes to himself.</i>
SOI,	<i>to herself,</i>	<i>elle s'attribue,</i>	<i>she attributes to herself.</i>
	<i>to oneself,</i>	<i>se prescrire,</i>	<i>to prescribe to oneself.</i>
	<i>to themselves,</i>	<i>ils or elles se prescrivent,</i>	<i>they prescribe to themselves.</i>
	<i>himself,</i>	<i>chacun pour soi,</i>	<i>every one for himself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	<i>cela est bon en soi,</i>	<i>that is good in itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	<i>il faut songer à soi,</i>	<i>one must think of oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	<i>{ on doit parler rarement de soi,</i>	<i>{ people should seldom speak of themselves.</i>

EXERCISE XXVI.

He submits *himself* to your orders. — That lady praises
soumet *vos ordre* *Cette dame loue*
herself (too much.) — She gives *herself* (a great deal) of
trop. *donne* *beaucoup*
trouble. — They expose *themselves* to danger. — They
peine. *exposent* *art. — m.*
will accustom *themselves* (to it.) — (Every one) works for
accoutumeront ¹ *Chacun travaille pour*
himself. — The loadstone attracts iron to *itself.* —
aimant m. attire *art. fer m.*

Virtue is amiable in *itself.*
art. vertu f. est aimable de

§ II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

THE *Possessive*, as well as the *Demonstrative* Pronouns, are of a mixed nature, partaking of the properties both of pronouns and adjectives; therefore some Grammarians class them among the *adjectives*; others, again, refuse them the name of *pronouns* or *adjectives*, and place them in the rank of *articles*. Indeed, it would be difficult to state, within a moderate compass, the various opinions which Grammarians have exhibited respecting this part of speech. As for us, we shall follow here the classification adopted by the French Academy, and by the most correct modern writers, and subdivide the *Possessive Pronouns* of the old Grammarians into two parts:

1st, *Possessive Adjectives* ;2d, *Possessive Pronouns* ;

And, from the affinity these two kinds of words have with each other, we shall place them one after another in separate articles.

OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *Possessive* adjectives, as the word implies, denote possession or property, and are called *adjectives* rather than *pronouns*, because they do not stand *for* a noun, but, on the contrary, are always joined to a noun which they modify. They are :

Singular.		Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	For both genders.	
mon	ma	mes	my
ton	ta	tes	thy
son	sa	ses	his, her, its
notre	notre	nos	our
votre	votre	vos	your
leur	leur	leurs	their

OBSERVE. — 1. The *possessive adjectives* must, as well as the preposition which may accompany them, be repeated before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number.

2. The *possessive adjectives* always agree in French with the noun following, and never with the preceding one ; that is to say, they agree with the object *possessed*, and not with the *possessor*, as in English.

3. For the sake of euphony, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXERCISE XXVII.

My father, mother, and brothers are in the country. —
père mère frère sont à campagne f.

His uncle, aunt, and cousins are in Wales. — I
oncle tante — m. sont dans le pays de Galles.

have seen Paris, its theatres, and buildings. — Our perseverance
ai vu — théâtre m. édifice m. persévérance f.
and our efforts. — Your country and your friends. — Their
pays m. ami m.

house and *their* servants. — *Her* son is learned. — *His* sister
maison f. *domestique* *fil* *est* *savant*. *sœur*
 is married. — *My* ambition, *thy* honesty, and *his* ingratitude.
mariée. — f. *honnêteté* f. h m. — f.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns always relate to some noun spoken of before, with which they agree in gender and number.

The possessive pronouns are :

Singular.		Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	<i>mine</i>
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	<i>thine</i>
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	<i>his, hers, its</i>
Pl. for both genders.				
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		<i>ours</i>
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres		<i>yours</i>
le leur	la leur	les leurs		<i>theirs</i>

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Here is) your hat, (don't take) *mine*. — His
Voici *chapeau* m. *ne prenez pas*
 house and *mine* have been burnt, but *theirs* (has not)
maison f. *et* *ont été brûlées mais* *n'a point*
 suffered. — Your books are better bound than *mine*. — My
souffert. *livre* m. *sont reliés que*
 watch (does not go) so well as *hers*. — Your garden is
montre f. *ne va pas si que* *jardin* m. *est*
 larger than *ours*, but our orchard is larger than *yours*. —
plus grand *verger* m.
 You have taken my gloves, and (I have) taken *yours*. —
avez pris *gant* m. *moi j'ai*
 I know your relations, but I (don't know) *theirs*.
connais *parent* m. pl. *ne connais pas*

§ III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We shall subdivide the Demonstrative pronouns, as we have done the Possessive, into two parts :

- 1st, *Demonstrative Adjectives* ;
- 2d, *Demonstrative Pronouns*.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *Demonstrative* adjectives always precede a substantive, which they modify by pointing it out. They are :

<i>This, or that,</i>	{	CE, before a noun masc. sing. beginning with a consonant, or an <i>h</i> aspirated.
		CET, before a noun masc. sing. beginning with a vowel, or an <i>h</i> mute.
		CETTE, before any feminine noun.
<i>These, or those,</i>	{	CES, before any noun in the plural, whether masculine or feminine.

RULE. — The Demonstrative adjectives must be repeated in French before every substantive, though in English *this, that, these, those*, are frequently used before the first substantive only, and understood before the others ; as,

Ces hommes, ces femmes, et ces | *Those men, women, and children*
enfants jouent. | *are playing.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

This picture, *that* bird, *this* doll, *these* flowers, and
tableau m. *oiseau* m. *poupée* f. *fleur* et
those shells are (my sister's). — Taste *this* wine. — Take
coquillage sont à ma sœur. Goûtez *vin* m. Prenez
one of *these* biscuits. — *Those* boys and girls (are going) to
— m. *garçon* *fille* vont
school. — Give him *this* book and *that* slate. — *These*
art. école Donnez-lui *livre* m. *ardoise* f.
cups and saucers (are not) clean.
tasse soucoupe ne sont pas propre

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns serve to point out the persons or things which they represent. They are :

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
ce	.	<i>this, that, it.</i>	No plural.		
celui	celle	<i>that.</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those.</i>
celui-ci	celle-ci	<i>this.</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these.</i>
celui-là	celle-là	<i>that.</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those</i>
ceci	-	<i>this.</i>	} No plural.		
cela	-	<i>that.</i>			

Ce, demonstrative *pronoun*, differs from **cet**, demonstrative *adjective*, in this, that the former is always joined to the verb *être*, to be, or followed by *qui*, or *que*; whereas the latter is always followed by a substantive. Thus, in this phrase: **Ce qui me platt, c'est sa modestie**, what (*the thing which*) pleases me is his modesty, **ce** is a demonstrative *pronoun*; and it is a demonstrative *adjective* in the following: **Ce juge est incorruptible**, that judge is incorruptible.

When **cet** does not come immediately before a substantive, it answers for both numbers and genders; as,

De toutes les vertus celle qui se fait
le plus chérir, c'est l'humanité.
Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inven-
tèrent l'écriture.—(BOSSUET.)

*Of all the virtues, that which makes
itself most beloved is humanity.
It was the Phœnicians who invented
writing.*

The French Academy remark that **cet** joined to the verb *être* generally forms a gallicism.

The Pronouns **celui**, **celle**, **ceux**, **celles**, always relate to a noun expressed before; as,

Voici votre livre, où est celui de
votre frère?
J'admire les traductions de Pope
et celles de Delille.

*Here is your book, where is that
of your brother?
I admire the translations of Pope
and those of Delille.*

When two or more objects have been spoken of, **celui-ci**, **celle-ci**, **ceux-ci**, **celles-ci** are used with reference to the nearest, and **celui-là**, **celle-là**, **ceux-là**, **celles-là** refer to the most distant, or first-mentioned object; as,

Voilà deux pistolets, lequel choisirez-vous, celui-ci ou celui-là?
Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle;
cependant nous négligeons celle-ci, et nous sacrifions tout pour celui-là.

*There are two pistols, which do you
choose, this or that?
The body perishes, the soul is im-
mortal; yet we neglect the latter,
and sacrifice every thing for the
former.*

This last example shows also that the English words *the former* are likewise expressed by **celui-là**, **celle-là**, **ceux-là**, **celles-là**; and, *the latter* by **celui-ci**, **celle-ci**, **ceux-ci**, **celles-ci**, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they relate.

REMARK.—**Là** means *there*, and **ci** is an abbreviation of **ici**, *here*; so that **celui-ci** is equivalent to *this here*, and **celui-là**, to *that there*.

Ceci and *cela* are never joined to nouns, nor used with reference to any, they stand for something pointed at, but not named; they have no plural, and are both masculine.

Ceci est bon, mais *cela* est mauvais. | This is good, but that is bad.
Donnez-moi *ceci*, et gardez *cela*. | Give me this, and keep that.

EXERCISE XXX.

It is a misfortune. — (Here is) your umbrella, and *that* of
est malheur m. *Voici* parapluie m.
your cousin. — Bring my scissors, and *those* of my
— m. *Apportez* ciseaux m. pl.
sister. — Which of these watches (will you have), *this* or
sœur. *Laquelle* montre f. *voulez-vous* ou
that? — (Here are) fine pictures, buy *these* or *those*. —
Voici de beau tableau m. *achetez*

Give *this* to (the lady) and *that* to (the gentleman). — An
Donnez madame monsieur.
upright magistrate and a brave officer are equally
²*intègre* ¹*magistrat* m. — officier m. *sont également*
estimable; *the former* makes war against domestic
— fait art. guerre f. à art. ²*domestique*
enemies, *the latter* protects us against foreign enemies.
¹*ennemi* m. pl. . protège contre art. ²*extérieur* ¹

§ IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative Pronouns are those which relate to a noun or pronoun, or phrase going before, which is thence called the *antecedent*.

The relative pronouns are: *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont, le, la, les, où, en, y*.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS, *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont*.

These pronouns are called *relative*, when they have an antecedent.

Qui, que, quoi are of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

qui,	{	<i>who,</i>	{	Dieu <i>qui</i> est juste,	{	<i>God</i> who is just.
		<i>which,</i>		la dame <i>qui</i> parle, les oiseaux <i>qui</i> chantent,		<i>the lady</i> who is speaking. <i>the birds</i> which are singing.

que, { *whom*, l'homme *que* vous voyez, *the man whom you see.*
 { *which*, les livres *que* vous lisez, *the books which you read.*
 quoi, *what*, { voilà de *quoi* je voulais { *that is what I wished to speak*
 vous parler, *to you about.*

REMARK. — *Que* loses the *e* before a vowel ; *qui* never changes.

LEQUEL is a compound of *quel*, and the article *le* with which it incorporates in its natural or contracted state in the following manner :

Singular.		Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which.</i>
duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	<i>of which.</i>
auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which.</i>

This pronoun is used with reference to persons and things, with which it always agrees in gender and number. *Quoi* sometimes supplies its place, but in speaking of things only.

DONT, a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers, is used when speaking of persons or things : it supplies the place of *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, *de quoi*, but is never used to ask a question.

EXAMPLES of *lequel* and *dont*.

lequel, m.	<i>which</i> ,	{ le fauteuil sur lequel je suis assis,	{ <i>the arm-chair on which I am sitting.</i>
laquelle, f.	<i>which</i> ,	{ c'est une raison à laquelle il n'y a point de réplique,	{ <i>it is a reason to which there is no reply.</i>
<i>dont</i> ,	{ <i>of which</i> ,	{ c'est une maladie dont on ne connaît pas la cause,	{ <i>it is an illness, the cause of which is unknown.</i>
	{ <i>of whom</i> ,	{ l'homme dont vous parlez,	{ <i>the man of whom you speak.</i>
	{ <i>whose</i> ,	{ la nature dont nous ignorons les secrets,	{ <i>nature, whose secrets are unknown to us.</i>

Qui, *que*, *quoi*, *lequel*, are called relative pronouns *absolute*, when they have no antecedent, and only present to the mind a vague and indeterminate idea.

In this case *qui* is employed only in speaking of persons, *que* and *quoi* in speaking of things.

Lequel marks a distinction, and is used in interrogative sentences, when asking which person or thing among several.

EXAMPLES.

qui,	{ who, whom,	{ qui (<i>quelle personne</i>) est là ? je ne sais qui est arrivé, qui appelez-vous ? consultez qui vous voudrez,	{ who is there ? I don't know who has arrived. whom do you call ? consult whom you please.
		{ que (<i>quelle chose</i>) cherchez-vous ? je ne sais que faire,	{ what are you seeking ? I don't know what to do.
		{ à quoi (<i>à quelle chose</i>) pensez-vous ? quoi de plus aimable que la vertu ?	{ what are you thinking of ? what more amiable than virtue ?
		{ lequel préférez-vous ? choisissez lequel vous voudrez,	{ which do you prefer ? choose which you please.
laquelle, <i>f.</i>	which,	{ laquelle de ses sœurs est mariée ?	{ which of his sisters is married ?

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS *le, la, les*.

These pronouns always accompany a *verb*, and are thus easily distinguished from the articles *le, la, les* (see page 8), which constantly accompany a *noun*.

EXAMPLES.

le, <i>mas.</i>	{ him, it,	{ je le connais, voilà un bon livre, lisez- le,	{ I know him. there is a good book, read it.
la, <i>fem.</i>		{ her, it,	{ je la vois, vous avez la clef, donnez- la moi,
les, <i>for both genders.</i>	{ them,	{ vous les trouverez dans mon tiroir, il les connaît,	{ you will find them in my drawer. he knows them.

In this phrase, *Je connais les princes et les princesses, je les vois souvent*, (I know the princes and the princesses, I see them often), the two first *les* are articles, the third is a pronoun.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *où*.

Où is a relative pronoun when used instead of *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, preceded by a preposition. This pronoun is employed only in speaking of things, and is of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort.—(VOLTAIRE.)	The instant in which we are born is a step towards death.
La maison où je demeure. (ACAD.)	The house in which I live.
Les pays par où j'ai passé.	The countries through which I have passed.
La nécessité où il était réduit.	The necessity to which he was reduced.

EXERCISE XXXI.

The man *who* reasons. — The lady *whom* I see. — The sciences *to which* he applies. — Where is the gentleman — *f. pl.* *s'applique.* *Où est monsieur of whom* you speak? — With *whom* do you live? — *What parlez?* *Avec demeurez-vous?* (shall we do) to-day? — *Which* (do you like) best of those *ferons-nous aujourd'hui?* *aimez-vous* two pictures? — Prosperity gets us friends, and *tableaux m. art. prospérité f. fait pr. art. ami* adversity tries them. — The state *in which* I find myself. *art. adversité f. éprouve état m. me trouve.*

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *en*.

En, a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers, is employed in speaking of persons and things: its principal use is to hold the place of a word or phrase already expressed which we do not wish to repeat, and it expresses *of him, of her, of it, of them, some, any, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

Cette demoiselle vous plaît, vous <i>en</i> parlez souvent.	That young lady pleases you, you often speak of her.
Cette maladie est dangereuse, il pourrait <i>en</i> mourir.	That illness is dangerous, he might die of it.
A-t-il des protecteurs? oui, il <i>en</i> a de très-puissants.	Has he any protectors? yes, he has some very powerful ones.
Vous parlez d'argent, <i>en</i> avez-vous? oui, j' <i>en</i> ai.	You talk of money, have you any? yes, I have some.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *y*.

Y, a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers, is sometimes employed with reference to persons, but it is of frequent and indispensable use when speaking of things: it corresponds to the English *to him, to her, to it, to them, in it, therein, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

Je connais cet homme, je ne m'y fie pas.	<i>I know that man, I do not trust to him.</i>
Il aime l'étude et s'y livre entièrement.	<i>He loves study, and devotes himself entirely to it.</i>
J'ai reçu sa lettre, j'y répondrai.	<i>I have received his letter, I shall answer (to) it.</i>
Vos raisons sont bonnes, je m'y rends.	<i>Your reasons are good, I yield to them.</i>
J'y ai remarqué quelques fautes.	<i>I observed some faults in it, or in them.</i>

N. B. — The relative pronouns *en* and *y* are always placed before the verb, except with an imperative affirmative.

[See, in the Chapter on the Adverb, what we say upon *y*, adverb.]

EXERCISE XXXII.

They seldom speak of him. — Give me that, I
¹rarement ²parlent ¹ Donnez-moi
 (am in want) of it. — He likes French authors, he often
^{ai besoin} aime art. ²français ¹auteur m. ³souvent
 speaks of them. — (Here are) strawberries, will you
²parle ¹ Voici pr. art. ¹fraise voulez
 have any? — Take some more. — He is an honest man,
²Prenez davantage. C'est honnête
 trust to him. — I consent to it. — Those arguments are
^{flex-vous} consens — m. sont
 conclusive; I see no reply to them. — The undertaking
 concluding n' vois point de réplique entreprise f.
 is difficult, but you (will succeed) in it.
 difficile mais réussirez

§ V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are so called, because they denote persons or things in an indefinite or general manner.

They are the following: *on, quiconque, quelqu'un, chacun, autrui, personne, l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre, tel, tout.*

ON, one, they, we, people, it, &c. *On* is a contraction of the word *homme*, man. This pronoun is of very extensive use in the French language; we employ it whenever we speak in general terms, without designating any particular person: it has commonly a plural meaning, but always requires the verb to be in the third person singular.

EXAMPLES.

ON ne peut lire Télémaque sans devenir meilleur.	One cannot read <i>Telemachus</i> without becoming better.
ON dit que nous aurons bientôt la guerre.	They, or people, say we shall soon have war.
ON pense que la nouvelle est vraie.	It is thought that the news is true.
ON apprend mieux ce que l'on comprend, que ce que l'on ne comprend pas.	We learn better what we understand, than what we do not.

REMARK. — For the sake of euphony, the pronoun *on* takes an *l*, with an apostrophe (*l'*), after the words *et, si, où, que, qui, and quoi.*

EXAMPLES.

Et l'on dit, Si l'on savait, Où l'on veut, Ce que l'on comprend, Ceux à qui l'on doit,	instead of	{ et on dit. si on savait. où on veut. ce qu'on comprend. ceux à qui on doit.
--	------------	---

However, *on* remains the same when the following word is *le, la, or les*; we say: *et on le dit, si on le savait, and not et l'on le dit, si l'on le savait.*

L'on for *on* must never begin a sentence.

QUICONQUE, whoever, whosoever, any person whatever. This pronoun has no plural, and is used only with reference to persons.

EXAMPLES.

Quiconque a dit cela n'a pas dit la vérité.	Whoever said so, has not spoken the truth.
Quiconque me trompera sera puni.	Whoever deceives me shall be punished.

Quiconque is generally masculine ; however, when it evidently relates to a female, the adjective is put in the feminine ; as,

Mesdames, <i>quiconque</i> de vous sera assez hardie pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir. — (L'ACAD.)	<i>Ladies, whoever of you shall be bold enough to speak ill of me, I will make her repent it.</i>
--	---

QUELQU'UN, *somebody, some one.*

EXAMPLES.

J'attends <i>quelqu'un</i> .	<i>I wait for somebody.</i>
<i>Quelqu'un</i> me l'a dit.	<i>Somebody told me so.</i>

This pronoun takes gender and number ; thus : —

<i>Quelqu'un</i> , m.	} one out of several.
<i>Quelqu'une</i> , f.	
<i>Quelques-uns</i> , m. pl.	} some, several, out of a greater number.
<i>Quelques-unes</i> , f. pl.	

<i>Quelqu'un</i> de ces messieurs.	<i>Some one of these gentlemen.</i>
<i>Quelqu'une</i> de ces dames.	<i>Some one of these ladies.</i>
J'ai lu <i>quelques-uns</i> de ces livres.	<i>I have read some of those books.</i>
Connaissez-vous <i>quelques-unes</i> de ces dames ?	<i>Do you know any of those ladies ?</i>
Oui, j'en connais <i>quelques-unes</i> .	<i>Yes, I know some of them.</i>

CHACUN, m., **CHACUNE**, f., *every one, each* ; without plural.

<i>Chacun</i> vit à sa manière.	<i>Every one lives after his own way.</i>
<i>Chacune</i> de ces demoiselles.	<i>Each of these young ladies.</i>

Un chacun, much used by old writers, is now obsolete.

[See page 49, what we say on the indefinite pronominal adjective *chaque*.]

AUTRUI, *others, other people*. (From the Latin *alterius*, gen. of *alter*, other.) This pronoun is masculine, and has no plural ; it is generally preceded by a preposition, and is used in speaking of persons only.

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d' <i>autrui</i> .	<i>Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.</i>
Ne faites pas à <i>autrui</i> ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.	<i>Do not to others, what you would not wish others should do to you.</i>

PERSONNE. This pronoun is always masculine and singular. When it means *no person, nobody, no one*, it takes the negative *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Personne ne sera assez hardi.Je n'ai vu *personne*.

Nobody will be bold enough.

I have seen nobody.

When *personne* is used without a negative in interrogative sentences, and those expressing doubt and uncertainty, it means *any person, any body, any one*.

EXAMPLES.

Y a-t-il *personne* d'assez hardi ?Je doute que *personne* y réussisse.—(L'ACAD.)

Is there any body bold enough ?

I doubt whether any one will succeed in it.

PERSONNE, as a noun, is always feminine, and is used both in the singular and plural ; it means *a person, a man or woman, people*.

EXAMPLES.

C'est une *personne* de mérite.C'est une *personne* très-instruite.Des *personnes* bien intentionnées.

He is a man of merit.

She is a very well-informed person.

Well-intentioned people.

L'UN L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE L'AUTRE, *f.* ; LES UNS LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*, *one another, each other*.

This pronoun is employed in speaking of persons and things. *L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two.

If there be any preposition, it must be placed between *l'un l'autre*, and not before, as is the case in English before *one another* or *each other*.

EXAMPLES.

Ils se louent l'un l'autre.

Les soldats s'excitaient les uns les autres,

Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre.

They praise one another.

The soldiers excited one another.

They speak ill of each other.

L'UN ET L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE ET L'AUTRE, *f.* ; LES UNS ET LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES ET LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*, *the one and the other, both*.

EXAMPLES.

L'un et l'autre sont bons.*L'une et l'autre* rapportent le même
Ils se réunissaient les uns et les autres contre l'ennemi.

[fait]

Both are good.

Both relate the same circumstance.

They all united against the enemy.

When *l'un et l'autre* is followed by a substantive, it is no longer an indefinite pronoun, but an adjective; as, *l'un et l'autre CHEVAL*, both horses; *l'une et l'autre SAISON*, both seasons.

TEL, *m.*, TELLE, *f.*, *such, such a one, such a man, such a woman, he who, she who.* This word is an indefinite pronoun in the following and similar phrases, where it holds the place of the substantive *homme* or *femme*, or of the pronoun *celui* or *celle*; it is employed only in speaking of persons, and is never used in the plural in this sense.—

(*Regnier-Desmarais, Restaut, and the modern Grammarians.*)

EXAMPLES.

<i>Tel</i> rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain.	Such as laugh to-day will cry to-morrow.
<i>Telle</i> se croit belle qui souvent ne l'est pas.	Such a woman thinks herself handsome, who is not so.

But *tel* must be considered as an adjective when it is joined to a noun, or indicates comparison between persons or things; as,

Une <i>telle</i> conduite vous fait honneur.	Such conduct does you honour.
De <i>tels</i> animaux ne sont pas communs.	Such animals are not common.

[For any further explanation respecting the Pronouns, see the Syntax.]

EXERCISE XXXIII.

One has often need of a (person inferior) to oneself. —
a souvent besoin plus petit m. que soi.
 They say he is learned. — God (will punish) *whosoever*
dit qu' est Dieu punira
 transgresses his laws. — *Somebody* has taken my umbrella. —
transgresse loi a pris parapluie m.
Every one (will read) in his turn. — We (must not) covet
lira à tour m. Il ne faut pas désirer
 the property of *other people*. — Pride becomes *nobody*.
bien m. art. orgueil m. convient à
 — Fire and water destroy *each other*. — I have read
 art. *feu m. art. eau f. se détruisent* ai lu
 the *Iliad* and the *Eneid*, *both* have delighted me. —
Iliade f. Énéide f. ont enchanté
 Do you know Mr. *such a one*?
Connaissez-vous un

OF INDEFINITE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

We shall treat here of the *indefinite pronominal adjectives*, on account of their affinity with the indefinite pronouns; these adjectives are: *chaque, nul, aucun, pas un, même, plusieurs, tout, quelconque, quel, quelque*.

CHAQUE, *every, each*, of both genders, and without plural. This word must not be confounded with *chacun*; *chaque* is always followed by a substantive; *chacun*, on the contrary, is used absolutely, and without a substantive (see page 46.)

EXAMPLES.

<i>Chaque âge a ses plaisirs.</i>	<i>Every age has its pleasures.</i>
<i>Chaque science a ses principes.</i>	<i>Every science has its principles.</i>

NUL, *m., NULLE, f.*; **AUCUN**, *m., AUCUNE, f.*; **PAS UN**, *m., PAS UNE, f.*; *none, no, no one, not one, not any.*

These expressions have nearly the same meaning when accompanied by the negative *ne* placed before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Nul homme n'est parfait.</i>	<i>No man is perfect.</i>
<i>Vous n'avez aucune preuve; non, pas une.</i>	<i>You have no proof; no, not one.</i>

N. B.—*No*, in answer to a question, is translated by *non*.

MÊME, *same, self, like, alike*; plural, **MÊMES**; of both genders.

EXAMPLES.

<i>C'est le même homme, la même personne.</i>	<i>It is the same man, the same person.</i>
<i>Les cendres du berger et du roi sont les mêmes.</i>	<i>The ashes of the shepherd and the king are alike.</i>

Même is often placed after a substantive or a pronoun, to give more energy to the expression.

EXAMPLES.

<i>C'est la bonté même.</i>	<i>She is kindness itself.</i>
<i>Le roi lui-même s'y opposa.</i>	<i>The king himself opposed it.</i>
<i>Nous le ferons nous-mêmes.</i>	<i>We will do it ourselves.</i>

Même is also an adverb; then it is invariable, and means *even, also*. This is the *etiam* of the Latins.

50 OF INDEFINITE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

EXAMPLE.

Les femmes et même les enfants		Women and even children were
furent tués.		killed.

PLUSIEURS, *several, many*. It is of both genders, and has no singular.

EXAMPLES.

Plusieurs historiens ont raconté.		Several historians have related.
En plusieurs occasions.		On several occasions.
Plusieurs de vos amis.		Many of your friends.

TOUT. There are various kinds of this word.

1^o. *Tout*, substantive masculine, *the whole*; the *totum* of the Latins:

Ne prenez pas le tout.		Do not take the whole.
------------------------	--	------------------------

2^o. *Tout*, adjective, *all, whole*; in Latin, *totus, omnis*:

<i>Tout</i> le monde; toute la terre;		All the world; all the earth; all
tous les hommes.		men.
<i>Tout</i> l'homme ne meurt pas.		The whole man does not die.

3^o. *Tout*, indefinite pronominal adjective, meaning *every, each, any, any one*; the *quisque* of the Latins. In this sense, *tout* never takes an article nor a pronoun, and is always singular:

<i>Tout</i> citoyen doit servir son		Every citizen ought to serve his
pays.		country.
Toute peine mérite salaire.-(L'Ac.)		Every labour deserves a reward.

4^o. *Tout*, adverb, *quite, entirely, however*; in Latin *omnino, plane*:

Elle fut tout étonnée.		She was quite astonished.
Nos vaisseaux sont tout prêts.		Our vessels are quite ready.

QUELCONQUE, *whatever, whatsoever*. When used with a negative, it is nearly synonymous with *nil, aucun*; it is of both genders, has no plural, and is always placed after a substantive.

EXAMPLES.

Il n'y a homme quelconque.		There is no man whatever.
Il n'y a raison quelconque.		There is no reason whatsoever.

When *quelconque* is used without a negative, it admits of a plural.

EXAMPLE.

Deux points quelconques.-(L'Ac.)		Two points whatsoever.
----------------------------------	--	------------------------

QUEL, m., QUELLE, f.; QUELS, m. pl., QUELLES, f. pl., *what*. This indefinite pronominal adjective is used principally in interrogations and exclamations, or to express uncertainty and doubt. It is always followed by a noun expressed or understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quel maître?—Quelle dame?</i>	<i>What master?—What lady</i>
<i>Quels livres, quelles brochures</i>	<i>What books, what pamphlets do</i>
<i>lisez-vous?</i>	<i>you read?</i>
<i>Quel bonheur!</i>	<i>What happiness!</i>
<i>Quel homme vous êtes!</i>	<i>What a man you are!</i>
<i>Il ne sait quel parti prendre.</i>	<i>He knows not what course to take.</i>
<i>J'ai des nouvelles à vous apprendre.</i>	<i>I have news to tell you. — What is</i>
<i>— Quelles (nouvelles) sont-elles?</i>	<i>it?</i>

QUELQUE, s., QUELQUES, pl., *some*, of both genders. The singular denotes an indeterminate person or thing, and the plural an indeterminate number of persons or things.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque auteur en a parlé.</i>	<i>Some author has mentioned it.</i>
<i>Il y a quelques difficultés.</i>	<i>There are some difficulties.</i>

Quelque, in this sense, corresponds to the *aliquis* of the Latins.

(The *Fr. Academy*, *M. Lemare*, and the modern Grammarians.)

Quelque, with *que* before the succeeding verb, means *whatever*. This is the *quantuscunque, quantacunque* of the Latins.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelque soin qu'on prenne.</i>	<i>Whatever care one may take.</i>
<i>Quelque raison qu'il ait.</i>	<i>Whatever reason he may have.</i>
<i>Quelques efforts que vous fassiez.</i>	<i>Whatever efforts you may make.</i>

But should *quelque* be followed by the verb *être*, to be, it is written in two words (*quel que*); in this case, *quel* must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb. This expression answers to the *qualiscunque* of the Latins.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quelle que soit votre intention.</i>	<i>Whatever your intention may be.</i>
<i>Quels que soient vos desseins.</i>	<i>Whatever your designs may be.</i>
<i>Quelles que soient vos vues.—(Ac.)</i>	<i>Whatever your views may be.</i>

52 OF INDEFINITE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Quelque followed by an adverb, or an adjective without a noun, is considered as an adverb, and is invariable ; it corresponds to the English *however, howsoever*, and to the Latin adverb *quantumvis* ; as,

<i>Quelque bien écrits que soient ces ouvrages, ils ont peu de succès.</i>	However well written these works may be, they have little success.
<i>Quelque puissants qu'ils soient, je ne les crains point. — (L'ACAD.)</i>	However powerful they may be, I do not fear them.

Quelque is also considered as an adverb, when it is immediately followed by a cardinal number ; then, it means *about, nearly*, and answers to the *circiter* of the Latins. In this sense, *quelque*, is of the familiar style ; as,

Alexandre perdit <i>quelque</i> trois cents hommes, lorsqu'il défît Porus. — (D'ABLANCOURT.)	Alexander lost about three hundred men, when he defeated Porus.
--	---

EXERCISE XXXIV.

*Every country has its customs. — No one is dissatisfied with pays m. a coutume n'est mécontent de his own understanding. — No reason can justify a * jugement m. raison f. ne peut justifier le falsehood. — It is the same sun that (gives light to) all mensonge m. C'est soleil m. qui éclaire the nations of the earth. — Divide the whole into several — f. pl. terre f. Divisez en parts. — The whole fleet is at sea. — Every truth (is not) partie ² ¹ flotte f. est en mer. vérité f. n'est pas proper (to be told.) — Any pretext whatever. bon à dire. Un prétexte m.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

*No one is satisfied with his fortune, nor dissatisfied with his n' content de — f. ni own wit. — No road of flowers conducts to glory. — * esprit m. chemin m. ne conduit art. p. 20 What lesson have you learnt? — (There are) some defects in leçon f. avez-vous appris ? Il y a défaut dans that picture. — Whatever your talents (may be), you tableau m. — m. pl. soient (will not succeed) without application. ne réussirez pas sans —*

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

FRENCH VERBS are divided into five kinds: *Active*, *Passive*, *Neuter*, *Pronominal*, and *Impersonal*, or rather *Unipersonal*, besides the two Auxiliary Verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be.

There are FOUR CONJUGATIONS in French, which are distinguished by the termination of the Present of the Infinitive.

The first	ends in	ER,	as,	<i>parler</i> ,	to speak.
„ second	„ „	IR,	„	<i>finir</i> ,	to finish.
„ third	„ „	OIR,	„	<i>recevoir</i> ,	to receive.
„ fourth	„ „	RE,	„	<i>vendre</i> ,	to sell.

In each of these Conjugations, there are *regular*, *irregular*, and *defective* verbs.

A verb is called *regular*, when all its tenses take exactly the terminations of one of the four model conjugations, which are inserted hereafter in their proper places. A verb is called *irregular*, when, in some of its tenses, it takes terminations different from those of the conjugation to which it belongs; and it is termed *defective*, when it is not used in some tenses or persons.

As the compound tenses of all verbs are formed by the help of *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, for which reason these two are called *auxiliary* verbs, they take precedence of the four principal Conjugations, instead of being classed among the irregular verbs to which they belong.

“ It may not,” says Lindley Murray, “ be generally proper for young persons beginning the study of grammar, to commit to memory all the tenses of the verbs. If the *simple* tenses be committed to memory, and the rest carefully perused, the business will not be tedious to the scholars, and their progress will be rendered more obvious and pleasing.”

Without wishing to dictate any particular method of tuition, we think the preceding remark of the celebrated English Grammarian peculiarly applicable to the learning of French verbs. Let the scholar be first made familiar with the *simple* tenses, and he will find the rest an extremely easy task.

The most part of Anglo-French Grammarians mix the simple and compound tenses; in this Grammar they are kept separate, but presented at one view, side by side, so that while the student is learning a *simple* tense, he also forms an acquaintance with its *compound*.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Avoir, <i>to have.</i>	Avoir eu, <i>to have had.</i>
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.
Ayant, <i>having.</i>	Ayant eu, <i>having had.</i>
PARTICIPLE PAST. — Eu, m., eue, f., had.	

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.	
J'ai,*	<i>I have.</i>
tu as,	<i>thou hast.</i>
il, or elle a,	<i>he, or she has.</i>
nous avons,	<i>we have.</i>
vous avez,†	<i>you have.</i>
ils, or elles ont,	<i>they have.</i>

IMPERFECT.	
J'avais,	<i>I had.</i>
tu avais,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il avait,	<i>he had.</i>
nous avions,	<i>we had.</i>
vous aviez,	<i>you had.</i>
ils avaient,	<i>they had.</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE.	
J'eus,‡	<i>I had.</i>
tu eus,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il eut,	<i>he had.</i>
nous eûmes,§	<i>we had.</i>
vous eûtes,§	<i>you had.</i>
ils eurent,	<i>they had.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	
J'ai eu,	<i>I have had.</i>
tu as eu,	<i>thou hast had.</i>
il a eu,	<i>he has had.</i>
nous avons eu,	<i>we have had.</i>
vous avez eu,	<i>you have had.</i>
ils ont eu,	<i>they have had.</i>

PLUPERFECT.	
J'avais eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu avais eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il avait eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous avions eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous aviez eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils avaient eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.	
J'eus eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu eus eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il eut eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous eûmes eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous eûtes eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils eurent eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

* We write *fai*, and pronounce *fé*.
† All the second persons plural of the *simple tenses* end with *s* or *z* — with *s*, when the preceding *e* is pronounced with the sound of *a* in the English alphabet; as, *vous avez*, *vous parlez* — and with *z*, when the same *e* is not pronounced at all; as, *vous eûtes*, *vous fûtes*, &c.
‡ *J'eus* is pronounced *fé*.
§ The first and second persons plural of the *Preterite Definite* of all verbs take a circumflex accent over the vowel that terminates the last syllable but one.

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aurai,	<i>I shall have.</i>
tu auras,	<i>thou shalt have.</i>
il aura,	<i>he shall have.</i>
nous aurons,	<i>we shall have.</i>
vous aurez,	<i>you shall have.</i>
ils auront,	<i>they shall have.</i>

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai eu,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have had.</i>
tu auras eu,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il aura eu,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous aurons eu,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez eu,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils auront eu,	<i>they shall</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

J'aurais,	<i>I should have.</i>
tu aurais,	<i>thou shouldst have.</i>
il aurait,	<i>he should have.</i>
nous aurions,	<i>we should have.</i>
vous auriez,	<i>you should have.</i>
ils auraient,	<i>they should have.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais eu,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have had.</i>
tu aurais eu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait eu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions eu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez eu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient eu,	<i>they should</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Aie,	<i>Have (thou.)</i>
qu'il aie,	<i>let him have.</i>
ayons,	<i>let us have.</i>
ayez,	<i>have (ye.)</i>
qu'ils aient,	<i>let them have.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que j'aie,	<i>That I may</i>	} <i>have.</i>
que tu aies,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	
qu'il aie,	<i>that he may</i>	
que nous ayons,	<i>that we may</i>	
que vous ayez,	<i>that you may</i>	
qu'ils aient,	<i>that they may</i>	

PAST.

Que j'aie eu,	<i>That I may</i>	} <i>have had.</i>
que tu aies eu,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	
qu'il aie eu,	<i>that he may</i>	
que nous ayons eu,	<i>that we may</i>	
que vous ayez eu,	<i>that you may</i>	
qu'ils aient eu,	<i>that they may</i>	

IMPERFECT.

Que j'eusse,	<i>That I might</i>	} <i>have.</i>
que tu eusses,	<i>that thou mightst</i>	
qu'il eût,*	<i>that he might</i>	
que nous eussions,	<i>that we might</i>	
que vous eussiez,	<i>that you might</i>	
qu'ils eussent,	<i>that they might</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse eu,	<i>That I might</i>	} <i>have had.</i>
que tu eusses eu,	<i>that thou mightst</i>	
qu'il eût eu,	<i>that he might</i>	
que nous eussions eu,	<i>that we might</i>	
que vous eussiez eu,	<i>that you might</i>	
qu'ils eussent eu,†	<i>that they might</i>	

* The third person singular of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive of all verbs takes a circumflex accent over the vowel that precedes the final *t*: *qu'il chantât, qu'il finît, qu'il vécût, &c.*

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Conditional past.

REMARK I. In the following Exercise, the noun being used in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to place before the noun either *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the directions given, Rule III, page 10.

EXERCISE XXXV.

INDICATIVE. PRÆS.—I have money.—He has wealth.—
argent m. bien m.

She has patience and sweetness.— We have relations and
— f. douceur f. parent

friends.—You have gold and silver.— They have ambition
ami or m. argent m. m. — f.

and perseverance.— They have pomegranates and pineapples.
persévérance f. f. grenade f. ananas m.

IMPERF.— We had umbrellas and cloaks.— You had
parapluie m. manteau m.

muskets, rifles, pistols and artillery.— They had
fusil m. carabine f. pistolet m. artillerie f.

swords, lances, pikes, pitchforks, bows, and arrows.
épée f. — f. pique f. fourche f. arc m. flèche f.

PRÆTERITE DEFIN.—I had strawberries.—She had raspberries.
fraise f. framboise f.

We had gooseberries.—You had cherries.—They had grapes.
groseille f. cerise f. f. raisin m.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

Peter has talent and experience.— You have courage and
Pierre — m. expérience f. — m.

firmness.— John and James have walnuts and filberts.— Jane
fermeté f. Jean Jacques noix f. aveline f. Jeanne

had prudence and riches.— He has had good luck.— We
ind-2 — f. richesse pl. bonheur m.

shall have soup or fish.— Andrew shall have oranges,
soupe f. poisson m. André — f.

and William lemons.— Louisa and Martha shall have figs
29 citron m. 31 31' figue f.

and plums.—That we may have had snow, rain, and wind.
prune f. neige f. pluie f. vent m.

—Having eyes, see ye not? Having ears, hear
p. 13 ne voyez- point ? oreille f. n'entendez.

ye not?

REMARK II.—The addition of an adjective, *after* the noun, makes no difference as to the use of *du, de la, de l', des*. But, the adjective must agree with the noun, in gender and number.—See Rules, p. 14 and 19.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

INDIC. PRÉS.—I have red ink. —She has clear and
²rouge ¹encre f. ²clair
 just ideas.—We have ripe pears.—You have sincere friends.
²juste ¹idée f. ²mûr ¹poire f. ²sincère ¹
 —Margaret and Sophia have green parasols and purple shawls.
 Marguerite Sophie ²vert ¹—— m. ²violet ¹châle m.

FUT. ABS.—We shall have white curtains.—You will have
²blanc ¹rideau m.
 true and real pleasures. — They will have new houses.
²vrai ²réel ¹plaisir m. ²neuf ¹maison f.

SUBJ. PRÉS.—In order that I may have ready money.—
 Afin ²comptant ¹
 That you may have enlightened judges and faithful servants.
²éclairé ¹juge m. ²fidèle ¹domestique

REMARK III.—But, if the adjective comes *before* the noun, then, only *de, or d'*, is to be used before the adjective, instead of *du, de la, de l', des*, without any regard to the gender or the number of the noun.

I have some good snuff.—He has good brandy, and excellent wine. — We have beautiful walks in our town. —
^{p. 15} tabac m. ^{eau-de-vie} f.
^{p. 20} vin m. ^{beau} promenade f. ²⁹⁶
 She had great qualities.—We shall have had long sufferings.—
 ind-2 grand qualité f. ^{p. 19} souffrance f.
 I should have fine pictures and pretty engravings.—You would
^{p. 19} tableaux m. ^{joli} gravure f.
 have great advantages.—That you may have good reasons to
 advantage m. ^{raison} f.
 give him.— Have you not better pens to lend me?—
 donner lui N' ^{pas} ²⁴ plume f. à prêter
 I have very good pens, but bad ink.
 très ^{mais} mauvais

Recapitulatory EXERCISE upon the three foregoing Remarks.

He has credit, power, authority, and riches.— We
crédit m. puissance f. autorité f. richesse f. pl.
 shall have wine, beer, and cider.—Let us have politeness.—
bière f. cidre m. politesse f.
 We have white bread, delicate meat, and delicious wines.—
¹blanc ¹pain m. ²délicat ¹viande f. ²délicieux
 That they may have prepossessing manners.—She has excellent
²prévenant ¹manière f.
 qualities.—They have small apricots, but large peaches.
petit abricot m. gros pêche f.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB

ÊTRE, TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Être, to be.

PAST.

Avoir été, to have been.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Étant, being.

COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*Ayant été, having been.*PARTICIPLE PAST. — *Été, * been.*

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je suis,	<i>I am.</i>
tu es,	<i>thou art.</i>
il, or elle est,	<i>he, or she is.</i>
nous sommes,	<i>we are.</i>
vous êtes,	<i>you are.</i>
ils, or elles sont,	<i>they are.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRÆTERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai été,	<i>I have been.</i>
tu as été,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
il a été,	<i>he has been.</i>
nous avons été,	<i>we have been.</i>
vous avez été,	<i>you have been.</i>
ils ont été,	<i>they have been.</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'étais,	<i>I was.</i>
tu étais,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il était,	<i>he was.</i>
nous étions,	<i>we were.</i>
vous étiez,	<i>you were.</i>
ils étaient,	<i>they were.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu avais été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il avait été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous avions été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous aviez été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils avaient été,	<i>they had been.</i>

* *Être* never changes its termination.

Simple Tenses.

PRÉTERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus,	<i>I was.</i>
tu fus,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il fut,	<i>he was.</i>
nous fûmes,	<i>we were.</i>
vous fûtes,	<i>you were.</i>
ils furent,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai,	<i>I shall be.</i>
tu seras,	<i>thou shalt be.</i>
il sera,	<i>he shall be.</i>
nous serons,	<i>we shall be.</i>
vous serez,	<i>you shall be.</i>
ils seront,	<i>they shall be.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRÉTERITE ANTERIEUR.

J'eus été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu eus été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il eut été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous eûmes été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous eûtes été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils eurent été,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIEUR.

J'aurai été,	<i>I shall have</i>
tu auras été,	<i>thou shalt have</i>
il aura été,	<i>he shall have</i>
nous aurons été,	<i>we shall have</i>
vous aurez été,	<i>you shall have</i>
ils auront été,	<i>they shall have</i>

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais,	<i>I should be.</i>
tu serais,	<i>thou shouldst be.</i>
il serait,	<i>he should be.</i>
nous serions,	<i>we should be.</i>
vous seriez,	<i>you should be.</i>
ils seraient,	<i>they should be.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais été,	<i>I should have</i>
tu aurais été,	<i>thou shouldst have</i>
il aurait été,	<i>he should have</i>
nous aurions été,	<i>we should have</i>
vous auriez été,	<i>you should have</i>
ils auraient été,	<i>they should have</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Sois,	<i>Be (thou.)</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>let him be.</i>
soyons,	<i>let us be.</i>
soyez,	<i>be (you.)</i>
qu'ils soient,	<i>let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois,	<i>That I may be.</i>
que tu sois,	<i>that thou mayst be.</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>that he may be.</i>
que nous soyons,	<i>that we may be.</i>
que vous soyez,	<i>that you may be.</i>
qu'ils soient,	<i>that they may be.</i>

PRÉTERITE.

Que j'aie été,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu aies été,	<i>that thou mayst</i>
qu'il ait été,	<i>that he may</i>
que nous ayons été,	<i>that we may</i>
que vous ayez été,	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils aient été,	<i>that they may</i>

IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse,	<i>That I might be.</i>
que tu fusses,	<i>that thou mightst be.</i>
qu'il fût,	<i>that he might be.</i>
que nous fussions,	<i>that we might be.</i>
que vous fussiez,	<i>that you might be.</i>
qu'ils fussent,	<i>that they might be.</i>

PLUS-QUE-PERFECT.

Que j'eusse été,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu eusses été,	<i>that thou mightst</i>
qu'il eût été,	<i>that he might</i>
que nous eussions été,	<i>that we might</i>
que vous eussiez été,	<i>that you might</i>
qu'ils eussent été,	<i>that they might</i>

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

Education is good in that boarding-school. — Charity
 art. ³⁰ f. dans pension f. art. *charité* f.
 is not envious; charity is patient; it is full of kindness.—
 n' *point envieux* art. ³⁰ *plein bonté*.
 We shall be ready in time.—She would be frank and impartial.
 à temps. 18 30
 She would have been rich and happy.—They would have
heureux
 been faithful.—Be gentle, compassionate, wise, indulgent, and,
fidèle s. *doux* *compâtissant* 30
 without drowning others, think of reaching the port.
 264 *noyer autrui* *songe à gagner* — m.

OF REGULAR VERBS.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

1. There are, in French, as we have already said, but four conjugations, because all verbs terminate in the Infinitive, in one of four different manners: in *er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*.

2. To conjugate, with greater facility, one verb by another, it is necessary to observe, that in all verbs there are *radical* and *final* letters. The first are like the root of the verb, and contain its meaning: these never change throughout all the different tenses and persons. The *final* letters constitute the termination of the verb, and vary according to tenses and persons. Thus, in *parler*, to speak, the termination common to all verbs of the first conjugation being *er*, the radical letters are *parl*.

3. Among the simple tenses of a verb, there are five which serve to form all the others, and on that account are called *primitive*: these are, the *Present of the Infinitive*, the *Participle present*, the *Participle past*, the *Present of the Indicative*, and the *Preterite definite*.

From the *Present of the Infinitive* are formed :—

1st, The *Future absolute*, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rai*; as, *Parler, je parlerai*; *Finir, je finirai*; *Recevoir, je recevrai*; *Vendre, je vendrai*.

2d, The *Conditional present*, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rais*; as, *Parler, je parlerais*; *Finir, je finirais*; *Recevoir, je recevrais*; *Vendre, je vendrais*.

Some Grammarians form the Conditional present, by adding an *s* to the Future, which is the simplest way, when the Future is known.

From the *Participle present* are formed :—

1st, The *three persons plural of the Present of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent*; as, *Parlant, nous parlons, vous parlez, ils parlent*; *Finissant, nous finissons, vous finissez, ils finissent*, &c.

EXCEPTION.— Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the third person plural of the Present of the Indicative, from the first person singular of the same tense, by changing *s* into *ent*; as, *Je reçois, ils reçoivent*.

2d, The *Imperfect of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ais*; as, *Parlant, je parlais*; *Finissant, je finissais*; *Recevant, je recevais*; *Vendant, je vendais*.

3d, The *Present of the Subjunctive*, by changing *ant* into *e*; as, *Parlant, que je parle*; *Finissant, que je finisse*; *Vendant, que je vende*.

EXCEPTION.— Verbs of the Third Conjugation form only the first and second persons plural from the Participle present; as, *Recevant, que nous recevions, que vous receviez*. The others are formed from the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative, by changing *s* into *se*; as, *Je reçois, que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive, qu'ils reçoivent*.

From the *Participle past* are formed all the compound tenses, by means of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*; as, *avoir parlé, j'ai fini, j'avais reçu, j'aurai vendu*.

From the *Present of the Indicative* is formed the Imperative, by omitting the pronouns; as, *je parle, parle*; *nous finissons, finissons*; *vous recevez, recevez*.

From the *Preterite definite* is formed the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, by changing *ai* into *asse* for the first conjugation; as, *je parlai, que je parlasse*; and, by adding *se* for the three others; as, *je finis, que je finisse*; *je reçus, que je reçusse*; *je vendis, que je vendisse*.

TABLE
OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF REGULAR VERBS.

INFINITIVE Present.	PARTICIPLE Present.	PARTICIPLE Past.	INDICATIVE Present.	PRÆTERITE Definite.
FIRST CONJUGATION.				
Parl- <i>er</i> .	Parl- <i>ant</i> .	Parl- <i>é</i> .	Je parl- <i>e</i> .	Je parl- <i>ai</i> .
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
Fin- <i>ir</i> .	Fin- <i>issant</i> .	Fin- <i>i</i> .	Je fin- <i>is</i> .	Je fin- <i>is</i> .
Ouv- <i>rir</i> .	Ouv- <i>rant</i> .	Ouv- <i>ert</i> .	J'ouv- <i>re</i> .	J'ouv- <i>ris</i> .
Sen- <i>tir</i> .	Sen- <i>tant</i> .	Sen- <i>ti</i> .	Je sen- <i>s</i> .	Je sen- <i>tis</i> .
T- <i>enir</i> .	T- <i>enant</i> .	T- <i>enu</i> .	Je t- <i>iens</i> .	Je t- <i>ins</i> .
THIRD CONJUGATION.				
Rec- <i>avoir</i> .	Rec- <i>evant</i> .	Rec- <i>u</i> .	Je rec- <i>ois</i> .	Je rec- <i>us</i> .
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
Ven- <i>dre</i> .	Ven- <i>dant</i> .	Ven- <i>du</i> .	Je ven- <i>ds</i> .	Je ven- <i>dis</i> .
Pl- <i>aître</i> .	Pl- <i>aisant</i> .	Pl- <i>u</i> .	Je pl- <i>ais</i> .	Je pl- <i>us</i> .
Par- <i>aitre</i> .	Par- <i>aissant</i> .	Par- <i>u</i> .	Je par- <i>ais</i> .	Je par- <i>us</i> .
Réd- <i>uire</i> .	Réd- <i>uisant</i> .	Réd- <i>uit</i> .	Je réd- <i>uis</i> .	Je réd- <i>uisis</i> .
Cra- <i>indre</i> .	Cra- <i>ignant</i> .	Cra- <i>int</i> .	Je cra- <i>ins</i> .	Je cra- <i>ignis</i> .

This Table shows that the *first* and *third* conjugations never change, whereas the *second* and *fourth* vary in such a manner that the *Primitive tenses* of the four principal conjugations are naturally divided into eleven classes.

As, however, these eleven classes have been reduced to *four* by all the most approved Grammarians, we shall give only the models of the conjugation of these four classes, not doubting that with the preceding table of the primitive tenses, the rules we have given for the formation of the tenses, and the subsequent conjugation of all the irregular verbs in general use, the student will be sufficiently guided to conjugate all kinds of verbs.

§ I. OF THE CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

An *Active* verb expresses an action done by the subject, and has an object, either expressed or understood. In this phrase : *Jean aime Dieu*, John loves God, *Jean* is the subject, *aime* the verb active, and *Dieu* the object.

MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER.

PARLER, TO SPEAK.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Parler,	<i>to speak.</i>	Avoir parlé,	<i>to have spoken.</i>
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.	
Parlant,	<i>speaking.</i>	Ayant parlé,	<i>having spoken.</i>
PARTICIPLE PAST.—Parlé, <i>spoken.</i>			

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.		Compound Tenses.		
PRESENT.		PRETERITE INDEFINITE.		
Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>	J'ai parlé,	<i>I have</i>	} <i>spoken.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou speakest.</i>	tu as parlé,	<i>thou hast</i>	
il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>	il a parlé,	<i>he has</i>	
nous parlons,	<i>we speak.</i>	nous avons parlé,	<i>we have</i>	
vous parlez,	<i>you speak.</i>	vous avez parlé,	<i>you have</i>	
ils parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>	ils ont parlé,	<i>they have</i>	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.		
Je parlais,	<i>I was</i>	J'avais parlé,	<i>I had</i>	} <i>spoken.</i>
tu parlais,	<i>thou wast</i>	tu avais parlé,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il parlait,	<i>he was</i>	il avait parlé,	<i>he had</i>	
nous parlions,	<i>we were</i>	nous avions parlé,	<i>we had</i>	
vous parliez,	<i>you were</i>	vous aviez parlé,	<i>you had</i>	
ils parlaient,	<i>they were</i>	ils avaient parlé,	<i>they had</i>	
PRETERITE DEFINITE.		PRETERITE ANTERIOR.		
Je parlai,	<i>I spoke.</i>	J'eus parlé,	<i>I had</i>	} <i>spoken.</i>
tu parlais,	<i>thou spokest.</i>	tu eus parlé,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il parla,	<i>he spoke.</i>	il eut parlé,	<i>he had</i>	
nous parlâmes,	<i>we spoke.</i>	nous eûmes parlé,	<i>we had</i>	
vous parlâtes,	<i>you spoke.</i>	vous eûtes parlé,	<i>you had</i>	
ils parlèrent,	<i>they spoke.</i>	ils eurent parlé,	<i>they had</i>	

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je parlerai,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>speaking</i>
tu parleras,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il parlera,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous parlerons,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous parlerez,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils parleront,	<i>they shall</i>	

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai parlé,	} <i>I shall have spoken.</i>
tu auras parlé,	
il aura parlé,	
nous aurons parlé,	
vous aurez parlé,	
ils auront parlé,	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je parlerais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>speaking</i>
tu parlerais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il parlerait,	<i>he should</i>	
nous parlerions,	<i>we should</i>	
vous parleriez,	<i>you should</i>	
ils parleraient,	<i>they should</i>	

PAST.

J'aurais parlé,	} <i>I should have spoken.</i>
tu aurais parlé,	
il aurait parlé,	
nous aurions parlé,	
vous auriez parlé,	
ils auraient parlé,	

IMPERATIVE.

Parle,	<i>Speak (thou.)</i>
qu'il parle,	<i>let him speak.</i>
parlons,	<i>let us speak.</i>
parlez,	<i>speak (you.)</i>
qu'ils parlent,	<i>let them speak.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je parle,	} <i>That I may speak.</i>
que tu parles,	
qu'il parle,	
que nous parlions,	
que vous parliez,	
qu'ils parlent,	

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie parlé,	} <i>That I may have spoken.</i>
que tu aies parlé,	
qu'il ait parlé,	
que nous ayons parlé,	
que vous ayez parlé,	
qu'ils aient parlé,	

IMPERFECT.

Que je parlasse,	} <i>That I might speak.</i>
que tu parlasses,	
qu'il parlât,	
que nous parlussions,	
que vous parlassiez,	
qu'ils parlassent,	

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse parlé,	} <i>That I might have spoken.</i>
que tu eusses parlé,	
qu'il eût parlé,	
que nous eussions parlé,	
que vous eussiez parlé,	
qu'ils eussent parlé,	

66 EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular Verbs terminating in *er* ; as,

Accepter,	to accept.	fermer,	to shut.
chanter,	to sing.	garder,	to keep.
chercher,	to seek.	louer,	to praise.
demander,	to ask.	montrer,	to show.
donner,	to give.	porter,	to carry.
éviter,	to avoid.	raconter,	to relate.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—I study geography and
étudier art. *géographie* f.

history. — He dines at five o'clock.—We admire the
art. *histoire* f. h m. *dîner* *heure* *admirer*
beauty of that landscape. — You forgive your enemies.—
beauté f. *paysage* m. *pardonner* à *ennemi*

They correct the faults.
corriger *faute* f.

IMPERF.—I was accusing my friend. — He was listening
accuser *ami* *écouter*
attentively. — We were blaming our neighbours. — You were
attentivement. *blâmer* *voisin*
proposing a salutary advice.—They were praising your prudence.
proposer ² *'avis* m. *louer* — f.
— The ancient Peruvians worshipped the sun.
ancien *Péruvien* *adorer* *soleil* m.

EXERCISE XL.

PRÆT. DEF.—I approved his action.—She sung two or three
approuver † — f. *chanter*
songs.—He borrowed money.—We declined his offer.
chanson *emprunter* pr. art. *argent* m. *refuser* † *offre* f.
You rewarded the servant. — They declared war.
récompenser *domestique* m. *déclarer* art. *guerre* f.

PRÆT. INDEF.—I have surmounted all the difficulties. — He
surmonter tout *difficulté* f.
has offended His Majesty. — We have bought an estate. — You
offenser *Majesté* f. *acheter* *terre* f.
have protected his youth. — They have considered the justice
protéger *jeunesse* f. *considérer* — f.
of his demand.
demande f.

† See Obs. 3d. p. 36.

EXERCISE XLI.

PLUPERFECT. — I had asked his consent. — The queen
demander consentement m.
 had manifested her displeasure. — We had consulted
montrer mécontentement m. consulter
 men of honour. — You had emptied the bottle. —
 pr. art. *honneur h m. vider bouteille f.*
 They had repaired the house.
réparer maison f.

FUT. ABSOL. — I shall cross the river. — She will travel
traverser rivière f. voyager
 with us. — We will breakfast with you. — You will shut the
avec déjeuner fermer
 shutters. — They will bring letters.
volet m. apporter pr. art. lettre f.

EXERCISE XLII.

CONDIT. PRESENT. — I would explain the rule. — She would
expliquer règle f.
 prepare the ball dresses. — We would walk faster. — They
préparer habit de bal. marcher plus vite.
 would gain the victory. —
remporter victoire f.

IMPERATIVE. — Give me your address. — Let us frequent
Donner adresse f. fréquenter
 good company. — Carry this letter to the (post-office.)
 art. *compagnie f. Porter lettre f. poste f.*
 — Ask, and it shall be given you ; seek, and you shall find ;
on ind-7 trouver
 knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
*frapper on ouvrira **

SUBJ. PRESENT. — That I may re-enforce my party. — That
renforcer parti m.
 he may appease his anger. — That you may find friends.
apaiser colère f. des

IMPRF. — That I might prove the truth. — That she might
prouver vérité f.
 remain in town. — That they might take advantage of the
rester en ville. profiter
 circumstances.
circonstance f.

MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.*FINIR*, TO FINISH.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Finir,	to finish.	Avoir fini,	to have finished.
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.	
Finissant,	finishing.	Ayant fini,	having finished.
PARTICIPLE PAST.—Fini, finished.			

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	
Je finis,	<i>I finish.</i>	J'ai fini,	<i>I have finished.</i>
tu finis,	<i>thou finishest.</i>	tu as fini,	<i>thou hast finished.</i>
il finit,	<i>he finishes.</i>	il a fini,	<i>he has finished.</i>
nous finissons,	<i>we finish.</i>	nous avons fini,	<i>we have finished.</i>
vous finissez,	<i>you finish.</i>	vous avez fini,	<i>you have finished.</i>
ils finissent,	<i>they finish.</i>	ils ont fini,	<i>they have finished.</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Je finissais,	<i>I was</i>	J'avais fini,	<i>I had</i>
tu finissais,	<i>thou wast</i>	tu avais fini,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il finissait,	<i>he was</i>	il avait fini,	<i>he had</i>
nous finissions,	<i>we were</i>	nous avions fini,	<i>we had</i>
vous finissiez,	<i>you were</i>	vous aviez fini,	<i>you had</i>
ils finissaient,	<i>they were</i>	ils avaient fini,	<i>they had</i>
PRETERITE DEFINITE.		PRETERITE ANTERIOR.	
Je finis,	<i>I finished.</i>	J'eus fini,	<i>I had</i>
tu finis,	<i>thou finishedst.</i>	tu eus fini,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il finit,	<i>he finished.</i>	il eut fini,	<i>he had</i>
nous finîmes,	<i>we finished.</i>	nous eûmes fini,	<i>we had</i>
vous finîtes,	<i>you finished.</i>	vous eûtes fini,	<i>you had</i>
ils finirent,	<i>they finished.</i>	ils eurent fini,	<i>they had</i>
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
Je finirai,	<i>I shall finish.</i>	J'aurai fini,	<i>I shall have</i>
tu finiras,	<i>thou shalt finish.</i>	tu auras fini,	<i>thou shalt have</i>
il finira,	<i>he shall finish.</i>	il aura fini,	<i>he shall have</i>
nous finirons,	<i>we shall finish.</i>	nous aurons fini,	<i>we shall have</i>
vous finirez,	<i>you shall finish.</i>	vous aurez fini,	<i>you shall have</i>
ils finiront.	<i>they shall finish.</i>	ils auront fini,	<i>they shall have</i>

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je finirais,	<i>I should</i>	J'aurais fini,	<i>I should</i>
tu finirais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	tu aurais fini,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il finirait,	<i>he should</i>	il aurait fini,	<i>he should</i>
nous finirions,	<i>we should</i>	nous aurions fini,	<i>we should</i>
vous finiriez,	<i>you should</i>	vous auriez fini,	<i>you should</i>
ils finiraient,	<i>they should</i>	ils auraient fini,	<i>they should</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Finis,	<i>Finish (thou.)</i>
qu'il finisse,	<i>let him finish.</i>
finissons,	<i>let us finish.</i>
finissez,	<i>finish (you.)</i>
qu'ils finissent,	<i>let them finish.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERITE.	
Que je finisse,	<i>That I may</i>	Que j'aie fini,	<i>That I may have finished.</i>
que tu finisses,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	que tu aies fini,	
qu'il finisse,	<i>that he may</i>	qu'il ait fini,	
que nous finissions,	<i>that we may</i>	que nous ayons fini,	
que vous finissiez,	<i>that you may</i>	que vous ayez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,	<i>that they may</i>	qu'ils aient fini,	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je finisse,	<i>That I might finish.</i>	Que j'eusse fini,	<i>That I might have finished.</i>
que tu finisses,		que tu eusses fini,	
qu'il finît,		qu'il eût fini,	
que nous finissions,		que nous eussions fini,	
que vous finissiez,		que vous eussiez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,		qu'ils eussent fini,	

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Abolir,	<i>to abolish.</i>	enrichir,	<i>to enrich.</i>
adoucir,	<i>to soften.</i>	établir,	<i>to establish.</i>
affermir,	<i>to strengthen.</i>	fléchir,	<i>to soften.</i>
agir,	<i>to act.</i>	fournir,	<i>to furnish.</i>
applaudir,	<i>to applaud.</i>	franchir,	<i>to leap over.</i>
avertir,	<i>to warn.</i>	frémir,	<i>to shudder.</i>
bâtiir,	<i>to build.</i>	garantir,	<i>to warrant.</i>
choisir,	<i>to choose.</i>	guérir,	<i>to cure.</i>
démolir,	<i>to demolish.</i>	nourrir,	<i>to nourish.</i>
divertir,	<i>to divert.</i>	obéir,	<i>to obey.</i>
embellir,	<i>to embellish.</i>	punir,	<i>to punish.</i>
emplir,	<i>to fill.</i>	réussir, &c.	<i>to succeed, &c.</i>

70 EXERCISES ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLIII.

INDICAT. PRÆS.—I shudder when I think (of it.) — He
frémir quand penser y p. 44.
 fulfils his promise. — She enjoys good health. —
remplir promesse f. jour d'une santé f.
 You act as a master.—They punish the idlers.—
*agir en * maître punir paresseux*
IMPERF. — I was varnishing a picture. — He was climbing
vernir tableau m. gravir
 the hill. — They were building fortifications.
colline f. bâtir pr art. — f.
PART. DEF. — I warned my sister of her danger. — You have
avertir — m.
 chosen a pretty colour. — They succeeded in repelling the
choisir joli couleur f. réussir à repousser
 enemy.
ennemi m.

EXERCISE XLIV.

PART. INDEF. — I have chosen it (out of) a thousand. —
*choisir entre **
 He has enriched science with new discoveries. — You
enrichir art. — f. de nouveau découverte f.
 have grown tall. — The greatest empires have perished.
grandir — m. périr
PART. ANT. — I had done before him. — When he had
finir avant lui. Quand
 filled his pockets, he went away.
remplir poche f. s'en alla.
PLUPERFECT.—That merchant had supplied this house
marchand m. fournir maison f.
 with wine.—The king had ennobled him.—They had disobeyed
de anoblir désobéir
 my orders.
d ordre m.

EXERCISE XLV.

FUT. ABSOLUTE.—I will search into that affair. — That will
approfondir affaire f.
 cure him.—We will rebuild our country-house. — I hope
guérir le rebâtir maison de campagne espérer
 you will succeed. — They will obey the laws.
gag réussir obéir à loi f.

EXERCISES ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION. 71

FUT. ANT.—I shall have finished my exercise before dinner.—
finir thème m. avant diner.

They will have cooled his ardour.
refroidir † ardeur f. † See p. 36.

CONDIT. PRES.—I would mitigate the punishment.—
adoucir punition f.

If he (were to do) that good action, (every body) would
faisait — f. tout le monde

applaud him.
applaudir lui

EXERCISE XLVI.

IMPERATIVE. — Let us banish vice and cherish
bannir art. — m. chérir

virtue. — Act as a man of honour. — Choose of the
*art. vertu f. Agir en * honneur h m. Choisir*

two. — Reflect for a moment.
*Réfléchir * — m.*

SUBJ. PRESENT. — That I may accomplish my design. —
accomplir dessein m.

That you may establish peace.
établir art. paix f.

IMPERF. — That she might match the colours. — That you
assortir couleur f.

might enjoy your glory.
jouir de gloire f.

PLUPERF. — That we might have fathomed that mystery —
approfondir mystère m.

That they might have fed the poor.
nourrir pauvre m. pl.

MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Recevoir, <i>to receive.</i>	Avoir reçu, <i>to have received.</i>

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.
Recevant, <i>receiving.</i>	Ayant reçu, <i>having received.</i>

PARTICIPLE PAST.—Reçu, *received.*

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je reçois,	<i>I receive.</i>
tu reçois,	<i>thou receivest.</i>
il reçoit,	<i>he receives.</i>
nous recevons,	<i>we receive.</i>
vous recevez,	<i>you receive.</i>
ils reçoivent,	<i>they receive.</i>

PRÉTERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai reçu,	<i>I have</i>
tu as reçu,	<i>thou hast</i>
il a reçu,	<i>he has</i>
nous avons reçu,	<i>we have</i>
vous avez reçu,	<i>you have</i>
ils ont reçu,	<i>they have</i>

} *received.*

IMPERFECT.

Je recevais,	<i>I was</i>
tu recevais,	<i>thou wast</i>
il recevait,	<i>he was</i>
nous recevions,	<i>we were</i>
vous receviez,	<i>you were</i>
ils recevaient,	<i>they were</i>

} *receiving.*

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais reçu,	<i>I had</i>
tu avais reçu,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il avait reçu,	<i>he had</i>
nous avions reçu,	<i>we had</i>
vous aviez reçu,	<i>you had</i>
ils avaient reçu,	<i>they had</i>

} *received.*

PRÉTERITE DEFINITE.

Je reçus,	<i>I received.</i>
tu reçus,	<i>thou receivedst.</i>
il reçut,	<i>he received.</i>
nous reçûmes,	<i>we received.</i>
vous reçûtes,	<i>you received.</i>
ils reçurent,	<i>they received.</i>

PRÉTERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus reçu,	<i>I had</i>
tu eus reçu,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut reçu,	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes reçu,	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes reçu,	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent reçu,	<i>they had</i>

} *received.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je recevrai,	<i>I shall</i>
tu recevras,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il recevra,	<i>he shall</i>
nous recevrons,	<i>we shall</i>
vous recevrez,	<i>you shall</i>
ils recevront,	<i>they shall</i>

} *receive.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai reçu,	<i>I shall</i>
tu auras reçu,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il aura reçu,	<i>he shall</i>
nous aurons reçu,	<i>we shall</i>
vous aurez reçu,	<i>you shall</i>
ils auront reçu,	<i>they shall</i>

} *have received.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je recevrais,	<i>I should</i>
tu recevrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il recevrait,	<i>he should</i>
nous recevriions,	<i>we should</i>
vous recevriez,	<i>you should</i>
ils recevraient,	<i>they should</i>

} *receive.*

PAST.

J'aurais reçu,	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais reçu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait reçu,	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions reçu,	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez reçu,	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient reçu,	<i>they should</i>

} *have received.*

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

IMPERATIVE.

Reçois,	<i>Receive (thou.)</i>
qu'il reçoive,	<i>let him receive.</i>
recevons,	<i>let us receive.</i>
recevez,	<i>receive (you.)</i>
qu'ils reçoivent,	<i>let them receive.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je reçoive,
que tu reçoives,
qu'il reçoive,
que nous recevions,
que vous receviez,
qu'ils reçoivent,

{
That I
may receive.

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie reçu,
que tu aies reçu,
qu'il ait reçu,
que nous ayons reçu,
que vous ayez reçu,
qu'ils aient reçu,

{
That I may
have received.

IMPERFECT.

Que je reçusse,
que tu reçusses,
qu'il reçût,
que nous reçussions,
que vous reçussiez,
qu'ils reçussent,

{
That I
might receive.

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse reçu,
que tu eusses reçu,
qu'il eût reçu,
que nous eussions reçu,
que vous eussiez reçu,
qu'ils eussent reçu,

{
That I might
have received.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Apercevoir,	<i>to perceive.</i>	redevoir,	<i>to remain in debt.</i>
devoir,	<i>to owe.</i>	&c.	&c.

EXERCISE XLVII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I perceive the steeple of the village.—
apercevoir clocher m. — m.

He perceives the top of the mountain.
sommet m. montagne f.

IMPERF. — He owed a large sum to his partner.—They
devoir grand somme f. associé m.

were collecting the taxes.
percevoir impôt m.

PRET. DEF. — We perceived a man coming towards us.—
qui venait à

The besieged received succour.
assiégé m. pl. pr. art. secours m. pl.

74 EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

PART. INDEF. — I received a letter this morning. — That
lettre f. matin m.
 regiment has received recruits. — We have perceived
régiment m. pr. art. recrue f.
 you from afar. — The soldiers have received provisions
loin. soldat pr. art. vivre m. pl.
 for three days.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

FUTURE ABSOL. — I shall receive your letter on the fifteenth.
 * p. 28.
 He will still owe thirteen guineas. — They will owe their
redevoir guinée f. devoir
 misfortunes to their faults.
malheur m. faute f.

CONDIT. PRES. — I would conceive the greatest hopes. —
concevoir espérance f.
 You ought to behave differently.
devoir vous conduire autrement.

IMPERATIVE. — Receive this as a mark of my
comme marque f. †
 confidence and esteem. — Let us receive his apology. —
confiance f. de mon estime f. † excuse f.
 Conceive the horror of his situation. — Receive him
Concevoir horreur h m. † — f.
 kindly.
avec bonté.

† See Obs. p. 36.

MODEL OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.

VENDRE, TO SELL.

PRESENT.		INFINITIVE.		PAST.	
Vendre,	<i>to sell.</i>		Avoir vendu,	<i>to have sold.</i>	
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF PART. PRESENT.			
Vendant,	<i>selling.</i>		Ayant vendu,	<i>having sold.</i>	
PARTICIPLE PAST. — Vendu, <i>sold.</i>					

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je vends,	<i>I sell.</i>
tu vends,	<i>thou sellest.</i>
il vend,	<i>he sells.</i>
nous vendons,	<i>we sell.</i>
vous vendez,	<i>you sell.</i>
ils vendent,	<i>they sell.</i>

PRÆTERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai vendu,	<i>I have sold.</i>
tu as vendu,	<i>thou hast sold.</i>
il a vendu,	<i>he has sold.</i>
nous avons vendu,	<i>we have sold.</i>
vous avez vendu,	<i>you have sold.</i>
ils ont vendu,	<i>they have sold.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je vendais,	<i>I was selling.</i>
tu vendais,	<i>thou wast selling.</i>
il vendait,	<i>he was selling.</i>
nous vendions,	<i>we were selling.</i>
vous vendiez,	<i>you were selling.</i>
ils vendaient,	<i>they were selling.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais vendu,	<i>I had sold.</i>
tu avais vendu,	<i>thou hadst sold.</i>
il avait vendu,	<i>he had sold.</i>
nous avions vendu,	<i>we had sold.</i>
vous aviez vendu,	<i>you had sold.</i>
ils avaient vendu,	<i>they had sold.</i>

PRÆTERITE DEFINITE.

Je vendis,	<i>I sold.</i>
tu vendis,	<i>thou soldest.</i>
il vendit,	<i>he sold.</i>
nous vendîmes,	<i>we sold.</i>
vous vendîtes,	<i>you sold.</i>
ils vendirent,	<i>they sold.</i>

PRÆTERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus vendu,	<i>I had</i>
tu eus vendu,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut vendu,	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes vendu,	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes vendu,	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent vendu,	<i>they had</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je vendrai,	<i>I shall sell.</i>
tu vendras,	<i>thou shalt sell.</i>
il vendra,	<i>he shall sell.</i>
nous vendrons,	<i>we shall sell.</i>
vous vendrez,	<i>you shall sell.</i>
ils vendront,	<i>they shall sell.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai vendu,	<i>I shall</i>
tu auras vendu,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il aura vendu,	<i>he shall</i>
nous aurons vendu,	<i>we shall</i>
vous aurez vendu,	<i>you shall</i>
ils auront vendu,	<i>they shall</i>

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je vendrais,	<i>I should</i>
tu vendrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il vendrait,	<i>he should</i>
nous vendrions,	<i>we should</i>
vous vendriez,	<i>you should</i>
ils vendraient,	<i>they should</i>

PAST.

J'aurais vendu,	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais vendu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait vendu,	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions vendu,	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez vendu,	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient vendu,	<i>they should</i>

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

IMPERATIVE.

Vends,	<i>Sell (thou.)</i>
qu'il vende,	<i>let him sell.</i>
vendons,	<i>let us sell.</i>
venez,	<i>sell (you.)</i>
qu'ils vendent,	<i>let them sell.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je vende,	[<i>That I may sell.</i>]
que tu vendes,	
qu'il vende,	
que nous vendions,	
que vous vendiez,	
qu'ils vendent,	

PRÆTERITE.

Que j'aie vendu,	[<i>That I may have sold.</i>]
que tu aies vendu,	
qu'il ait vendu,	
que nous ayons vendu,	
que vous ayez vendu,	
qu'ils aient vendu,	

IMPERFECT.

Que je vendisse,	[<i>That I might sell.</i>]
que tu vendisses,	
qu'il vendit,	
que nous vendissions,	
que vous vendissiez,	
qu'ils vendissent,	

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse vendu,	[<i>That I might have sold.</i>]
que tu eusses vendu,	
qu'il eût vendu,	
que nous eussions vendu,	
que vous eussiez vendu,	
qu'ils eussent vendu,	

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Attendre,	<i>to wait for.</i>	pendre,	<i>to hang.</i>
correspondre,	<i>to correspond.</i>	perdre,	<i>to lose.</i>
défendre,	<i>to defend.</i>	prétendre,	<i>to pretend.</i>
dépendre,	<i>to depend.</i>	rendre,	<i>to render.</i>
descendre,	<i>to descend.</i>	répandre,	<i>to spread.</i>
entendre,	<i>to hear.</i>	répondre,	<i>to answer.</i>
fendre,	<i>to split.</i>	suspendre,	<i>to suspend.</i>
fondre,	<i>to melt.</i>	tordre,	<i>to twist.</i>
mordre,	<i>to bite.</i>	&c.	&c.

EXERCISE XLIX.

INDICAT. PRESENT. — I hear some one coming. — He
entendre ^{quelqu'un} ^{venir}understands English (a little.) — That depends on
entendre ^{l'anglais} ^{dépendre de art.}circumstances. — That dog bites. — We expect several
circonstance *f.* *chien* *m.* *mordre* *attendre*

EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. 77

friends to dinner. — You claim a half. — They confound
à dîner. prétendre moitié f. confondre
 the arts with the sciences.
 — m. — f.

IMPERF. — I was waiting for the steam-boat. — He was
*attendre * bateau à vapeur m.*
 waiting for him. — We heard them laughing and singing. —
 * *entendre rire chanter.*
 You were coming down. — They were wasting their time.
descendre perdre temps m.

EXERCISE L.

PRET. DEF. — I alighted at the hôtel de France. — He
descendre h m.
 answered in a few words. — We aimed at an honest end. —
répondre en peu de mot m. pl. tendre ?honnête ?but m.
 They lost their lawsuit.
perdre procès m.

PRET. INDEF. — I have heard that musician. — He has
entendre musicien m.
 restored the money. — The sun has melted the snow. — The
rendre fondre neige f.
 thermometer has fallen four degrees since yesterday.
thermomètre m. descendre de degré m. depuis hier.
 — You have defended him with much talent. — Have you
défendre beaucoup de — m.
 heard the music of the new opera?
musique f. nouvel opéra m.

EXERCISE LI.

FUTURE. — Make haste, I will wait for you. — It is a
*Dépêchez-vous attendre * C'*
 thing to which he will never condescend. — You will
chose f. ne ?jamais ?condescendre
 wait a long time.
*attendre * longtemps.*

COND. PRES. — I would correspond with my friends. —
correspondre
 Your hens would lay eggs every day.
poule f. pondre tous les jours.

IMPERATIVE.—Let us answer their letter. — Wait
répondre à *Attendre*
 till to-morrow. — Hang up your hat and your
jusqu'à demain. *Pendre* • *chapeau m.*
 cloak. — Render unto Cæsar (the things which are Cæsar's.)
manteau m. *à César* *ce qui appartient à César.*

CONJUGATION

OF A VERB WITH A NEGATIVE.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

The English negatives *no* and *not* are rendered in French by *ne*, which is placed immediately after the subject, whether it be a noun or pronoun, and *pas* or *point* after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

“When the verb is in the Present of the Infinitive, it is optional to place *pas* and *point* before or after the verb. *Pour ne POINT souffrir.*—*Pour ne souffrir POINT.* The first manner of speaking, however, is more used.”—

(FR. ACAD. “Dict. crit. de Féraud,” &c.)

The same rules are applicable to other negatives, such as, *ne jamais*, never; *ne rien*, nothing; *ne plus*, no more, not any more.

When the negative is followed by a substantive, *de* is used instead of the definite article; as, *Je n'ai pas DE livres*, I have no books; *elle n'a point DE place*, she has no room.

The words *do* or *did*, which precede an English verb in some tenses, are not expressed in French.

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED
NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Ne pas parler, *not to speak.* | N'avoir pas parlé, *not to have spoken.*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne parlant pas, *not speaking.* | N'ayant pas parlé, *not having spoken.*

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je ne parle pas,
tu ne parles pas,
il ne parle pas,
nous ne parlons pas,
vous ne parlez pas,
ils ne parlent pas,

{ I do not
speak. }

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je n'ai pas parlé,
tu n'as pas parlé,
il n'a pas parlé,
nous n'avons pas parlé,
vous n'avez pas parlé,
ils n'ont pas parlé,

{ I have not
spoken. }

IMPERFECT.

Je ne parlais pas,
tu ne parlais pas,
il ne parlait pas,
nous ne parlions pas,
vous ne parliez pas,
ils ne parlaient pas,

{ I was not
speaking. }

PLUPERFECT.

Je n'avais pas parlé,
tu n'avais pas parlé,
il n'avait pas parlé,
nous n'avions pas parlé,
vous n'aviez pas parlé,
ils n'avaient pas parlé,

{ I had not
spoken. }

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je ne parlai pas,
tu ne parlas pas,
il ne parla pas,
nous ne parlâmes pas,
vous ne parlâtes pas,
ils ne parlèrent pas,

{ I did not
speak. }

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je n'eus pas parlé,
tu n'eus pas parlé,
il n'eut pas parlé,
nous n'eûmes pas parlé,
vous n'eûtes pas parlé,
ils n'eurent pas parlé,

{ I had not
spoken. }

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je ne parlerai pas,
tu ne parleras pas,
il ne parlera pas,
nous ne parlerons pas,
vous ne parlerez pas,
ils ne parleront pas,

{ I shall not
speak. }

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je n'aurai pas parlé,
tu n'auras pas parlé,
il n'aura pas parlé,
nous n'aurons pas parlé,
vous n'aurez pas parlé,
ils n'auront pas parlé,

{ I shall not
have spoken. }

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je ne parlerais pas,
tu ne parlerais pas,
il ne parlerait pas,
nous ne parlerions pas,
vous ne parleriez pas,
ils ne parleraient pas,

[I should not
speak.]

PAST.

Je n'aurais pas parlé,
tu n'aurais pas parlé,
il n'aurait pas parlé,
nous n'aurions pas parlé,
vous n'auriez pas parlé,
ils n'auraient pas parlé,

[I should not
have spoken.]

IMPERATIVE.

Ne parle pas,
qu'il ne parle pas,
ne parlons pas,
ne parlez pas,
qu'ils ne parlent pas,

*Do not speak.
let him not speak.
let us not speak.
do not speak.
let them not speak.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je ne parle pas,
que tu ne parles pas,
qu'il ne parle pas,
que nous ne parlions pas,
que vous ne parliez pas,
qu'ils ne parlent pas,

[That I may
not speak.]

PRETERITE.

Que je n'aie pas parlé,
que tu n'aies pas parlé,
qu'il n'ait pas parlé,
que nous n'ayons pas parlé,
que vous n'ayez pas parlé,
qu'ils n'aient pas parlé,

[That I may not
have spoken.]

IMPERFECT.

Que je ne parlasse pas,
que tu ne parlasses pas,
qu'il ne parlât pas,
que nous ne parlussions pas,
que vous ne parlassiez pas,
qu'ils ne parlassent pas,

[That I might
not speak.]

PLUPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas parlé,
que tu n'eusses pas parlé,
qu'il n'eût pas parlé, [parlé,
que nous n'eussions pas
que vous n'eussiez pas parlé,
qu'ils n'eussent pas parlé,

[That I might not
have spoken.]

EXERCISE LII.

INDICAT. PRÉS. — I have no change. — My sister does
monnaie f.

not sing. — We do not speak of that. — You do not answer
chanter *répondre à*

his letters. — They are not playing.
lettre f. *jouer*

EXERCISES UPON VERBS WITH A NEGATIVE, 81

IMPERF. — I did not expect that of you. — She was not
attendre
 dancing. — You were not thinking of him. — They were not
danser *penser à*
 happy.
heureux

EXERCISE LIII.

PRÆT. DEF. — I did not receive his note in time. — He
billet m. à temps.
 did not forget his promise.
oublier promesse f.

PRÆT. INDEF. — I have not yet received his answer. —
encore réponse f.
 He has never spoken to his colonel. — You have not brought
 — *apporter*
 the parcel. — They have not passed this way.
paquet m. passer par ici.

PLUSQ. PERF. — I had not finished, when you came.
quand vintez.

EXERCISE LIV.

FUTURE. — I shall not speak (of it.) — We will not travel
en † voyager
 this year. — You will never succeed.
année f. réussir

COND. PRÆS. — I would owe nothing. — You would not
devoir
 wait long.
attendre longtemps.

IMPER. — Let us not imitate his conduct. — Do not lose
imiter conduite f. perdre
 your time. — Don't shut the window. — Don't wait for me.
temps m. fermer fenêtre f. See p. 76.
 — Never yield to the violence of thy passions. — Let us
† abandonner — f. — f.
 not act against him — Receive no more of his letters. — Do
agir lui.
 not spread that bad news.
répandre mauvais nouvelle f.

† See N. B. p. 44.

CONJUGATION OF A VERB INTERROGATIVELY.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

1. To conjugate a verb *interrogatively*, which can take place only in the Indicative and Conditional Moods, we place the pronoun, which serves as the subject, after the verb, connecting them by a hyphen; as, *Avez-vous ?* have you ? *Jouez-vous ?* do you play ?

2. In *compound tenses*, the pronoun is placed between the auxiliary and the participle, joined to the former by a hyphen; as, *Ai-je parlé ?* have I spoken ? *Ont-ils dîné ?* have they dined ?

3. When the third person singular of a verb ends with a vowel, we place between the verb and the pronoun, the euphonic letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen; as, *Aura-t-il ?* will he have ? *Danse-t-elle ?* does she dance ?

4. When the subject of a verb is a substantive, that substantive comes first, and one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, is placed after the verb, and joined to it by a hyphen; as, *Mes frères parlent-ils ?* do my brothers speak ? *Votre sœur aurait-elle chanté ?* would your sister have sung ?

5. When the first person singular of a verb ends with a mute *e*, an *acute accent* is placed over that *e*, which is a sign to pronounce it; as, *Parlé-je ?* do I speak ? *Chanté-je ?* do I sing ?

6. Questions are often asked by *Est-ce que*, and then the subject precedes the verb; as, *Est-ce que vous lisez Horace ?* do you read Horace ? — This mode of interrogation is also used with verbs that have but one syllable in the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative; so instead of saying, *Vends-je ? rends-je ? mens-je ? perds-je ? fonds-je ? pars-je ?* and the like, we say, *Est-ce que je vends ? est-ce que je rends ?* &c. By employing the former mode of expression, we sometimes could not even

be understood ; as, for instance, *Vends-je ? rends-je ? mens-je ?* might be mistaken for the Imperative *venge, range, mange*. Usage, however, permits us to say, *Ai-je ? suis-je ? dis-je ? fais-je ? dois-je ? vois-je ? vais-je ?*

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Donné-je ?	<i>Do I give ?</i>
donnes-tu ?	<i>dost thou give ?</i>
donne-t-il ?	<i>does he give ?</i>
donnons-nous ?	<i>do we give ?</i>
donnez-vous ?	<i>do you give ?</i>
donnent-ils ?	<i>do they give ?</i>

Compound Tenses.

PRÆTERITE INDEFINITE.

Ai-je donné ?	<i>Have I</i>	} <i>given ?</i>
as-tu donné ?	<i>hast thou</i>	
a-t-il donné ?	<i>has he</i>	
avons-nous donné ?	<i>have we</i>	
avez-vous donné ?	<i>have you</i>	
ont-ils donné ?	<i>have they</i>	

IMPERFECT.

Donnais-je ?	<i>Was I</i>	} <i>giving ?</i>
donnais-tu ?	<i>wast thou</i>	
donnait-il ?	<i>was he</i>	
donnions-nous ?	<i>were we</i>	
donniez-vous ?	<i>were you</i>	
donnaient-ils ?	<i>were they</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

Avais-je donné ?	<i>Had I</i>	} <i>given ?</i>
avais-tu donné ?	<i>hadst thou</i>	
avait-il donné ?	<i>had he</i>	
avions-nous donné ?	<i>had we</i>	
aviez-vous donné ?	<i>had you</i>	
avaient-ils donné ?	<i>had they</i>	

PRÆTERITE DEFINITE.

Donnai-je ?	<i>Did I give ?</i>
donnas-tu ?	<i>didst thou give ?</i>
donna-t-il ?	<i>did he give ?</i>
donnâmes-nous ?	<i>did we give ?</i>
donnâtes-vous ?	<i>did you give ?</i>
donnèrent-ils ?	<i>did they give ?</i>

The *Præterite anterior* is not used interrogatively.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Donnerai-je ?	<i>shall I</i>	} <i>give ?</i>
donneras-tu ?	<i>shalt thou</i>	
donnera-t-il ?	<i>shall he</i>	
donnerons-nous ?	<i>shall we</i>	
donnerez-vous ?	<i>shall you</i>	
donneront-ils ?	<i>shall they</i>	

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aurai-je donné ?	<i>Shall I</i>	} <i>have given ?</i>
auras-tu donné ?	<i>shalt thou</i>	
aura-t-il donné ?	<i>shall he</i>	
aurons-nous donné ?	<i>shall we</i>	
aurez-vous donné ?	<i>shall you</i>	
auront-ils donné ?	<i>shall they</i>	

84 EXERCISES ON VERBS WITH INTERROGATION.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Donnerais-je ?	<i>Should I</i>	Aurais-je donné ?	[Should I have given ?]
donnerais-tu ?	<i>shouldst thou</i>	aurais-tu donné ?	
donnerait-il ?	<i>should he</i>	aurait-il donné ?	
donnerions-nous ?	<i>should we</i>	aurions-nous donné ?	
donneriez-vous ?	<i>should you</i>	auriez-vous donné ?	
donneraient-ils ?	<i>should they</i>	auraient-ils donné ?	

EXERCISE LV.

INDICATIVE. PRÉS. — Have I friends ? — Is she pleased ?
satisfait

Does he bring good news ? — Does she dance well ? —
apporter nouvelle f. danser

Is breakfast ready ? — Do you call ?
déjeuner m. prêt appeler

IMPERF. — Was he waiting for your arrival ? — Were you
*attendre * arrivés f.*
speaking to our captain ?
capitaine

PART. DEF. — Did he prefer your house to hers ? — Did
préférer maison f.
they clear up his doubts ?
éclaircir doute m.

EXERCISE LVI.

PART. INDEF. — Has the king rewarded his services ? —
récompenser — m.

Has your mother received my letter ? — Have your partners
associés m.

sold my goods ?
marchandise f.

PLUPERF. — Had she offended her mistress ? — Had you
offenser maîtresse

forgotten the date ?
oublier — f.

FUT. — Shall I have that pleasure ? — Will Miss Isabella
plaisir m.

sing ? — Shall we alight here ?
chanter descendre

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

REMARK. — To add the negative form to a verb used interrogatively, *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the personal pronoun, both in the simple and compound tenses.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Est-ce que je ne perds pas ?
(for ne perds-je pas ?)
ne perds-tu pas ?
ne perd*-il pas ?
ne perdons-nous pas ?
ne perdez-vous pas ?
ne perdent-ils pas ?

N'ai-je pas perdu ?
n'as-tu pas perdu ?
n'a-t-il pas perdu ?
n'avons-nous pas perdu ?
n'avez-vous pas perdu ?
n'ont-ils pas perdu ?

Do I not
lose ?

Have I not
lost ?

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Ne perdais-je pas ?
ne perdais-tu pas ?
ne perdait-il pas ?
ne perdions-nous pas ?
ne perdiez-vous pas ?
ne perdient-ils pas ?

N'avais-je pas perdu ?
n'avais-tu pas perdu ?
n'avait-il pas perdu ?
n'avions-nous pas perdu ?
n'aviez-vous pas perdu ?
n'avaient-ils pas perdu ?

Was I not
losing ?

Had I not
lost ?

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Ne perdis-je pas ?
ne perdis-tu pas ?
ne perdit-il pas ?
ne perdîmes-nous pas ?
ne perdiez-vous pas ?
ne perdirent-ils pas ?

Did I not lose ?
didst thou not lose ?
did he not lose ?
did we not lose ?
did you not lose ?
did they not lose ?

* D takes the sound of *t*, when at the end of a verb followed by one of the pronouns *il, elle, on*. — (*Dumarsais, Féraud, Bouillette, Demandre, &c.*)

86 VERB INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Ne perdrai-je pas ?
ne perdras-tu pas ?
ne perdra-t-il pas ?
ne perdrons-nous pas ?
ne perdrez-vous pas ?
ne perdront-ils pas ?

— Shall I
not lose ?

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

N'aurai-je pas perdu ?
n'auras-tu pas perdu ?
n'aura-t-il pas perdu ?
n'aurons-nous pas perdu ?
n'aurez-vous pas perdu ?
n'auront-ils pas perdu ?

— Shall I not
have lost ?

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Ne perdrais-je pas ?
ne perdras-tu pas ?
ne perdrait-il pas ?
ne perdriions-nous pas ?
ne perdriez-vous pas ?
ne perdraient-ils pas ?

— Should I
not lose ?

PAST.

N'aurais-je pas perdu ?
n'aurais-tu pas perdu ?
n'aurait-il pas perdu ?
n'aurions-nous pas perdu ?
n'auriez-vous pas perdu ?
n'auraient-ils pas perdu ?

— Should I not
have lost ?

EXERCISE LVII.

INDICAT. PRES. — Am I not troublesome ? — Is she not
importun
attentive ? — Does your sister not draw ? — Do we not walk
dessiner *marcher*
too fast ? — Do you not hear the drum ? — Do they not
trop vite ? *entendre* *tambour m.*
ask (too much ?)
demande trop ?

IMPERF. — Did he not deserve your esteem and mine ? —
mériter *estime f.*
Had he not a short coat and a cloak above it ?
court *habit m.* *manteau m. par-dessus*

EXERCISE LVIII.

PRET. DEF. — Did he not answer your question ? — Did
répondre à *f.*
she not turn the box topsyturvy ?
renverser *boîte f. sens dessus dessous ?*

PRET. INDEF. — Has he not sold again his country-house ? —
revendre *maison de campagne f.*
Have you not signed the letter ?
signé

FUT. ABSOL. — Will he not betray your confidence? — Will
trahir *confiance f.*
 you not consult your lawyer?
consulter *avocat ?*

§ II. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

The *Passive* verb expresses an action received or suffered by the subject.

There is only one mode of conjugating passive verbs ; it is by adding to the verb *être* through all its tenses, the past participle of the active verb.

Every past participle employed with *être*, must agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject of it. To form the feminine, an *e* is added, and to form the plural, an *s*.

We have already said (page 33), that the participle must be put in the singular, when the pronoun *vous* is used instead of *tu* ; thus, we must say, in speaking to a man, *vous êtes loué* ; and, in speaking to a female, *vous êtes louée*.

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	FAST.
Être loué, to be praised.	Avoir été loué, to have been praised.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
Étant loué, being praised.	Ayant été loué, having been praised.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PRÆTERITE INDEFINITE.					
Je suis tu es il or elle est nous sommes vous êtes ils or elles sont	<table border="0"> <tr> <td> <i>loué, m.</i> <i>louée, f.</i> <i>loués, m.</i> <i>louées, f.</i> </td> <td style="vertical-align: middle; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>I am</i> <i>praised.</i> </td> <td> <i>J'ai été</i> <i>tu as été,</i> <i>il or elle a été</i> <i>nous avons été</i> <i>vous avez été</i> <i>ils or elles ont été</i> </td> <td> <i>loué, m.</i> <i>louée, f.</i> <i>loués, m.</i> <i>louées, f.</i> </td> <td style="vertical-align: middle; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>I have</i> <i>been praised.</i> </td> </tr> </table>	<i>loué, m.</i> <i>louée, f.</i> <i>loués, m.</i> <i>louées, f.</i>	<i>I am</i> <i>praised.</i>	<i>J'ai été</i> <i>tu as été,</i> <i>il or elle a été</i> <i>nous avons été</i> <i>vous avez été</i> <i>ils or elles ont été</i>	<i>loué, m.</i> <i>louée, f.</i> <i>loués, m.</i> <i>louées, f.</i>	<i>I have</i> <i>been praised.</i>
<i>loué, m.</i> <i>louée, f.</i> <i>loués, m.</i> <i>louées, f.</i>	<i>I am</i> <i>praised.</i>	<i>J'ai été</i> <i>tu as été,</i> <i>il or elle a été</i> <i>nous avons été</i> <i>vous avez été</i> <i>ils or elles ont été</i>	<i>loué, m.</i> <i>louée, f.</i> <i>loués, m.</i> <i>louées, f.</i>	<i>I have</i> <i>been praised.</i>		

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

J'étais	loué, m.	I was praised.
tu étais		
il or elle était	louée, f.	
nous étions	loués, m.	
vous étiez		
ils or elles étaient	louées, f.	

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été	loué, m.	I had been praised.
tu avais été		
il or elle avait été	louée, f.	
nous avions été	loués, m.	
vous aviez été [été]		
ils or elles avaient	louées, f.	

PRÆTERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus	loué, m.	I was praised.
tu fus		
il or elle fut	louée, f.	
nous fûmes	loués, m.	
vous fûtes		
ils or elles furent	louées, f.	

PRÆTERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus été	loué, m.	I had been praised.
tu eus été		
il or elle eut été	louée, f.	
nous eûmes été	loués, m.	
vous eûtes été		
ils or elles eurent été	louées, f.	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai	loué, m.	I shall be praised.
tu seras		
il or elle sera	louée, f.	
nous serons	loués, m.	
vous serez		
ils or elles seront	louées, f.	

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été	loué, m.	I shall have been praised.
tu auras été		
il or elle aura été	louée, f.	
nous aurons été	loués, m.	
vous aurez été		
ils or elles auront été	louées, f.	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais	loué, m.	I should be praised.
tu serais		
il or elle serait	louée, f.	
nous serions	loués, m.	
vous seriez		
ils or elles seraient	louées, f.	

PAST.

J'aurais été	loué, m.	I should have been praised.
tu aurais été		
il or elle aurait été	louée, f.	
nous aurions été	loués, m.	
vous auriez été [été]		
ils or elles auraient	louées, f.	

IMPERATIVE.

Sois	loué, m.	Be (thou) praised.
qu'il or qu'elle soit	louée, f.	
soyons	loués, m.	
soyez		
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	louées, f.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois	loué, m.	That I may be praised.
que tu sois		
qu'il or qu'elle soit	louée, f.	
que nous soyons	loués, m.	
que vous soyez		
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	louées, f.	

PRÆTERITE.

Que j'aie été	loué, m.	That I may have been praised.
que tu aies été [été]		
qu'il or qu'elle ait	louée, f.	
que nous ayons été	loués, m.	
que vous ayez été		
qu'ils or qu'elles aient été	louées, f.	

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{loué, m.} \\ \text{louée, f.} \\ \text{loués, m.} \\ \text{louées, f.} \end{array} \right\} \text{That I might be praised.}$
que tu fusses	
qu'il or qu'elle fût	
que nous fussions	
que vous fussiez	
qu'ils or qu'elles fussent	

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse été	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{loué, m.} \\ \text{louée, f.} \\ \text{loués, m.} \\ \text{louées, f.} \end{array} \right\} \text{That I might have been praised.}$
que tu eusses été	
qu'il or qu'elle eût	
que nous eussions été	
que vous eussiez été	
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent été	

EXERCISE LIX.

INDICAT. PRES.—He is loved and esteemed by every body.
aimer estimer de tout le monde.

PRET. DEF.—The city of Rome was several times sacked.
ville f. — fois f. saccagé

He was saved from a great danger by (his youngest son.)
délivrer — m. par le plus jeune de ses fils.

She was accused of theft by her mistress. — The Gauls
accuser vol m. par Gaules f. pl.

were conquered by Cæsar.
conquis par

PRET. INDEF. — Your work has been praised in a very
ouvrage m. d' fort

delicate manner by an academician. — The Jews have been
manière f. par académicien Juif

punished by God.
de

FUT. ABS. — You will be recognised. — Your conduct will
reconnus conduite f.

be approved by wise and enlightened people.
de art. s éclairé personne f. pl.

§ III. CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS.

The *Neuter* verb expresses merely the state of its subject; as, *J'existe*, I exist; or else an action limited to the subject which produces it; as, *Je marche*, I walk.

A *neuter* verb may be easily known by its not admitting immediately after it the words *quelqu'un*, somebody, or *quelque chose*, something. We cannot say: *Je*

marche quelqu'un, je languis quelque chose; marcher and languir, therefore, are neuter verbs.

There are, in French, nearly six hundred *neuter* verbs; about five hundred take the auxiliary *avoir* in the compound tenses.

Those which follow form their compounds with *être* :—

Aller,	to go.	provenir,	to come from.
arriver,	to arrive.	redevenir,	to become again.
déchoir,	to decay.	rentrer,	to come in again.
devenir,	to become.	repartir,	to set off again.
disconvenir,	to deny, to disown.	rester,	to stay.
échoir,	to become due.	retomber,	to fall again.
éclore,	to blow, to be hatched.	retourner,	to go back.
entrer,	to come in.	revenir,	to come back.
mourir,	to die.	survenir,	to happen.
naître,	to be born.	tomber,	to fall.
partir,	to set out.	venir,	to come.
parvenir,	to attain.		

The following neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* in their compound tenses, according to the idea one wishes to express. *Avoir* is used when we consider the action, and *être* when regard is had to the result of the action.

Aborder,	to land.	disparaître,	to disappear.
accourir,	to run to.	échapper,	to escape.
accroître,	to increase.	grandir,	to grow.
croître,	to grow.	monter,	to go up.
déborder,	to overflow.	passer,	to pass.
demeurer,	to remain.	remonter,	to go up again.
descendre,	to go down.		

§ IV. OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Pronominal Verbs are those which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person; as, *je me repens*, I repent; *il se propose*, he intends; *nous nous flattons*, we flatter ourselves.

Pronominal Verbs are called *reflected*, when they express an action or a state which relates only to the subject of the verb; as, *se blesser*, to hurt oneself; *se réjouir*, to

CONJUGATION OF A PRONOMINAL VERB. 91

rejoice. They are called *reciprocal*, when they express a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects; as, *s'entr'aimer*, to love each other; *s'entr'aider*, to help one another.

Pronominal Verbs have no conjugation peculiar to themselves; they follow the one to which they belong, which is known by the termination of the Infinitive. In their compound tenses, they take the verb *être*, to be, contrary to the English expression, which requires *have*.

CONJUGATION OF A PRONOMINAL VERB.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Se promener, <i>to walk.</i>	S'être promené, or promenée, <i>f.</i> } <i>to have walked.</i>
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
Se promenant, <i>walking.</i>	S'étant promené, or promenée, <i>f.</i> } <i>having walked.</i>

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PRÉTERITE INDÉFINITE.
Je me promène, <i>I walk.</i> tu te promènes, <i>thou walkest.</i> il se promène, <i>he walks.</i> nous nous promenons, <i>we walk.</i> vous vous promenez, <i>you walk.</i> ils se promènent, <i>they walk.</i>	Je me suis promené, tu t'es promené, il s'est promené, nous nous sommes promenés, vous vous êtes promenés, ils se sont promenés,
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Je me promenais, <i>I was walking.</i> tu te promenais, il se promenait, nous nous promenions, vous vous promeniez, ils se promenaient,	Je m'étais promené, tu t'étais promené, il s'était promené, nous nous étions promenés, vous vous étiez promenés, ils s'étaient promenés,
PRÉTERITE DÉFINITE.	PRÉTERITE ANTERIEUR.
Je me promenai, <i>I walked.</i> tu te promenâtes, il se promena, nous nous promenâmes, vous vous promenâtes, ils se promenèrent,	Je me fus promené, tu te fus promené, il se fut promené, nous nous fûmes promenés, vous vous fûtes promenés, ils se furent promenés,

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je me promènerai,
tu te promèneras,
il se promènera,
nous nous promènerons,
vous vous promèneriez,
ils se promèneront,

I shall
walk.

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je me serai promené,
tu te seras promené,
il se sera promené,
nous nous serons proménés,
vous vous serez proménés,
ils se seront proménés,

I shall
have walked.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je me promènerais,
tu te promènerais,
il se promènerait,
nous nous promènerions,
vous vous promèneriez,
ils se promèneraient,

I should
walk.

PAST.

Je me serais promené,
tu te serais promené,
il se serait promené,
nous nous serions proménés,
vous vous seriez proménés,
ils se seraient proménés,

I should
have walked.

IMPERATIVE.

Promène-toi,	<i>Walk (thou.)</i>
qu'il se promène,	<i>let him walk.</i>
promenons-nous,	<i>let us walk.</i>
promenez-vous,	<i>walk (you.)</i>
qu'ils se promènent,	<i>let them walk.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT

Que je me promène,
que tu te promènes,
qu'il se promène,
que nous nous promenions,
que vous vous promeniez,
qu'ils se promènent,

That I
may walk.

PRETERITE.

Que je me sois promené,
que tu te sois promené,
qu'il se soit promené,
que nous nous soyons proménés,
que vous vous soyez proménés,
qu'ils se soient proménés,

That I may
have walked.

IMPERFECT.

Que je me promenasse,
que tu te promenasses,
qu'il se promenât,
que nous nous promenassions,
que vous vous promenassiez,
qu'ils se promenassent,

That I
might walk.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je me fusse promené,
que tu te fusses promené,
qu'il se fût promené, [menés,
que nous nous fussions pro-
que vous vous fussiez proménés,
qu'ils se fussent proménés,

That I might
have walked.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

S'accorder,	<i>to agree.</i>	s'emporter, <i>to fly into a passion.</i>
s'adresser,	<i>to apply.</i>	s'enrhumer, <i>to catch cold.</i>
s'arrêter,	<i>to stop.</i>	s'envoler, <i>to fly away.</i>
s'avancer, <i>to come or go forward.</i>		s'étonner, <i>to wonder.</i>
se baigner,	<i>to bathe.</i>	se fâcher, <i>to be angry.</i>
se baisser,	<i>to stoop.</i>	se hâter, <i>to make haste.</i>
se dépêcher,	<i>to make haste.</i>	s'imaginer, <i>to fancy.</i>
se déterminer,	<i>to resolve upon.</i>	se lever, &c. <i>to rise, &c.</i>

EXERCISE LX.

INDIC. PRES. — I flatter myself. — That woman nurses
se flatter *s'écouter*
 herself too much. — We intend to travel. — You wonder
se proposer de voyager *s'étonner*
 at these news. — They defend themselves.
de nouvelle f. *se défendre*

IMPERF. — I was riding (on horseback.) — He was
se promener à cheval
 rejoicing at his good fortune. — We were fatiguing ourselves
se réjouir de *— f.* *se fatiguer*
 (to no purpose.) — You were amusing yourself in the garden.
inutilement. *s'amuser* *dans*
 They quarrelled with (every body.)
se disputer *tout le monde.*

EXERCISE LXI.

PRET. DEF. — I presented myself to the assembly. — He
se présenter *assemblée f.*
 lost himself in the crowd. — She laughed at his advice.
se perdre *foule f.* *se moquer de* *avis m.*
 — We applied to the prime minister. — You perceived
s'adresser *premier ministre.* *s'apercevoir de*
 the snare. — They met in the street.
piège m. *se rencontrer* *rue f.*

PRET. INDEF. — I have exposed myself. — He has amused
s'exposer *s'amuser*
 himself. — She has revenged herself. — Where did you stop?
se venger *s'arrêter*

EXERCISE LXII.

PLUPERF. — I had fallen asleep. — They had grown rich
s'endormir *s'enrichir*
 at your expense.
dépens m. pl.

FUT. ASS. — I shall bathe to-morrow. — You will
se baigner *demain*
 catch cold.
s'enrhumer

94 OF IMPERSONAL OR UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

COND. PRES.—I would not expose myself so rashly.
s'exposer si témérairement.

— They would grow bold.
s'enhardir

IMPER. — Let us rest under the shade of this
se reposer à ombre f.
 tree. — Rise from there, that is not your place.
arbre m. se lever là ce — f.

§ V. OF IMPERSONAL OR UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

THE Verbs to which the old Grammarians give generally the name of *impersonal*, and the modern that of *unipersonal*,* are certain defective verbs, which, throughout all their tenses, are used only in the third person singular; as, *il faut*, it is necessary; *il y a*, there is, there are.

Unipersonal Verbs have their inflections according to the conjugation to which they belong; and, in their compound tenses, some take *avoir*, as, *il a plu*, *il a tonné*; and others take *être*, as, *il est résulé*, *il est arrivé*. In either case, the past participle admits of no variation in gender or number.

LIST of the Unipersonal Verbs of most general occurrence:—

Il pleut,	<i>it rains.</i>	il convient,	<i>it becomes.</i>
Il neige,	<i>it snows.</i>	il faut,	<i>it is necessary.</i>
il grêle,	<i>it hails.</i>	il importe,	<i>it matters.</i>
il tonne,	<i>it thunders.</i>	il paraît,	<i>it appears.</i>
il éclaire,	<i>it lightens.</i>	il semble,	<i>it seems.</i>
il gèle,	<i>it freezes.</i>	il s'ensuit que,	<i>it follows that.</i>
il dégèle,	<i>it thaws.</i>	il sied,	<i>it is becoming.</i>
il arrive,	<i>it happens.</i>	il y a,	<i>there is, there are.</i>

* IMPERSONAL means, *that has no person*; and UNIPERSONAL, *that has one person*.

CONJUGATION OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB
PLEUVOIR, TO RAIN.

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	pleuvant, <i>raining.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>	plu, <i>rained.</i>
<i>IND. Pres.</i>	il pleut, <i>it rains.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	il a plu.
<i>Imperf.</i>	il pleuvait, <i>it was raining.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	il avait plu.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	il plut, <i>it rained.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	il eut plu.
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	il pleuvra, <i>it will rain.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	il aura plu.
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	il pleuvrait, <i>it would rain.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	il aurait plu.
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			

SUBJ. Pres. qu'il pleuve, *that it may rain.* *Pret.* qu'il ait plu.
Imperf. qu'il plût, *that it might rain.* *Pluperf.* qu'il eût plu.

CONJUGATION OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB
NEIGER, TO SNOW.

<i>IND. Pres.</i>	il neige, <i>it snows.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	il a neigé.
<i>Imperf.</i>	il neigeait, <i>it was snowing.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	il avait neigé.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	il neigea, <i>it snowed.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	il eut neigé.
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	il neigera, <i>it will snow.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	il aura neigé.
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	il neigerait, <i>it would snow.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	il aurait neigé.
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			

SUBJ. Pres. qu'il neige, *that it may snow.* *Pret.* qu'il ait neigé.
Imperf. qu'il neigeât, *that it might snow.* *Pluperf.* qu'il eût neigé.

CONJUGATION OF THE UNIPERSONAL VERB
GELER, TO FREEZE.

<i>IND. Pres.</i>	il gèle, <i>it freezes.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	il a gelé.
<i>Imperf.</i>	il gelait, <i>it was freezing.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	il avait gelé.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	il gela, <i>it froze.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	il eut gelé.
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	il gèlera, <i>it will freeze.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	il aura gelé.
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	il gèlerait, <i>it would freeze.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	il aurait gelé.
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>			

SUBJ. Pres. qu'il gèle, *that it may freeze.* *Pret.* qu'il ait gelé.
Imperf. qu'il gelât, *that it might freeze.* *Pluperf.* qu'il eût gelé.

Y AVOIR, THERE TO BE.

Pres. Part.	y ayant,	there being.
Past Part.	y ayant eu,	there having been.
IND. Pres.	il y a,	there is, or there are.
Pret. Indef.	il y a eu,	there has been, or there have been.
Imperf.	il y avait,	there was, or there were.
Pluperf.	il y avait eu,	there had been.
Pret. Def.	il y eut,	there was, or there were.
Pret. Ant.	il y eut eu,	there had been.
Fut. Abs.	il y aura,	there will be.
Fut. Ant.	il y aura eu,	there will have been.
COND. Pres.	il y aurait,	there would be.
Past,	il y aurait eu,	there would have been.
(No Imperative.)		
SUBJ. Pres.	qu'il y ait,	that there may be.
Pret.	qu'il y ait eu,	that there may have been.
Imperf.	qu'il y eût,	that there might be.
Pluperf.	qu'il y eût eu,	that there might have been.

Examples of the same verb used interrogatively, negatively, &c.

Y a-t-il ?	is there ?
il n'y a pas,	there is not.
y avait-il ?	was there, or were there ?
n'y a-t-il pas eu ?	has there not been ?
il n'y avait pas eu,	there had not been.
y aura-t-il ?	will there be ?
il n'y aura pas,	there will not be.
y aura-t-il eu ?	will there have been ?

N. B. This verb remains always in the singular in French, although it is used in the plural in English, when followed by a substantive plural.

FALLOIR, TO BE NECESSARY.

Pres. Part.	none.	[it must. Past Part. fallu.
IND. Pres.	il faut, it is necessary,	Pret. Indef. il a fallu.
Imperf.	il fallait.	Pluperf. il avait fallu.
Pret. Def.	il fallut.	Pret. Ant. il eut fallu.
Fut. Abs.	il faudra.	Fut. Ant. il aura fallu.
COND. Pres.	il faudrait.	Past, il aurait fallu.
(No Imperative.)		

SUBJ. Pres.	qu'il faille.	Pret. qu'il ait fallu.
Imperf.	qu'il fallût.	Pluperf. qu'il eût fallu.

REMARKS. — The usual construction with *falloir* is to place the conjunction *que* after *il faut, il fallait, &c.* then to use the subject of the English verb *must*, as a subject to the second verb in French, which must be put in the

subjunctive; as, *Il faut que je finisse mon thème*, I must finish my exercise.

Another construction is to allow the second verb to remain in the infinitive, as in English, then the personal pronoun which is the subject of the verb *must*, is to be expressed by one of the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, placed after the impersonal pronoun *il*; as, *Il me faut commencer mon ouvrage*, I must begin my work.

All expressions implying necessity, obligation, or want, may be rendered by *falloir*; as,

Il lui faut un habit. — (ACAD.)		He wants a coat.
Il me faut un dictionnaire.		I want a dictionary.

EXERCISE LXIII.

N. B. — *The Tenses will now be used promiscuously.*

Does it rain? — Was it not raining? — I think it thunders.
crois qu'

— Does it not lighten? — Did it freeze last night? —
ind-4 art. 2^e dernier 1^{re} nuit f.

Does it snow this morning? — There is nothing to do. —
matin m. faire.

There are many people. — There were more than a
beaucoup de gens. de *

thousand persons. — There has been a great battle. — There
bataille f.

would be no harm.
mal.

EXERCISE LXIV.

Children must obey their parents. — I must sell my house. —
obéir à — maison f.

You must speak to him. — (How much) do you want? — They
Combien

must answer. — Must I show you my work? — It
répondre montrer ouvrage m.

was necessary to consent to that bargain. — It would be
* consentir marché m.

necessary (to inquire about it.) — I want a grammar.
s'en informer.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

ON UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

- I. Go and see if it rains.—*It does not rain, but it will rain*
*Allez * voir* *mais*
soon. — *It does not snow. — It will snow to-morrow. — Do you*
bientôt. *demain.*
think *it freezes?*—*It is freezing* very hard.—I do not think so ;
croyez- subj-1 *très fort.* *2crois 1le*
it seems, on the contrary, that *it thaws.*—*It often* *hails* in this
à *See p. 30.* *2souvent 1*
country. — *There arrived* some persons whom we did not
pays m. *Il* ind-3 *personne f. que*
expect. — *It appears* that you (have not attended) to that
attendre ind-2 *ne vous êtes pas occupé de*
business.—*It is not becoming* in you to contradict your father.
affaire f. ** de contrarier*
— In New-Holland *there are* black swans.
A art. *Nouvelle-Hollande f.* *pr. art. 2 1cygne m.*
- II. *Is there* any one here?—*There is nobody.*—*Were there any*
quelqu'un *See p. 46.*
cavalry at the review?—*There would be* more happiness
cavalerie f. *revue f.* *See 291. de bonheur*
if every one knew how to moderate his desires.— *There would*
*chacun savait * * modérer désir*
not be so many duels, if people were to reflect that
*tant de — l'on * * réfléchir* ind-2
one of the first obligations of a Christian is to forgive
f. — f. chrétien de pardonner art.
injuries.—I wish *that there were* more order in his conduct.
injure voudrais subj-2 *d' conduite f.*
— *It is not necessary* to be a conjurer to guess his
** * sorcier* *See p. 209. deviner*
motives. — Somebody asked Diogenes at what hour people
motif On ind-2 *à Diogène il*
should dine : If one is rich, replied he, when one likes ; if
falloir ind-2 *l'on répondre quand on veut*
one is poor, when one can.
peut.

BEFORE giving the conjugation of the *irregular Verbs*, we shall exemplify several verbs, which, although regular in their conjugation, present a peculiarity in the orthography of some of their tenses.

§ I. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS
ENDING IN GER.

MANGER, TO EAT.

	<i>Part. Pres. mangeant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. mangé.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mange, nous mangeons,	tu manges, vous mangez,
		il mange ; ils mangent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mangeais, nous mangions,	tu mangeais, vous mangiez,
		il mangeait ; ils mangeaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mangeai, nous mangeâmes,	tu mangeas, vous mangeâtes,
		il mangea ; ils mangèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mangerai, nous mangerons,	tu mangeras, vous mangerez,
		il mangera ; ils mangeront.
COND.	Je mangerais, nous mangerions,	tu mangerais, vous mangeriez,
		il mangerait ; ils mangeraient.
IMPER.	mangeons, mangez,	mange, mangez,
		qu'il mange ; qu'ils mangent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	^g je mange, ^g nous mangions,	tu manges, vous mangiez,
		il mange ; ils mangent.
<i>Imp.</i>	^g je mangeasse, ^g nous mangeassions,	tu mangeasses, vous mangeassiez,
		il mangeât ; ils mangeassent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Abréger,	<i>to abridge.</i>	engager,	<i>to engage.</i>
arranger,	<i>to arrange.</i>	gager,	<i>to bet.</i>
bouger,	<i>to stir.</i>	juger,	<i>to judge.</i>
corriger,	<i>to correct.</i>	négliger,	<i>to neglect.</i>
déranger,	<i>to disorder.</i>	partager,	<i>to divide.</i>
diriger,	<i>to direct.</i>	songer,	<i>to think.</i>
encourager,	<i>to encourage.</i>	venger,	<i>to revenge. &c.</i>

REMARK. — Verbs ending in *ger*, require an *e* mute after the *g*, when that consonant is followed by the vowel

100 EXERCISE ON VERBS ENDING IN GER.

a or *o* ; as, *mangeant, mangeons, mangeais* ; but we write without *e* mute, *mangions, mangèrent*, because the *g* is not followed by the vowels *a, o*.

(*Acad. — Wailly. — Féraud, etc. etc.*)

EXERCISE LXV.

The eye *judges* of colours ; the ear *judges* of
œil m. art. *couleur f.* *oreille f.*
 sounds.— Where do you *direct* your steps ? — He *disturbed*
 art. *son m.* *pas m.* *déranger*
 every body. — The example of the general *encouraged* the
tout le monde. *exemple m.*
 army. — Have you *corrected* your exercise ? — I *would wager*
armée f. *thème m.* *gager*
 a hundred francs (that it is not so.)—*Abridge* your speech.—
 * — *m. que cela n'est pas.* *discours m.*
 Don't *stir*.

§ II. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN ÉER.

AGRÉER, TO ACCEPT, TO PLEASE.

	<i>Part. Pres. agréant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. agréé.</i>	
IND. Pres.	J'agrée, nous agréons,	tu agrées, vous agréez,	il agrée ; ils agrément.
Imp.	J'agréais, nous agréions,	tu agréais, vous agréiez,	il agréait ; ils agréaient.
Pret.	J'agréai, nous agréâmes,	tu agréas, vous agréâtes,	il agréa ; ils agréèrent.
Fut.	J'agréerai, nous agréerons,	tu agréeras, vous agréerez,	il agréera ; ils agréeront.
COND.	J'agréerais, nous agréerions,	tu agréerais, vous agréeriez,	il agréerait ; ils agréeraient.
IMPER.		agrée, agréez,	qu'il agrée ; qu'ils agrément.
SUBJ. Pres.	g j'agrée, g nous agréions,	tu agrées, vous agréiez,	il agrée ; ils agrément.
Imp.	g j'agréeasse, g nous agréassions,	tu agréasses, vous agréassiez,	il agréât ; ils agréassent.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *CER*. 101

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Créer,	<i>to create.</i>	suppléer,	<i>to supply.</i>
récréer,	<i>to divert.</i>	&c.	&c.

REMARK. — The Participle past of these verbs takes three *e* in the feminine. In the Future and Conditional where there are two, the poets usually suppress one.

Votre cœur d'Ardaric *agrèrait-il la flamme* ? — (CORNEILLE.)

Nos hôtes *agrèront* les soins qui leur sont dus. — (LA FONTAINE.)

In prose, that suppression would be a fault.

§ III. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *CER*.

AVANCER, TO ADVANCE.

Part. Pres. avançant.

Part. Past. avancé.

IND. Pres.	J'avance,	tu avances,	il avance ;
	nous avançons,	vous avancez,	ils avancent.
Imp.	J'avançais,	tu avançais,	il avançait ;
	nous avançons,	vous avanciez,	ils avançaient.
Pret.	J'avançai,	tu avanças,	il avança ;
	nous avançâmes,	vous avançâtes,	ils avancèrent.
Fut.	J'avancerai,	tu avanceras,	il avancera ;
	nous avancerons,	vous avancerez,	ils avanceront.
COND.	J'avancerais,	tu avancerais,	il avancerait ;
	nous avancerions,	vous avanceriez,	ils avanceraient.
IMPER.		avance,	qu'il avance ;
	avançons,	avancez,	qu'ils avancent.
SUBJ. Pres.	je j'avance,	tu avances,	il avance ;
	et nous avançons,	vous avanciez,	ils avancent.
Imp.	je j'avançasse,	tu avançasses,	il avançât ;
	et nous avançassions,	vous avançassiez,	ils avançassent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Amorcer,	<i>to bait.</i>	énoncer,	<i>to express, utter.</i>
annoncer,	<i>to announce.</i>	percer,	<i>to pierce.</i>
bercer,	<i>to rock.</i>	pincer,	<i>to pinch.</i>
commencer,	<i>to begin.</i>	rincer,	<i>to rinse, wash.</i>
devancer,	<i>to outrun.</i>	sucer,	<i>to suck.</i>
enfoncer,	<i>to sink, break open.</i>	&c.	&c.

REMARK. — In all these verbs the *c* takes a cedilla, when followed by the vowel *a* or *o*.

102 EXERCISE ON VERBS ENDING IN *ÉER* AND *CER*.

The same rule applies to those verbs in which it is followed by a *u*, whenever it is wished to give the *c* the soft pronunciation of the *s*; as, *il reçut, il a aperçu*.

EXERCISE LXVI.

God *created* man after his own image. — God *has created*
 art. à * — f.
 heaven and earth. — His proposal was *accepted*. —
 art. ciel m. art. proposition f. agréer
 I shall *make up* the rest. — He *announced* that news to all
 suppléer nouvelle f.
 his friends. — It *was beginning* to rain when we set off. — A
 quand partimes.
 ball pierced his clothes. — Wash these glasses.
 balle f. habit m. pl. Rincer verre m.

§ IV. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *UER*.

JOUER, TO PLAY.

	<i>Part. Pres. jouant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. joué.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je joue, nous jouons,	tu joues, vous jouez,	il joue; ils jouent.
Imp.	Je jouais, nous jouions,	tu jouais, vous jouiez,	il jouait; ils jouaient.
Pret.	Je jouai, nous jouâmes,	tu jouas, vous jouâtes,	il joua; ils jouèrent.
Fut.	Je jouerai, nous jouerons,	tu joueras, vous jouerez,	il jouera; ils joueront.
COND.	Je jouerais, nous jouerions,	tu jouerais, vous joueriez,	il jouerait; ils joueraient.
IMPER.	jouons, jouez,	joue, jouez,	qu'il joue; qu'ils jouent.
SUBJ. Pres.	je joue, nous jouions,	tu joues, vous jouiez,	il joue; ils jouent.
Imp.	je jouasse, nous jouassions,	tu jouasses, vous jouassiez,	il jouât; ils jouassent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Avouer,	to avow, confess.	distribuer,	to distribute.
attribuer,	to attribute.	nouer,	to tie.
clouer,	to nail.	secouer,	to shake off.
contribuer,	to contribute.	tuer,	to kill.
dénouer,	to untie.	&c.	&c.

REMARK. — In verbs of the first conjugation, when the termination *er* of the infinitive is preceded by a vowel, as in *jouer*, *prier*, *avouer*, etc., the *e* of the termination may be preserved or suppressed, in poetry, in the Future and Conditional ; but, if it be suppressed, a circumflex accent is placed over the vowel preceding. So poets write *je jouerai* or *je joûrai* ; *j'avouerai* or *j'avouârai* ; *je prierais* or *je prêrais*.

§ V. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS
ENDING IN *ELER*.

APPELER, TO CALL.

	<i>Part. Pres. appellant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. appelé.</i>
IND. Pres.	J'appelle, nous appelons,	tu appelles, vous appelez, ils appellent.
Imp.	J'appelais, nous appelions,	tu appelais, vous appeliez, ils appelaient.
Pret.	J'appelai, nous appelâmes,	tu appelas, vous appelâtes, ils appelèrent.
Fut.	J'appellerai, nous appellerons,	tu appelleras, vous appellerez, ils appelleront.
COND.	J'appellerais, nous appellerions,	tu appellerais, vous appelleriez, ils appelleraient.
IMPER.	appelle, appelons,	appelle, appelez, qu'il appelle ; qu'ils appellent.
SUBJ. Pres.	J'appelle, nous appelions,	tu appelles, vous appelez, ils appellent.
Imp.	J'appelasse, nous appelassions,	tu appellasses, vous appelassiez, ils appelleraient.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Amonceler,	to heap up.	épeler,	to spell.
atteler,	to put horses to.	niveler,	to level.
chanceler,	to totter, stagger.	rappeler,	to recall.
dételer,	to unyoke.	renouveler, &c.	to renew, &c.

104 REMARKS ON VERBS ENDING IN *ELER*.

REMARKS. — As has been exemplified in *appeler*, verbs ending in *eler*, double the *l* before an *e* mute : *J'appelle, tu nivelles, il étincelle, ils renouvelleraient*, etc. ; but we write with a single *l* : *nous appelons, vous nivelez, ils étincelaient*, etc., because the vowel which follows the *l* is not an *e* mute.

Geler, to freeze ; *dégeler*, to thaw ; *harceler*, to harass ; *peler*, to peel, do not double the *l*, but the *e*, which precedes it, takes a grave accent : *Il gèle, il dégèlera, ils pèleraient*, etc.

The verbs *recéler*, to conceal stolen things ; *révéler*, to reveal, &c. being terminated by *éler*, and not *eler*, never double the *l* : *Je recèle, tu révèles*, etc.

EXERCISE LXVII.

Do you *play* on the violin ? — The children *are playing* at
de violon m. à
 blindman's-buff. — He was *killed* by a (cannon shot.) — The
colin-maillard. de coup de canon m.
 bells *call* to church. — *Call* them (as you please.) —
cloche f. art. église f. comme il vous plaira.
 He is (near falling), he *staggers*. — We have *renewed*
près de tomber
 acquaintance. — *Spell* that word.
connaissance. mot m.

§ VI. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *ETER*.

JETER, TO THROW.

	<i>Part. Pres. jetant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. jeté.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je jette,	tu jettes,	il jette ;
	nous jetons,	vous jetez,	ils jettent.
Imp.	Je jetais,	tu jetais,	il jetait ;
	nous jetions,	vous jetiez,	ils jetaient.
Pret.	Je jetai,	tu jetas,	il jeta ;
	nous jetâmes,	vous jetâtes,	ils jetèrent.
Fut.	Je jetterai,	tu jetteras,	il jettera ;
	nous jetterons,	vous jetterez,	ils jetteront.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *ETER*. 105

COND.	Je jetterais, nous jetterions,	tu jetterais, vous jetteriez,	il jetterait ; ils jetteraient.
IMPER.		jette, jetez,	qu'il jette ; qu'ils jettent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{que} je jette, ○ nous jetions,	tu jettes, vous jetiez,	il jette ; ils jettent.
Imp.	^{que} je jetasse, ○ nous jetassions,	tu jetasses, vous jetassiez,	il jetât ; ils jetassent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Cacheter, *to seal*. | Projeter, *to project*. &c.

Acheter, to buy; *étiqueter*, to ticket, make *j'achète*, *j'achèterai*, *ils étiquètent*, &c. and not *j'achette*, *j'achetterai*, *ils étiquettent*. — (ACAD.)

§ VII. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *YER*.

EMPLOYER, TO EMPLOY.

Part. Pres. employant. *Part. Past.* employé.

IND. Pres.	J'emploie, nous employons,	tu emploies, vous employez,	il emploie ; ils emploient.
Imp.	J'employais, nous employions,	tu employais, vous employiez,	il employait ; ils employaient.
Pret.	J'employai, nous employâmes,	tu employas, vous employâtes,	il employa ; ils employèrent.
Fut.	J'emploierai, nous emploierons,	tu emploieras, vous emploierez,	il emploiera ; ils emploieront.
COND.	J'emploierais, nous emploierions,	tu emploierais, vous emploieriez,	il emploierait ; ils emploieraient.
IMPER.		emploie, employez,	qu'il emploie ; qu'ils emploient.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{que} j'emploie, ○ nous employions,	tu emploies, vous employiez,	il emploie ; ils emploient.
Imp.	^{que} j'employasse, ○ nous employassions,	tu employasses, vous employassiez,	il employât ; ils employassent.

(Acad. — Girard. — Restaut. — Wailly, &c.)

106 CONJUGATION OF VERBS ENDING IN *YER*.

Conjugate in the same manner verbs in *yer*, and in general all those whose Present Participle ends in *yant*, as : —

Balayer,	to sweep.	nettoyer,	to clean.
effrayer,	to frighten.	appuyer,	to prop; to rest upon.
essayer,	to try.	essuyer,	to wipe.
payer,	to pay.	ennuyer,	to tire.

Envoyer, to send; and, *renvoyer*, to send back, deviate from the preceding model of conjugation in the Future and Conditional, making — *J'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*; *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*, instead of *j'envoierai*, &c.

REMARKS. — In the preceding verbs, the *y* is preserved in every part of the verb, except before the *mute* terminations *e*, *es*, *ent*, where it is changed into *i*: *Je paie*,* *tu nettoies*, *ils appuient*. Moreover, these verbs take a *y* and an *i* in the two first persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Present of the Subjunctive; that is, the *y* of the radical part (as *employ*), and the *i* of the final part *ions*, *iez*.—(Modern Grammarians.)

* The French Academy leaves the choice of writing *il paye*, or *il paie*; *je payerai*, or *je paierai*, or even *je pairai*; but the generality of Grammarians are agreed on the change of the *y* into *i*, and present usage is conform to their opinion.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

That *throws* me into a great dilemma. — He *threw* himself
dans *embarras* m.
into the midst of the enemy. — Have you *sealed* your
à *milieu* m. *ennemi* m. pl.
letter? — He *is cleaning* his gun. — All that he takes, he
fusil m. *ce que* *prend*
pays (ready money.) — I shall endeavour to persuade
le *argent comptant*. *essayer* *de persuader*
them. — He *will support* you with all his credit. — He
appuyer *de* *crédit* m.
employs every body to obtain that place. — That *tires* me
tout le monde *pour* — f.
to death. — Don't *frighten* the child.
art. *mort* f. *enfant*.

§ VIII. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF
VERBS ENDING IN *IER*.

PRIER, TO PRAY.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> priaut.	<i>Part. Past.</i> prié.
IND. <i>Pres.</i> Je prie,	tu pries,	il prie ;
nous prions,	vous priez,	ils prient.
<i>Imp.</i> Je priais,	tu priais,	il priait ;
nous priions,	vous priiez,	ils priaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je priaï,	tu prias,	il pria ;
nous priaîmes,	vous priaîtes,	ils priaient.
<i>Fut.</i> Je prierai,	tu prieras,	il piera ;
nous prierons,	vous prierez,	ils prieront.
COND. Je prierais,	tu prierais,	il prierait ;
nous prierions,	vous prieriez,	ils prieraient .
IMPER. prions,	prie,	qu'il prie ;
	priez,	qu'ils prient.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{o}$ je prie,	tu pries,	il prie ;
$\frac{e}{o}$ nous priions,	vous priiez,	ils prient.
<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{o}$ je priasse,	tu priasses,	il priât ;
$\frac{e}{o}$ nous priassions,	vous priassiez,	ils priassent.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs ending in *ier* ; as,

Certifier,	<i>to certify.</i>	nier,	<i>to deny.</i>
crier,	<i>to cry.</i>	oublier,	<i>to forget.</i>
étudier,	<i>to study.</i>	plier,	<i>to bend.</i>
lier,	<i>to tie.</i>	relier,	<i>to bind.</i>
manier,	<i>to handle.</i>	remercier,	<i>to thank.</i>

REMARK. — *Prier* and all verbs whose Present Participle ends in *iant*, take *ii* in the first and the second person plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Present of the Subjunctive ; that is, the *i* of the radical part (as *pri*), and that of the termination : *Nous priions*, *vous priez* ; *que nous lions*, *que vous lieiez*.

EXERCISE LXIX.

I thank you for the honour you do me. — He studies
de que faites
night and day. — The plank was bending under him. — I
planche f. sous

108 EXERCISE ON VERBS ENDING IN *IER*.

shall never forget (what I owe you.) — *Request* him to come
ce que je vous dois. *Prier* *de venir*
and (speak to me.) — *One* (does not become) *learned without*
** me parler.* *On ne devient pas sans*
studying. — *In handling* that vase, he broke it.
inf-l — *m.* *briser ind-4*

OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

However irregular a verb may be, its irregularities never occur in the compound tenses, for which reason we shall, except in very few instances, dispense with them in the various conjugations of irregular verbs.

§ I. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of this conjugation are, *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back.

ALLER, TO GO.

	<i>Part. Pres. allant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. allé.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vais, nous allons,	tu vas, vous allez,	il va ; ils vont.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'allais, nous allions,	tu allais, vous alliez,	il allait ; ils allaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	J'allai, nous allâmes,	tu allas, vous allâtes,	il alla ; ils allèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'irai, nous irons,	tu iras, vous irez,	il ira ; ils iront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	J'irais, nous irions,	tu irais, vous iriez,	il irait ; ils iraient.
IMPER.	allons,	va, allez,	qu'il aille ; qu'ils aillent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Que j'aille, Que nous allions,	tu ailles, vous alliez,	il aille ; ils aillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que j'allasse, Que nous allussions,	tu allasses, vous allassiez,	il allât ; ils allassent.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *S'EN ALLER*. 109

REMARKS.—*Aller* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, in all its compound tenses: *Je suis allé, j'étais allé, &c.*

The Imperative *va* takes an *s*, when followed by *en* or *y*; as, *vas en savoir des nouvelles; vas-y.*

We sometimes say, *je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été*, instead of *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*. These expressions, however, have this difference, that *avoir été* implies the return, and *être allé* does not. Thus: *il a été à Rome*, means, that he went to Rome, and is returned, or that he has been in Rome, and has left it; but *il est allé à Rome* means only, that he is gone to Rome. — (ACAD.)

S'EN ALLER, TO GO AWAY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

S'en aller, to go away.

PAST.

S'en être allé, to have gone away.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en allant, going away.

COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en étant allé, having gone away.

PARTICIPLE PAST. — *En allé, gone away.*

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je m'en vais,
tu t'en vas,
il s'en va,
nous nous en allons,
vous vous en allez,
ils s'en vont,

{ I go, or am
going away.

IMPERFECT.

Je m'en allais,
tu t'en allais,
il s'en allait,
nous nous en allions,
vous vous en alliez,
ils s'en allaient,

{ I was going
away.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je m'en allai,
tu t'en allas,
il s'en alla,
nous nous en allâmes,
vous vous en allâtes,
ils s'en allèrent,

{ I went away.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je m'en suis allé,
tu t'en es allé,
il s'en est allé,
nous nous en sommes allés,
vous vous en êtes allés,
ils s'en sont allés,

{ I have gone
away.

PLUPERFECT.

Je m'en étais allé,
tu t'en étais allé,
il s'en était allé,
nous nous en étions allés,
vous vous en étiez allés,
ils s'en étaient allés,

{ I had gone
away.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je m'en fus allé,
tu t'en fus allé,
il s'en fut allé,
nous nous en fûmes allés,
vous vous en fûtes allés,
ils s'en furent allés,

{ I had gone
away.

110 CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *S'EN ALLER*.

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je m'en irai,
tu t'en iras,
il s'en ira,
nous nous en irons,
vous vous en irez,
ils s'en iront,

*I shall go
away.*

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je m'en serai allé,
tu t'en seras allé,
il s'en sera allé,
nous nous en serons allés,
vous vous en serez allés,
ils s'en seront allés,

*I shall have
gone away.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je m'en irais,
tu t'en irais,
il s'en irait,
nous nous en irions,
vous vous en iriez,
ils s'en iroient,

*I would or
should go away.*

PAST.

Je m'en serais allé,
tu t'en serais allé,
il s'en serait allé,
nous nous en serions allés,
vous vous en seriez allés,
ils s'en seraient allés,

*I should
have gone away.*

IMPERATIVE.

Affirmatively.

Va - t'en,
qu'il s'en aille,
allons-nous-en,
allez-vous-en,
qu'ils s'en aillent,

*(thou) Go
away.*

Negatively.

Ne t'en va pas,
qu'il ne s'en aille pas,
ne nous en allons pas,
ne vous en allez pas,
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas,

*Do not
go away.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je m'en aille,
que tu t'en ailles,
qu'il s'en aille,
que nous nous en allions,
que vous vous en alliez,
qu'ils s'en aillent,

*That I may
go away.*

PRETERITE.

Que je m'en sois allé,
que tu t'en sois allé,
qu'il s'en soit allé,
Que nous nous en soyons
allés,
ils s'en soient

*That I may
have gone away.*

IMPERFECT.

Que je m'en allasse,
que tu t'en allasses,
qu'il s'en allât,
que nous nous en allussions,
que vous vous en allassiez,
qu'ils s'en allassent,

*That I
might go away.*

PLUPERFECT.

Que je m'en fusse allé,
que tu t'en fusses allé,
qu'il s'en fût allé,
nous nous en fussions
allés,
vous vous en fussiez
qu'ils s'en fussent

*That I might
have gone away.*

When *S'en aller* is used interrogatively, we say, *M'en irai-je, t'en iras-tu, s'en ira-t-il, nous en irons-nous, vous en irez-vous, s'en iront-ils ?*

Envoyer, to send, and *renvoyer*, to send back, to dismiss, are regular, except the Future and the Conditional, which, as we have already observed (page 106), make *j'enverrai, j'enverrais; je renverrai, je renverrais*.

EXERCISE LXX.

I am going to pay some visits.— He goes from town to town.
 * faire visite f. en
 They are going to the country. — Blue and pink go
 campagne f. art. bleu m. art. rose m.
 well together.— We went by land.— She is gone to church.—
 art. église f.
 Let us go away from here. — Why do you go away so soon?
 Pourquoi tôt
 — I will send my servant to the post-office. — She would
 domestique m. poste f.
 dismiss her chambermaid. — They would send back their horses.
 femme de chambre

 § II. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF
 THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ABSTENIR (S'), to abstain, is conjugated like *tenir*, which is exemplified farther on.

ACCOURIR, to run to, is conjugated like *courir*, with this difference, that its compound tenses are sometimes formed with *avoir*, and sometimes with *être*, according as it denotes state or action. (See page 90.)

ACCUEILLIR, to receive; see *cueillir*.

ACQUÉRIR, TO ACQUIRE.

<i>Part. Pres. acquérant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. acquis.</i>	
IND. Pres.	J'acquiers,	tu acquiers,	il acquiert;
	nous acquérons,	vous acquérez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp.	J'acquerais,	tu acquerais,	il acquerrait;
	nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils acquerraient.
Pret.	J'acquis,	tu acquis,	il acquit;
	nous acquîmes,	vous acquîtes,	ils acquirent.
Fut.	J'acquerrai,	tu acquerras,	il acquerra;
	nous acquerrons,	vous acquerez,	ils acquerront.

112 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

COND. Pres.	J'acquerrais,	tu acquerrais,	il acquerrait ;
	nous acquerrions,	vous acquerriez,	ils acquerraient.
IMPER.	acquérons,	acquiérez,	qu'il acquière ;
			qu'ils acquièrent.
SUBJ. Pres.	que j'acquière,	tu acquières,	il acquière ;
	que nous acquiérons,	vous acquiériez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp.	que j'acquisse,	tu acquisses,	il acquît ;
	que nous acquissions,	vous acquissiez,	ils acquissent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Conquérir, <i>to conquer</i> ,	{ seldom used but in the infinitive, the preterite definite, the imperfect of the subjunctive, and the compound tenses.
Requérir, <i>to request, to require</i> ,	{ chiefly used in law.
S'enquérir, <i>to inquire</i> ,	{ seldom used but in the infinitive, and compound tenses.

Querir, to fetch, is used after the verbs *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer* ; as, *allez querir*, go and fetch ; *envoyez querir*, send for. It is confined to familiar conversation, and is getting obsolete.

ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> assaillant.		<i>Part. Past.</i> assailli.	
IND. Pres.	J'assaille,	tu assailles,	il assaille ;
	nous assaillons,	vous assaillez,	ils assaillent.
Imp.	J'assaillais,	tu assaillais,	il assaillait ;
	nous assaillions,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillaient.
Pret.	J'assaillis,	tu assaillis,	il assaillit ;
	nous assaillîmes,	vous assaillîtes,	ils assaillirent.
Fut.	J'assaillirai,	tu assailliras,	il assaillira ;
	nous assaillirons,	vous assaillirez,	ils assailliront.
COND. Pres.	J'assaillirais,	tu assaillirais,	il assaillirait ;
	nous assaillirions,	vous assailliriez,	ils assailliraient.
IMPER.	assaillons,	assaillez,	qu'il assaille ;
			qu'ils assaillent.
SUBJ. Pres.	que j'assaille,	tu assailles,	il assaille ;
	que nous assaillions,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillent.
Imp.	que j'assaillisse,	tu assaillisses,	il assaillît ;
	que nous assaillissions,	vous assaillissiez,	ils assaillissent.

(*Acad.*—*Restaut*—*Gattel*—*Landais*, &c.)

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start. — J. J. Rousseau, and other writers, have, for the sake of euphony, written in the present of the Indicative, *il tressaillit*, instead of *il tressaille*.

EXERCISE LXXI.

He had *acquired* great influence over his contemporaries. —
une — f. *sur* *contemporain* m.
 He *would acquire* honour and reputation. —
 pr. art. pr. art.
 Alexander *conquered* a great part of Asia. — A *conquered*
 ind-3 *partie* f. art.
 province. — We were *overtaken* by a furious storm. — At
 ' — f. ind-3 *assaillir* d' *tempête* f.
 every word they said to him about his son, the good
chaque *qu' on disait* * *de*
 old man *leaped* for joy.
vieillard tressaillir ind-2 *de joie*.

BÉNIR, to bless, is conjugated like *finir* (see p. 68.)

It is only irregular in its past participle, which makes *bénit*, *bénite*; and *béni*, *bénie*.

Bénit, *bénite*, is used only in speaking of things consecrated by a religious ceremony; as, *du pain bénit*, consecrated bread; *de l'eau bénite*, holy water.

BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> bouillant.		<i>Part. Past.</i> bouilli.	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je bous,	tu bous,	il bout ;
	nous bouillons,	vous bouillez,	ils bouillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je bouillais,	tu bouillais,	il bouillait ;
	nous bouillions,	vous bouilliez,	ils bouillaient.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je bouillis,	tu bouillis,	il bouillit ;
	nous bouillîmes,	vous bouillîtes,	ils bouillirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je bouillirai,	tu bouilliras,	il bouillira ;
	nous bouillirons,	vous bouillirez,	ils bouilliront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je bouillirais,	tu bouillirais,	il bouillirait ;
	nous bouillirions,	vous bouilliriez,	ils bouilliraient.
IMPER.		bous,	qu'il bouille ;
	bouillons,	bouillez,	qu'ils bouillent.

SUBJ.	Pres.	je bouille,	tu bouilles,	il bouille ;
		nous bouillons,	vous bouilliez,	ils bouillent.
Imp.		je bouillisse,	tu bouillisses,	il bouillît ;
		nous bouillissions,	vous bouillissiez,	ils bouillissent.

This verb is seldom used but in the third persons singular and plural ; as, *L'eau bout*, the water boils ; *ces choux ne bouillaient pas*, these cabbages did not boil. But if it be required to use it in all its persons as an active verb, as its corresponding to boil is in English, we then make use of the different tenses of the verb *faire* before the infinitive *bouillir* ; as, *Je fais bouillir*, *nous faisons bouillir*, &c. Therefore say, *Je fais bouillir de la viande*, I boil some meat, and not *je bous*.

Rebouillir, to boil again, is conjugated in the same manner, and follows the same rules.

Ébouillir, to boil away, is seldom used but in the infinitive, and past participle *ébouilli*.

COURIR, TO RUN.

	Part. Pres. courant.	Part. Past. couru.
IND.	Pres. Je cours,	tu cours, il court ;
	nous courons,	vous courez, ils courent.
Imp.	Je courais,	tu courais, il courait ;
	nous courions,	vous couriez, ils couraient.
Pret.	Je courus,	tu courus, il courut ;
	nous courûmes,	vous courûtes, ils coururent.
Fut.	Je courrai,	tu courras, il courra ;
	nous courrons,	vous courrez, ils courront.
COND. Pres.	Je courrais,	tu courrais, il courrait ;
	nous courrions,	vous courriez, ils courraient.
IMPER.		cours, qu'il coure ;
	courons,	courez, qu'ils courent.
SUBJ. Pres.	que je coure,	tu courres, il coure ;
	nous courions,	vous couriez, ils courent.
Imp.	que je courusse,	tu courusses, il courût ;
	nous courussions,	vous courussiez, ils courussent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Accourir, to run to.	encourir, to incur.
concourir, to concur.	parcourir, to run over.
discourir, to discourse.	secourir, to succour.

EXERCISE LXXII.

God had *blessed* the race of Abraham. — Does the water
 — f. —
boil? — *Boil* that meat *again*, it is not (done enough.) — You
viande f. assez cuite.
run faster than I. — *Will* men always *run* after
plus vite moi. art. pr. art.
 shadows? — Socrates passed the last day of his life in
chimère f. pl. passer à
discoursing on the immortality of the soul. — You *would incur*
inf. l. immortalité
 the displeasure of the prince. — I have *run over* the whole
disgrâce f. —
 town to find him.
pour trouver
 COUVRIR, to cover; see *Ouvrir*.

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

	<i>Part. Pres. cueillant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. cueilli.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je cueille, nous cueillons,	tu cueilles, vous cueillez, ils cueillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je cueillais, nous cueillions,	tu cueillais, vous cueilliez, ils cueillaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cueillis, nous cueillîmes,	tu cueillis, vous cueillîtes, ils cueillirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je cueillerai, nous cueillerons,	tu cueilleras, vous cueillerez, ils cueilleront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je cueillerais, nous cueillerions,	tu cueillerais, vous cueilleriez, ils cueilleraient.
IMPER.	cueillons,	cueille, cueillez, qu'il cueille; qu'ils cueillent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Que je cueille, Que nous cueillions,	tu cueilles, vous cueilliez, ils cueillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je cueillisse, Que nous cueillissions,	tu cueillisses, vous cueillissiez, ils cueillissent.

Conjugate in the same manner: —

Accueillir, to receive, to welcome. | recueillir, to collect.

DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

	<i>Part. Pres. dormant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. dormi.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je dors, nous dormons,	tu dors, vous dormez, ils dorment.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je dormais, nous dormions,	tu dormais, vous dormiez, ils dormaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je dormis, nous dormîmes,	tu dormis, vous dormîtes, ils dormirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je dormirai, nous dormirons,	tu dormiras, vous dormirez, ils dormiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je dormirais, nous dormirions,	tu dormirais, vous dormiriez, ils dormiraient.
IMPER.	dormons,	dors, dormez, qu'il dorme ; qu'ils dorment.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	que je dorme, que nous dormions,	tu dormes, vous dormiez, ils dorment.
<i>Imp.</i>	que je dormisse, que nous dormissions,	tu dormisses, vous dormissiez, ils dormissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Endormir, to lull asleep.		se rendormir, to fall asleep
s'endormir, to fall asleep.		again.

FAILLIR, to fail. This verb is used only in the present of the Infinitive; in the Participle past *failli*; in the Preterite definite, *je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit; nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent*; and in the compound tenses, *j'ai failli, j'avais failli, &c.*

Its derivative *défaillir*, to faint, to fail, is scarcely ever used but in the first and third persons plural of the present of the Indicative, *nous défailions, ils défont*; in the Imperfect, *je défailais, &c.*; in the Preterite definite, *je défaillis, &c.*; in the Preterite indefinite, *j'ai défailli, &c.*; and in the Infinitive *défaillir*.

FLEURIR, to blossom, in its *literal sense*, is regular; but used *figuratively*, meaning to be in a prosperous state, to flourish, to be in repute, honour or esteem, it makes *florissant* in the present Participle, and *florissait*, *florissaient*, in the Imperfect of the Indicative.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

I *will* gather you some flowers. — We *shall* collect in
fleur f. *dans* art.
 ancient history, important and valuable facts. — The
² ¹ pr. art. ² — ³ *précieux* ¹ *fait* m.
 hare generally *sleeps* with its eyes open. — That
lièvre m. ² *ordinairement* ¹ * * art. *ouvert*
 song *hulls* one *asleep*. — I *fell asleep* about three o'clock. — He
 * ind-4 *vers* art.
 (*was near*) losing his life. — His strength *fails*
faillir ind-3 *perdre* * art. *force* f. pl. *défaillir*
 (every day.) — Athens *flourished* under Pericles.
tous les jours. *Athènes* *sous* *Périclès*.

FUIR, TO FLY, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN.

	<i>Part. Pres. fuyant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. fui.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je fuis, nous fuyons,	tu fuis, vous fuyez, ils fuient.
Imp.	Je fuyais, nous fuyions,	tu fuyais, vous fuyiez, ils fuyaient.
Pret.	Je fuis, nous fuîmes,	tu fuis, vous fûtes, ils fuirent.
Fut.	Je fuirai, nous fuirons,	tu fuiras, vous fuirez, ils fuiront.
COND. Pres.	Je fuirais, nous fuirions,	tu fuirais, vous fuiriez, ils fuiraient.
IMPER.	fuyons,	fuis, fuyez, qu'il fuie ; qu'ils fuient.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{que} je fuie, ^{que} nous fuyions,	tu fuies, vous fuyiez, ils fuient.
Imp.	^{que} je fuisse, ^{que} nous fuissions,	tu fuisses, vous fuissiez, ils fuissent.

(*Acad.*—*Wailly.*—*Restaut*, &c.)

Conjugate after the same manner, *s'enfuir*, to run away. In the Imperative we say, *enfuis-toi*, and not *enfuis-t'en*, nor *fuis-t'en*.

GÉSIR, to lie, to lie down, is obsolete. We, however, still say, *Il git, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent.* Je gi-

sais, tu gisais, il gisait ; nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils gisaient. Gisant.—(ACAD.)

Ci-gît (here lies) is the usual form by which an epitaph is begun.

HAÏR, TO HATE.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> haïssant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> haï.
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je haïs, nous haïssons,	tu haïs, vous haïssez, ils haïssent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je haïssais, nous haïssions,	tu haïssais, vous haïssiez, ils haïssaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je haïs, nous haïmes,	tu haïs, vous haïtes, ils haïrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je haïrai, nous haïrons,	tu haïras, vous haïrez, ils haïront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je haïrais, nous haïrions,	tu haïrais, vous haïriez, ils haïraient.
IMPER.	haïssons,	haïs, haïssez, qu'il haïsse ; qu'ils haïssent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	$\frac{g}{o}$ je haïsse, $\frac{g}{o}$ nous haïssions,	tu haïsses, vous haïssiez, il haïsse ; ils haïssent.
<i>Imp.</i>	$\frac{g}{o}$ je haïsse, $\frac{g}{o}$ nous haïssions,	tu haïsses, vous haïssiez, il haït ; ils haïssent.

(*Wailly.*—*Restaut.*—*Demandre, &c.*)

REMARKS. — The *h* is aspirated in this verb, and a diæresis (¨) is placed over the *i*, throughout all the tenses, to show that it is to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel *a* ; as, *ha-ï* ; except, however, the three first persons singular of the present of the Indicative, and the second person singular of the Imperative, which, forming only one syllable, are written without the diæresis, thus : *Je haïs, tu haïs, il haït ; haïs*, and pronounced — *Je hé, tu hé, il hé ; hé*.

This verb, as it is observed by *Restaut* and *Wailly*, is seldom used in the second person singular of the Imperative, the Preterite definite, or the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, and in these two last tenses, instead of using use of the circumflex accent : *nous haïmes, vous*

hattes ; *qu'il hatt*, we use the diæresis, *nous haïmes*, *vous haïtes* ; *qu'il haït*.

MENTIR, *to lie, to utter falsehood*, is conjugated like *sentir*.

MOURIR, TO DIE.

<i>Part. Pres. mourant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. mort.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je meurs,	tu meurs,	il meurt ;
	nous mourons,	vous mourez,	ils meurent.
Imp.	Je mourais,	tu mourais,	il mourait ;
	nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils mouraient.
Pret.	Je mourus,	tu mourus,	il mourut ;
	nous mourûmes,	vous mourûtes,	ils moururent.
Fut.	Je mourrai,	tu mourras,	il mourra ;
	nous mourrons,	vous mourrez,	ils mourront.
COND. Pres.	Je mourrais,	tu mourrais,	il mourrait ;
	nous mourrions,	vous mourriez,	ils mourraient.
IMPER.		meurs,	qu'il meure ;
	mourons,	mourez,	qu'ils meurent.
SUBJ. Pres.	je meure,	tu meures,	il meure ;
	nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils meurent.
Imp.	je mourusse,	tu mourusses,	il mourût ;
	nous mourussions,	vous mourussiez,	ils mourussent.

Mourir is conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in its compound tenses.—The double *r* of the Future and Conditional must be sounded strongly.

When this verb takes the reflected form, *se mourir*, it means *to be at the point of death* ; but, in this sense, it is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the Indicative. — (ACAD.)

OUIR, *to hear*. (Active and defective verb.)

Part. past. ouï. IND. *pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, &c. SUBJ. *imperf.* que j'ouïsse, que tu ouïsses, qu'il ouît, &c.

The principal use of this verb is in the *compound tenses*, and then it is generally followed by another verb in the infinitive ; as,

Je l'ai ouï prêcher.—(ACAD.)	I have heard him preach.
Je l'avais ouï dire.	I had heard it said.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

(Let us make haste), time *fies*.—I cannot meet him,
Hâtons-nous art. *ne puis rencontrer*
 he *shuns* me.—I *hate* falsehood. — *Let us hate* vice. —
 art. *mensonge* m. art. — m.
 He *died* some time after. — John Calvin, the celebrated
célèbre
 reformer, *died* at Geneva, on the 27th May 1564. —
réformateur *
 The envious *will die*, but *envy* never. — He
envieux m. pl. *non* art. ² ¹
is dying. — All the witnesses have been *heard*.
se mourir *témoin* m.

OUVRIR, TO OPEN.

<i>Part. Pres. ouvrant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. ouvert.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i> J'ouvre,	tu ouvres,	il ouvre ;	
nous ouvrons,	vous ouvrez,	ils ouvrent.	
<i>Imp.</i> J'ouvrerais,	tu ouvrerais,	il ouvrirait ;	
nous ouvririons,	vous ouvririez,	ils ouvriraient.	
<i>Pret.</i> J'ouvris,	tu ouvris,	il ouvrit ;	
nous ouvrîmes,	vous ouvrîtes,	ils ouvrirent.	
<i>Fut.</i> J'ouvrirai,	tu ouvriras,	il ouvrira ;	
nous ouvrirons,	vous ouvrirez,	ils ouvriront.	
COND. <i>Pres.</i> J'ouvrirais,	tu ouvrirais,	il ouvrirait ;	
nous ouvririons,	vous ouvririez,	ils ouvriraient.	
IMPER.	ouvre,	qu'il ouvre ;	
ouvrons,	ouvrez,	qu'ils ouvrent.	
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> <i>Que</i> j'ouvre,	tu ouvres,	il ouvre ;	
<i>Que</i> nous ouvrions,	vous ouvriez,	ils ouvrent.	
<i>Imp.</i> <i>Que</i> j'ouvrisse,	tu ouvrisses,	il ouvrit ;	
<i>Que</i> nous ouvrissions,	vous ouvrissiez,	ils ouvrissent.	

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Couvrir, to cover.	recouvrir, to cover again.
découvrir, to discover, to uncover.	rouvrir, to open again.
offrir, to offer.	souffrir, to suffer.

PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY.

<i>Part. Pres. partant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. parti.</i>	
<i>es.</i> Je pars,	tu pars,	il part ;	
nous partons,	vous partez,	ils partent.	

<i>Imp.</i> Je partais,	tu partais,	il partait ;
nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je partis,	tu partis,	il partit ;
nous partîmes,	vous partîtes,	ils partirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je partirai,	tu partiras,	il partira ;
nous partirons,	vous partirez,	ils partiront.
<i>COND. Pres.</i> Je partirais,	tu partirais,	il partirait ;
nous partirions,	vous partiriez,	ils partiraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>	pars,	qu'il parte ;
partons,	partez,	qu'ils partent.
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i> ^{que} je parte,	tu partes,	il parte ;
^{que} nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partent.
<i>Imp.</i> ^{que} je partisse,	tu partisses,	il partît ;
^{que} nous partissions,	vous partissiez,	ils partissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *repartir*, to go back, to set off again, to reply.

Répartir (with an accent over the *e*), to divide, to distribute, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

EXERCISE LXXV.

Open this press. — Harvey discovered the circulation of the
armoire f. — f.

blood. — I offer you my services with all my heart. — The
sang m. — de cœur m.

house has not been covered again, since the roof
maison f. — depuis que toit m.

was burnt down. — That effort opened his wound again. —
ind-4 brûlé * — m. — plaie f.

He suffers more than you think. — We set out to-morrow for
plus que ne pensez. — demain

the country. — He will set out in three days. — That
campagne f. — dans

coach starts every day at (twelve o'clock.)
voiture f. — tous les jours — midi.

SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL.

Part. Pres. sentant.

Part. Past. senti.

<i>IND. Pres.</i> Je sens,	tu sens,	il sent ;
nous sentons,	vous sentez,	ils sentent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je sentais,	tu sentais,	il sentait ;
nous sentions,	vous sentiez,	ils sentaient.

122 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

<i>Pret.</i> Je sentis,	tu sentis,	il sentit ;
nous sentîmes,	vous sentîtes,	ils sentirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je sentirai,	tu sentiras,	il sentira ;
nous sentirons,	vous sentirez,	ils sentiront.
<i>COND. Pres.</i> Je sentirais,	tu sentirais,	il sentirait ;
nous sentirions,	vous sentiriez,	ils sentiraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>	sens,	qu'il sente ;
sentons,	sentez,	qu'ils sentent.
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i> ^{que} je sente,	tu sentes,	il sente ;
^{que} nous sentions,	vous sentiez,	ils sentent.
<i>Imp.</i> ^{que} je sentisse,	tu sentisses,	il sentît ;
^{que} nous sentissions,	vous sentissiez,	ils sentissent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Consentir, <i>to consent.</i>	ressentir, <i>to resent.</i>
mentir, <i>to lie.</i>	se repentir, <i>to repent.</i>
pressentir, <i>to foresee.</i>	&c. &c.

SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

<i>Part. Pres.</i> servant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> servi.
<i>IND. Pres.</i> Je sers,	tu sers, il sert ;
nous servons,	vous servez, ils servent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je servais,	tu servais, il servait ;
nous servions,	vous serviez, ils servaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je servis,	tu servis, il servit ;
nous servîmes,	vous servîtes, ils servirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je servirai,	tu serviras, il servira ;
nous servirons,	vous servirez, ils serviront.
<i>COND. Pres.</i> Je servirais,	tu servirais, il servirait ;
nous servirions,	vous serviriez, ils serviraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>	sers, qu'il serve ;
servons,	servez, qu'ils servent.
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i> ^{que} je serve,	tu serves, il serve ;
^{que} nous servions,	vous serviez, ils servent.
<i>Imp.</i> ^{que} je servisse,	tu servisses, il servît ;
^{que} nous servissions,	vous servissiez, ils servissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *desservir*, to clear the table.

Asservir, to enslave, to subject, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

I *feel* for him an unsurmountable aversion. — You *will feel*
²*insurmountable* ¹— f.
 the effects of it. — *Smell* this rose. — *Shall* we consent to
^{effet} m. — f.
 that bargain? — Never (*tell a falsehood.*) — I *foresaw* all those
^{marché} m. ^{mentir}
 misfortunes. — He *repents* of his bad conduct. — He *serves*
^{malheur} m. ^{mauvais conduite} f.
 his friends with warmth. — *Help* the gentleman to some
^{chaleur} ^{3à} * ^{4monsieur} ¹
 partridge. — Shall I have the honour to *help* you to a wing of
^{perdre} f. ^{de} ^{aile} f.
 a chicken? — *Clear the table.*
 *

SORTIR, TO GO OUT, TO COME OUT.

	<i>Part. Pres. sortant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. sorti.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je sors, nous sortons,	tu sors, vous sortez, il sort; ils sortent.
Imp.	Je sortais, nous sortions,	tu sortais, vous sortiez, il sortait; ils sortaient.
Pret.	Je sortis, nous sortîmes,	tu sortis, vous sortîtes, il sortit; ils sortirent.
Fut.	Je sortirai, nous sortirons,	tu sortiras, vous sortirez, il sortira; ils sortiront.
COND. Pres.	Je sortirais, nous sortirions,	tu sortirais, vous sortiriez, il sortirait; ils sortiraient.
IMPER.	sortons,	sors, sortez, qu'il sorte; qu'ils sortent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je sorte, nous sortions,	tu sortes, vous sortiez, il sorte; ils sortent.
Imp.	Que je sortisse, nous sortissions,	tu sortisses, vous sortissiez, il sortît; ils sortissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *ressortir*, to go out again.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

I go out every morning before breakfast. — The
tout art. matin m. pl. avant
fox comes out of his hole. — We went out of the town
renard m. terrier m.
after him. — (Every body) is gone out. — I shall go out in half
après Tout le monde
an hour. — If I were as ill as you, I would not go out. —
malade
Do not go out to-day. — He (is just) gone out. — He went
aujourd'hui. vient de inf-l
out again immediately. — I will not go out again this evening.
sur-le-champ. soir m.

TENIR, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

Part. Pres. tenant.

Part. Past. tenu.

IND. Pres.	Je tiens,	tu tiens,	il tient ;
	nous tenons,	vous tenez,	ils tiennent.
Imp.	Je tenais,	tu tenais,	il tenait ;
	nous tenions,	vous teniez,	ils tenaient.
Pret.	Je tins,	tu tins,	il tint ;
	nous tîmes,	vous tîntes,	ils tinrent.
Fut.	Je tiendrai,	tu tiendras,	il tiendra ;
	nous tiendrons,	vous tiendrez,	ils tiendront.
COND. Pres.	Je tiendrais,	tu tiendrais,	il tiendrait ;
	nous tiendrions,	vous tiendriez,	ils tiendraient.
IMPER.		tiens,	qu'il tienne ;
	tenons,	tenez,	qu'ils tiennent.
SUBJ. Pres.	que je tienne,	tu tiennes,	il tienne ;
	que nous tenions,	vous teniez,	ils tiennent.
Imp.	que je tinsse,	tu tinsses,	il tint ;
	que nous tinssions,	vous tinssiez,	ils tinssent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

S'abstenir, <i>to abstain.</i>	maintenir, <i>to maintain.</i>
appartenir, <i>to belong.</i>	obtenir, <i>to obtain. [retain.</i>
contenir, <i>to contain.</i>	retenir, <i>to get hold again ; to</i>
entretenir, <i>to keep up ; to converse.</i>	soutenir, <i>to sustain.</i>

Observe that in these verbs the *n* is doubled, whenever it is followed by *e* mute ; but in no other case.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

I hold it fast, it shall not escape from me.— *Liberalité holds*
*bien échapper * art.*
 a medium between prodigality and avarice. — This
le milieu m. entre art. — f.
 garden is well kept. — He abstained from drinking on that day.
*boire * ce jour-là.*
 These horses belong to our general. — England and the
art.
 principality of Wales contain fifty-two counties. — They
principauté f. Galles comté m. s'
 conversed about trifles. — I shall maintain it every where. —
de bagatelles. partout.
 Do not maintain so absurd an opinion. — Has he obtained
²si ³absurde ¹— f.
 permission?—*Detain* not the wages of a servant.—That
— f. retenir gages m. pl. domestique m.
 column supports all the building.
colonne f. soutenir bâtiment m.

VENIR, TO COME.

	<i>Part. Pres. venant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. venu.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je viens,	tu viens,	il vient ;
	nous venons,	vous venez,	ils viennent.
Imp.	Je venais,	tu venais,	il venait ;
	nous venions,	vous veniez,	ils venaient.
Prot.	Je vins,	tu vins,	il vint ;
	nous vinmes,	vous vintes,	ils vinrent.
Fut.	Je viendrai,	tu viendras,	il viendra ;
	nous viendrons,	vous viendrez,	ils viendront.
COND. Pres.	Je viendrais,	tu viendrais,	il viendrait ;
	nous viendrions,	vous viendriez,	ils viendraient.
IMPER.		viens,	qu'il vienne ;
	venons,	venez,	qu'ils viennent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{je} je vienne,	tu viennes,	il vienne ;
	^{vous} nous venions,	vous veniez,	ils viennent.
Imp.	^{je} je vinsse,	tu vinsses,	il vint ;
	^{vous} nous vinssions,	vous vinssiez,	ils vinssent.

Venir is conjugated like *tenir*; but with this difference,

that in its compound tenses it always takes the auxiliary *être*.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Convenir, <i>to agree; to suit.</i>	prévenir, <i>to anticipate; to pre-</i>
devenir, <i>to become.</i>	se ressouvenir, <i>to recollect. [vent.</i>
disconvenir, <i>to deny. [terfere.</i>	revenir, <i>to come back.</i>
intervenir, <i>to intervene; to in-</i>	se souvenir, <i>to remember.</i>
parvenir, <i>to attain.</i>	subvenir, <i>to relieve.</i>

Prévenir and *subvenir* are conjugated in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*. — *Convenir*, when it signifies *to agree*, takes *être*; but *avoir*, when it signifies *to suit*.

VÊTIR, TO CLOTHE.

	Part. Pres. vêtant.	Part. Past. vêtu.
IND. Pres.	Je vêts, nous vêtons,	tu vêts, vous vêtez, ils vêtent.
Imp.	Je vêttais, nous vêtions,	tu vêttais, vous vétiez, ils vêtaient.
Pret.	Je vêtis, nous vêtîmes,	tu vêtis, vous vêtîtes, ils vêtirent.
Fut.	Je vêtirai, nous vêtirons,	tu vêtiras, vous vêtirez, ils vêtiront.
COND. Pres.	Je vêtirais, nous vêtirions,	tu vêtirais, vous vêtiriez, ils vêtiraient.
IMPER.	vêtons, vêtez,	qu'il vête; qu'ils vêtent.
SUBJ. Pres.	que je vête, que nous vêtions,	tu vêtes, vous vétiez, ils vêtent.
Imp.	que je vêtisse, que nous vêtissions,	tu vétisses, vous vêtissiez, ils vêtissent.

(Acad.—Trévoux.—Gattel.—Lemare, &c.)

Vêtir is seldom used in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, or in the singular of the Imperative. It is most frequently reflected, and then it signifies *to dress oneself*. In this sense it is conjugated in its compound tenses, like all other pronominal verbs, with the auxiliary *être*: *Je me suis vêtu; nous nous sommes vêtus*.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Dévéti*r*, to divest, to strip. | Revêti*r*, to clothe, to invest.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

I *come* from London. — You *come* very seasonably. — He
fort à propos.

came on foot. — *Come* on Saturday morning, at ten o'clock.—He
ind-4 à pied. *

will come back before the end of this month.—We have *agreed*
fin f. *mois m.*

about the conditions.—That she *might become* more prudent.—
de *f.*

Do you *deny* the fact? — He *will not interfere* with that
de fait m. *dans*

affair. — We *shall attain* our end. — *Remember* your
affaire f. *à but m.* *de*

promises. — They have *relieved* his wants. — He only
promesse f. *On* *à besoin m.* *ne*

passed for a traveller, but lately he has *assumed* the
ind-2 *que voyageur depuis peu revêtir un*
character of an envoy.
caractère m. * *envoyé m.*

§ III. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, to set, is an active verb; but it is principally used as a reflected verb, and is conjugated as follows : —

S'ASSEOIR, TO SEAT ONESELF, TO SIT DOWN.

Part. Pres. s'asseyant.

Part. Past. assis.

IND.

Pres. Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ;
nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.

Imp. Je m'asseyais, tu t'asseyais, il s'asseyait ;
nous nous asseyions, vous vous asseyiez, ils s'asseyaient.

<i>Pret.</i> Je m'assis,	tu t'assis,	il s'assit ;
nous nous assîmes,	vous vous assîtes,	ils s'assirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je m'assiérai,	tu t'assiéras,	il s'assiéra ;
or je m'asseierai,	tu t'asseieras,	il s'asseiera ;
nous nous assiérons,	vous vous assiérez,	ils s'assiéront ;
or nous nous asseierons,	vous vous asseierez,	ils s'asseieront.

COND. Pres.

Je m'assiérais,	tu t'assiérais,	il s'assiérait ;
or je m'asseierais,	tu t'asseierais,	il s'asseierait ;
nous nous assiérions,	vous vous ussiériez,	ils s'assiéraient ;
or nous nous asseierions,	vous vous asseieriez,	ils s'asseieraient.

IMPER.

assieds-toi,	qu'il s'asseie ;
asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous,	qu'ils s'asseient.

<i>SUBJ. que</i> je m'asseie,	tu t'asseies,	il s'asseie ;
<i>Pres. que</i> nous nous asseyions,	vous vous asseyiez,	ils s'asseient.
<i>Imp. que</i> je m'assisse,	tu t'assisses,	il s'assît ;
<i>que</i> nous nous assissions,	vous vous assissiez,	ils s'assissent.

There is no verb which has experienced so many variations in its conjugation ; but the most part of modern Grammarians, and present usage, have decided that it should be conjugated in the manner we have given it.

Conjugate in the same manner, *rasseoir*, to set again, to sit down again, to calm.

AVOIR, to have. (Active and auxiliary verb.)

This is one of the most irregular verbs ; it is conjugated at length, p. 55.

CHOIR, to fall. This verb is not much used ; it is sometimes employed in the Infinitive, especially in poetry, where it is a very expressive term, when well brought in.

The Participle past, *chu*, *chue*, is also used, but rather in verse than in prose, and rather in the jocular and familiar than in the serious and dignified style.

(Acad.—*Féraud*.—*Demandre*.—*Wailly*, &c.)

DÉCHOIR, to decay. Participle past, *déchu*. It is seldom used in any other tense.

ÉCHOIR, to fall to ; to expire, to be due. Part. pres. *échéant*. Part. past, *échu*. In the present of the Indicative, it is seldom used except in the 3d person singular, *il échoit*, which is sometimes pronounced, and even written, *il échet*. Pret. *j'échus*. Fut. *j'écherrai*. Cond. *j'écherrais*. Imperf. Subj. *que j'échusse*. — (ACAD.)

Many Grammarians are of opinion that the auxiliary *être* should always be used with the Participle past of this verb. They say: *Ce billet est échu* (that bill is due), and not *a échu*. The following phrases, however, appear to us quite correct: — *Ce billet a échu le 30 du mois dernier. Il y a un mois qu'il est échu.* — (GIRAULT-DUVIVIER.)

FALLOIR, *to be necessary*, is a unipersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given, page 97.

EXERCISE LXXX.

Set the child in an arm-chair. — Why do you not
fauteuil m. Pourquoi
sit down? — He *sat down* under the shade of a tree. — *Shall*
à ombre f. arbre m.
we sit down here? — *Let us sit down*, my friends. — *Sit down*
 on this form. — I (had risen) to go out, but he made me
sur banc m. m'étais levé pour ²*fit* ¹
sit down again. — He is much *fallen* in the esteem of the
fort déchoir estime f.
 public. — This bill of exchange is due to-day.
 — *m. lettre f. change aujourd'hui.*

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

	Part. Pres. mouvant.		Part. Past. mu.
IND. Pres.	Je meus,	tu meus,	il meut ;
	nous mouvons,	vous mouvez,	ils meuvent.
Imp.	Je mouvais,	tu mouvais,	il mouvait ;
	nous mouvions,	vous mouviez,	ils mouvaient.
Pret.	Je mus,	tu mus,	il mut ;
	nous mûmes,	vous mûtes,	ils murent.
Fut.	Je mouvrai,	tu mouvras,	il mouvra ;
	nous mouvrons,	vous mouvrez,	ils mouvront.
COND. Pres.	Je mouvrais,	tu mouvrais,	il mouvrait ;
	nous mouvriions,	vous mouvriez,	ils mouvraient.
IMPER.		meus,	qu'il meuve ;
	mouvons,	mouvez,	qu'ils meuvent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{ne} je meuve,	tu meuves,	il meuve ;
	^{ne} nous mouvions,	vous mouviez,	ils meuvent.
Imp.	^{ne} je musse,	tu musses,	il mût ;
	^{ne} nous mussions,	vous mussiez,	ils mussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *émouvoir*, to stir up, to move; and, *promouvoir*, to promote. This last verb is seldom used but in the Infinitive, and in the compound tenses.

PLEUVOIR, to rain; see page 95.

POURVOIR, TO PROVIDE.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> pourvoyant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> pourvu.
IND. Pres.	Je pourvois, nous pourvoyons,	tu pourvois, il pourvoit; vous pourvoyez, ils pourvoient.
Imp.	Je pourvoyais, nous pourvoyions,	tu pourvoyais, il pourvoyait; vous pourvoyiez, ils pourvoaient.
Pret.	Je pourvus, nous pourvûmes,	tu pourvus, il pourvut; vous pourvûtes, ils pourvurent.
Fut.	Je pourvoirai, nous pourvoirons,	tu pourvoiras, il pourvoira; vous pourvoirez, ils pourvoiront.
COND. Pres.	Je pourvoirais, nous pourvoirions,	tu pourvoirais, il pourvoirait; vous pourvoiriez, ils pourvoiraient.
IMPER.		pourvoyons, pourvois, qu'il pourvoie; pourvoyez, qu'ils pourvoient.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je pourvoie, nous pourvoyions,	tu pourvoies, il pourvoie; vous pourvoyiez, ils pourvoient.
Imp.	Je pourvusse, nous pourvussions,	tu pourvusses, il pourvût; vous pourvussiez, ils pourvussent.

(Acad. and the modern Grammarians.)

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE. (To can. — Johnson & Walker.)

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> pouvant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> pu.
IND. Pres.	Je puis, or je peux, nous pouvons,	tu peux, il peut; vous pouvez, ils peuvent.
Imp.	Je pouvais, nous pouvions,	tu pouvais, il pouvait; vous pouviez, ils pouvaient.
Pret.	Je pus, nous pûmes,	tu pus, il put; vous pûtes, ils purent.
Fut.	Je pourrai, nous pourrons,	tu pourras, il pourra; vous pourrez, ils pourront.
COND. Pres.	Je pourrais, nous pourrions,	tu pourrais, il pourrait; vous pourriez, ils pourraient.

(No Imperative.)

SUBJ. Pres.	Que je puisse,	tu puisses,	il puisse ;
	Que nous puissions,	vous puissiez,	ils puissent.
Imp.	Que je pusse,	tu pusses,	il pût ;
	Que nous pussions,	vous pussiez,	ils pussent.

(Acad. and the modern Grammarians.)

REMARKS. — In the Future and Conditional of this verb, one *r* only is pronounced, although they are written with two.

In the Present of the Indicative, we say *je puis* or *je peux* ; however, *je puis* is much more used, and ought to be preferred, since interrogatively we always say *puis-je* ?

Quels vœux *puis-je* former ? — (*La Harpe*.)

Que *puis-je* ajouter à cet éloge ? — (*C. Delavigne*.)

Moreover, *je puis*, and not *je peux*, is the expression employed in the writings of the best French authors.

. . . Enfin *je puis* parler en liberté ;

Je puis dans tout son jour mettre la vérité. — (*Racine*.)

Je ne puis bien parler, et ne saurais me taire. — (*Boileau*.)

. *Je ne puis* songer
Que cette horloge existe, et n'ait point d'horloger. — (*Voltaire*.)

Je puis être un serviteur inutile. — (*Massillon*.)

We say : *je ne puis*, and *je ne puis pas*. In the first phrase, the negative is less strong : *Je ne puis* implies difficulties. *Je ne puis pas* expresses impossibility.

PRÉVALOIR, *to prevail* ; see *Valoir*.

PROMOUVOIR, *to promote* ; see *Mouvoir*.

RAVOIR, *to have again, to get again*, is only used in the Present of the Infinitive.

Figuratively, and familiarly, we say *se ravoir*, in the sense of *to recover, to gather new strength* :

Allons, monsieur, tâches un peu de vous *ravoir*. — (*J. J. Rousseau*.)

EXERCISE LXXXI.

The spring which *moves* the whole machine is very ingenious. — He *moved* the heart of that unfeeling man. — He has been *promoted* to the dignity of chancellor. — He *will provide*

ressort m. mouvoir — f. insensible

émouvoir cœur m.

chancelier.

132 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

for all your wants. — I *cannot* answer you. — *Can* I be useful
à *besoin* m. *utile*
to you? — (Save himself) who *can*. — *Can* you lend me an
Sauve *prêter*
umbrella? — I *could* not foresee that event. — I never
ind-2 *prévoir* *événement* m.
shall be able to persuade him. — *We would be able* to go out. —
* *persuader* * p. 123.

Try to get it again.

Tâcher de †

, † See Note p. 215.

SAVOIR, TO KNOW.

	Part. Pres. sachant.	Part. Past. su.
IND. Pres.	Je sais, nous savons,	tu sais, vous savez, ils savent.
Imp.	Je savais, nous savions,	tu savais, vous saviez, ils savaient.
Pret.	Je sus, nous sûmes,	tu sus, vous sûtes, ils surent.
Fut.	Je saurai, nous saurons,	tu sauras, vous saurez, ils sauront.
COND. Pres.	Je saurais, nous saurions,	tu saurais, vous sauriez, ils sauraient.
IMPER.	sachons,	sache, sachez, qu'il sache ; qu'ils sachent.
SUBJ. Pres.	<i>que</i> je sache, <i>que</i> nous sachions,	tu saches, vous sachiez, ils sachent.
Imp.	<i>que</i> Je susse, <i>que</i> nous sussions,	tu susses, vous sussiez, ils sussent.

We find *savoir* written *sçavoir* in some old and esteemed works ; but now, the *French Academy*, and all the modern Grammarians, suppress the letter *ç* as useless, because it does not affect the pronounciation of the word, nor does it even serve to point out its Latin derivation, since all the best French etymologists derive *savoir* from *sapere*, and not from *scire*.

We sometimes employ the Subjunctive of *savoir* instead of the Indicative, but never without a negative ; as, *JE NE SACHE rien de plus digne d'éloge*, I know nothing more praiseworthy.

Je ne saurais is often used for *je ne puis* (I cannot) ; yet we do not say, *je ne saurais* for *je ne pourrais*, nor *je saurais* for *je puis*.

The student must not confound *savoir* with *connaître*, which also signifies to *know*. We do not say *savoir quelqu'un*, but *connaître quelqu'un*, to know, or be acquainted with some one.

Savoir is employed in speaking of every thing that can be learned: *Savoir les langues, les mathématiques, les nouvelles du jour, les secrets d'un ami*, to know languages, mathematics, the news of the day, the secrets of a friend. —(*Demandre.*)

Savoir is to know by the mind; while *connaître* is to know by the senses. — (*The Linguist.*)

SEoir, *to become, to besit*, is never used in the present of the Infinitive. It has only the participle present *seyant*, and the third persons of some of the simple tenses: *ils sied, ils sièent; ils seyait, ils seyaient; ils siéra, ils sièront; il siérait, ils siéraient; qu'il siée, qu'ils sièent*.

When *seoir* signifies *to sit*, it has only the two Participles, *séant* and *sis*, which last is used in law as an adjective, and generally translated into English by *situate* or *situated*.

SURSEOIR, *to suspend, to put off*; see *Voir*.

EXERCISE LXXII.

I *know* that he is not *de* your friend, but I *know* likewise that *aussi*
 he is a man of probity. — The wise man *knows* how to regulate
 * *bien.* *sage* * * * *régler*
 his taste, his labours, and his pleasures. — Do you *know* *art.*
goût pl. *travail*
 French? — They do not *know* their lessons. — Milton *knew*
leçon —
 Homer almost by heart. — I *shall know* well how to
Homère presque cœur. * *
 (defend myself.) — (In order) *that you may know* it. — The
me défendre. *Afin*
 head-dress which that lady wore *became* her very well. —
coiffure f. *que* *porter* ind-2 ind-2 *lui*
 Colours that are too gaudy *will not become* you.
art. couleur f. * * * *voyant*

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

	<i>Part. Pres. valant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. valu.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je vaux, nous valons,	tu vaux, vous valez,	il vaut ; ils valent.
Imp.	Je valais, nous valions,	tu valais, vous valiez,	il valait ; ils valaient.
Pret.	Je valus, nous valûmes,	tu valus, vous valûtes,	il valut ; ils valurent
Fut.	Je vaudrai, nous vaudrons,	tu vaudras, vous vaudrez,	il vaudra ; ils vaudront.
COND. Pres.	Je vaudrais, nous vaudrions,	tu vaudrais, vous vaudriez,	il vaudrait ; ils vaudraient.
IMPER.	valons,	vaut, valez,	qu'il vaille ; qu'ils valent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je vaille, Que nous valions,	tu vailles, vous valiez,	il vaille ; ils valent.
Imp.	Que je valusse, Que nous valussions,	tu valusses, vous valussiez,	il valût ; ils valussent.

In the compound tenses, *valoir* takes the auxiliary *avoir*.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

équivaloir, to be equivalent. | *revaloir, to return like for like.*

Prévaloir, to prevail, follows the same conjugation, except that in the Subj. Pres. it makes, *que je prévaille, que tu prévaies, qu'il prévaille ; que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent ;* and not, *que je prévaillais, que tu prévaillais, etc.*

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

This cloth *is worth* twenty shillings a yard. — Actions
drap m. schelling l' aune. art. effet m.
are better than words. — His horse was not worth ten
valoir art. parole f.
guineas. — That victory procured him the staff of a marshal
*guinée victoire f. valoir lui bâton m. * maréchal*
of France. — One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen ounces
once f. or
of silver. — That answer will be equivalent to a refusal. —
argent. réponse f. refus m.

Favour often *prevails* over merit. — His advice
 art. 2 1 *sur* art. *mérite* m. *avis* m.
prevailed. — That consideration has *prevailed* over all
considération f. art.
 others.

VOIR, TO SEE.

	<i>Part. Pres. voyant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. vu.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je vois,	tu vois,	il voit ;
	nous voyons,	vous voyez,	ils voient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je voyais,	tu voyais,	il voyait ;
	nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voyaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
	nous vîmes,	vous vîtes,	ils virent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je verrai,	tu verras,	il verra ;
	nous verrons,	vous verrez,	ils verront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je verrais,	tu verrais,	il verrait ;
	nous verrions,	vous verriez,	ils verraient.
IMPER.	voyons,	vois,	qu'il voie ;
		voyez,	qu'ils voient.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	^{que} je voie,	tu voies,	il voie ;
	^{que} nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voient.
<i>Imp.</i>	^{que} je visse,	tu visses,	il vît ;
	^{que} nous vissions,	vous vissiez,	ils vissent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

entrevoir, to have a glimpse of ; *revoir*, to see again ; and, *prévoir*, to foresee. Observe, however, that this last verb makes in the Future, *je prévoirai*, *tu prévoiras*, &c., and in the Conditional, *je prévoirais*, &c.

Many poets, ancient and modern, for the sake of rhyme, write without *a*, *je voi*, *j'aperçoi*, *je prévoi*, etc.

Surseoir, to put off (a law term), though a compound of *soir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except in the Fut. *je surseoirai*, and in the Cond. *je surseoirais*.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

I see it now. — I saw it with my own eyes. — That
maintenant. ind-4 *de propre*
 reform (will take place), but we shall not see it. — You shall
réforme f. *aura lieu*

see what I can do. — *Let us see* your purchases. — *See the*
ce que *sais faire.* *emplette f.*
 admirable order of the universe: does it not announce a
² — ¹ *ordre m.* *univers m.* *annoncer*
 supreme architect? — When *shall we see* your sisters again?
Quand
 — To finish their affairs, it would be necessary *that they*
Pour *affaire f.* *falloir*
should see each other. — Wise men *foresee* events. —
s'entrevoir subj-2 art. ² ¹ *foresee* art.
 I shall not *put off* the pursuit of that affair.
poursuite f. pl.

VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING; TO WISH.

Part. Pres. voulant.*Part. Past.* voulu.

IND. Pres.	Je veux,	tu veux,	il veut ;
	nous voulons,	vous voulez,	ils veulent.
Imp.	Je voulais,	tu voulais,	il voulait ;
	nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils voulaient.
Pret.	Je voulus,	tu voulus,	il voulut ;
	nous voulûmes,	vous voulûtes,	ils voulurent.
Fut.	Je voudrai,	tu voudras,	il voudra ;
	nous voudrons,	vous voudrez,	ils voudront.
COND. Pres.	Je voudrais,	tu voudrais,	il voudrait ;
	nous voudrions,	vous voudriez,	ils voudraient.
IMPER.	Veuillez, { The 2d pers. pl. is the only one used, and signifies, be so good as, be so kind as to.		
SUBJ. Pres.	^{je} je veuille,	tu veuilles,	il veuille ;
	^{vous} nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils veuillent.
Imp.	^{je} je voulusse,	tu voulusses,	il voulût ;
	^{vous} nous voulussions,	vous voulussiez,	ils voulussent.

Observe that the Subj. Pres. is *que je veuille* ; but the plural is *que nous voulions, que vous vouliez* ; and not *que nous veuillions, que vous veuilliez*, as some writers have it.

(ACAD., Féraud, Gattel, Wailly, Lemare, &c.)

EXERCISE LXXXV.

I can and *will* tell the *truth*. — He *wishes* to set out
 pron. *dire* *vérité f.*

to-morrow. — If you *are willing*, he *will be willing* also. —
demain. *le* *le* *aussi.*
 We *wish* to be free. — He *wished* to accompany me. — They
 * *libre* * *accompagner* *On*
 will give you whatever you *wish*. — I *should wish* (him to come.)
tout ce que *ind-7* *qu'il vint.*
 — He *would wish* to speak to you in private. —
 * * *en particulier.*
Have the goodness to read this letter.
Vouloir * *lire*

§ IV. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOUDRE, TO ABSOLVE.

	<i>Part. Pres.</i> absolvant.	<i>Part. Past.</i> absous, m. absoute, f.
IND. Pres.	J'absous,	tu absous, il absout ;
	nous absolvons,	vous absolvez, ils absolvent.
Imp.	J'absolvais,	tu absolvais, il absolvait ;
	nous absolvions,	vous absolviez, ils absolveraient.
	<i>(No Preterite Definite.)</i>	
Fut.	J'absoudrai,	tu absoudras, il absoudra ;
	nous absoudrons,	vous absoudrez, ils absoudront.
COND. Pres.	J'absoudrais,	tu absoudrais, il absoudrait ;
	nous absoudrions,	vous absoudriez, ils absoudraient.
IMPER.		absous, qu'il absolve ;
	absolvons,	absolvez, qu'ils absolvent.
SUBJ. Pres.	$\frac{u}{e}$ j'absolve,	tu absolves, il absolve ;
	$\frac{e}{e}$ nous absolvions,	vous absolviez, ils absolvent.
	<i>(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)</i>	

Conjugate in the same manner, *dissoudre*, to dissolve.

ABSTRAIRE, to abstract, is conjugated like *traire* ; but is very little used ; we more generally say *faire abstraction de*.

ACCROIRE, is used in the Present of the Infinitive only, with any of the tenses of the verb *faire*, when it signifies, *faire croire ce qui n'est pas*, to make one believe what is not true, to impose upon one.

ACCROÎTRE, *to increase*, is conjugated like *croître*.

ADMETTRE, *to admit*, like *mettre*.

ATEINDRE, *to reach*; see the conjugation of the verb *peindre*.

ATTRAIRE, *to attract, to allure*, is used only in the Infinitive: *Le sel est bon pour attirer les pigeons*, salt is good to attract pigeons. *Attirer* often supplies its place, and is more harmonious.

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

	Part. Pres. battant.	Part. Past. battu.
IND. Pres.	Je bats, nous battons,	tu bats, il bat; vous battez, ils battent.
Imp.	Je battais, nous battions,	tu battais, il battait; vous battiez, ils battaient.
Pret.	Je battis, nous battîmes,	tu battis, il battit; vous battîtes, ils battirent.
Fut.	Je battrai, nous battons,	tu battras, il battra; vous battrez, ils battront.
COND. Pres.	Je battrais, nous battrions,	tu battrais, il battrait; vous battriez, ils battraient.
IMPER.	battons, battez,	bats, qu'il batte; battez, qu'ils battent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{je} je batte, ^{vous} nous battions,	tu battes, il batte; vous battiez, ils battent.
Imp.	^{je} je battisse, ^{vous} nous battissions,	tu battisses, il battit; vous battissiez, ils battissent.

Conjugate in the same manner: —

Abattre, <i>to pull down.</i>	rabattre, <i>to abate.</i>
combattre, <i>to fight.</i>	rebattre, <i>to beat again.</i>
débattre, <i>to debate.</i>	se débattre, <i>to struggle.</i>

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

I *pardon* you for the sake of your repentance.—She *was* *absoudre* *en* * *faveur* *repentir.* ind-3
acquitted. — These acids *dissolve* metals. — After the death
absoudre *acide* art.
of Alexander, his empire *was dissolved.* — Why do you *beat*
— m.
my dog? — Our left wing *beat* the right wing of the
chien m. ^{gauche} ^{aile} f. ind-3 ^{droit} ^a

enemy. — Believe me, general, we *shall beat* them. — The pl.

cannon (*beat down*) the walls of the fortress. — They
canon m. abattre ind-3 muraille f. forteresse f. On
fought bravely on both sides. — They have discussed
ind-4 vaillamment de part et d'autre. Ils débattre
 that question — *Beat* these mattresses *again*.
 — f. *matelas m.*

BOIRE, TO DRINK.

	<i>Part. Pres. buvant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. bu.</i>	
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je bois, nous buvons,	tu bois, vous buvez,	il boit ; ils boivent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je buvais, nous buvions,	tu buvais, vous buviez,	il buvait ; ils buvaient
	<i>Pret.</i> Je bus, nous bûmes,	tu bus, vous bûtes,	il but ; ils burent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je boirai, nous boirons,	tu boiras, vous boirez,	il boira ; ils boiront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je boirais, nous boirions,	tu boirais, vous boiriez,	il boirait ; ils boiraient.
IMPER.	buvons,	bois, buvez,	qu'il boive ; qu'ils boivent.
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i> <i>Que</i> je boive, <i>Que</i> nous buvions,	tu boives, vous buviez,	il boive ; ils boivent.
	<i>Imp.</i> <i>Que</i> je busse, <i>Que</i> nous bussions,	tu bussés, vous bussiez,	il bût ; ils bussent.

CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.

	<i>Part. Pres. concluant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. conclu, m. conclue, f.</i>	
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je conclus, nous concluons,	tu conclus, vous concluez,	il conclut ; ils concluent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je concluais, nous concluions,	tu concluais, vous concluiez,	il concluait ; ils concluaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je conclus, nous conclûmes,	tu conclus, vous conclûtes,	il conclut ; ils conclurent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je conclurai, nous conclurons,	tu concluras, vous conclurez,	il conclura ; ils concluront.

140 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

COND. Pres.	Je conclurais,	tu conclurais,	il conclurait ;
	nous conclurons,	vous concluriez,	ils concluraient.
IMPER.		conclus,	qu'il conclue ;
	concluons,	concluez,	qu'ils concluent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Je conclue,	tu conclues	il conclue ;
	Nous concluions,	vous concluiez,	ils concluent.
Imp.	Je conclusse,	tu conclusses,	il conclût ;
	Nous conclusions,	vous conclussiez,	ils conclussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *exclure*, to exclude.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

I have the honour of *drinking* your health. — His best
de inf-1 *à* *santé* f.
 wine is *drunk*. — This paper *blots*. — They *drank* two bottles
vin m. *boire* *bouteille* f.
 of champagne. — I *shall drink* a glass of white wine. — *Let us*
champagne. *verre* m. ² ¹
drink to the health of our friends. — Come, *drink*. — Since he
Allons *Puisqu'*
 is not arrived, I *conclude* that he will not come. — What do
en
 you *conclude* from all this ? — They have *concluded* the bargain. —
marché m.
 He was *excluded* from the assembly.
assemblée f.

CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT.

Part. Pres. conduisant. *Part. Past.* conduit, m. conduite, f.

IND. Pres.	Je conduis,	tu conduis,	il conduit ;
	nous conduisons,	vous conduisez,	ils conduisent.
Imp.	Je conduisais,	tu conduisais,	il conduisait ;
	nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisaient.
Pret.	Je conduisis,	tu conduisis,	il conduisit ;
	nous conduisîmes,	vous conduisîtes,	ils conduisirent.
Fut.	Je conduirai,	tu conduiras,	il conduira ;
	nous conduirons,	vous conduirez,	ils conduiront.
COND. Pres.	Je conduirais,	tu conduirais,	il conduirait ;
	nous conduirions,	vous conduiriez,	ils conduiraient.
IMPER.		conduis,	qu'il conduise ;
	conduisons,	conduisez,	qu'ils conduisent.

Subj. <i>Que</i>	je conduise,	tu conduises,	il conduise ;
Pres. <i>Que</i>	nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisent.
Imp. <i>Que</i>	je conduisisse,	tu conduisisses,	il conduist ;
	nous conduisissions,	vous conduisissiez,	ils conduissent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Construire, <i>to construct.</i>	introduire, <i>to introduce.</i>
cuire, <i>to cook, to bake.</i>	produire, <i>to produce.</i>
déduire, <i>to deduct.</i>	reconduire, <i>to reconduct.</i>
détruire, <i>to destroy.</i>	réduire, <i>to reduce.</i>
instruire, <i>to instruct.</i>	traduire, <i>to translate.</i>

Nuire, to hurt, is conjugated like *conduire* ; but its past participle is *nui*, which has no feminine.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

This road *leads* to the town. — Moses *conducted* the
chemin m. conduire Moïse
 people of Israel. — They *built* several ships. — This
peuple m. Israël. construire vaisseau m.
 baker *bakes* twice a day. — *Deduct* what you have
boulangier deux fois par ce que
 received. — Time *destroys* (every thing). — The overflowing
art. tout. débordement m.
 of the river *destroyed* his crop. — Those who *instruct*
rivière f. récolte f. art.
 youth, (must arm themselves) with patience. — I *shall inform*
jeunesse f. doivent s'armer de — instruire
 his family of his conduct. — He *introduced* me into the king's
famille f. conduite f. dans
 closet. — This country has *produced* many great men. —
'cabinet m. pays m. beaucoup de
 What book *are you translating*? — This is well *translated*. —
livre m.
 That affair *has hurt* his reputation.
- affaire f. à

CONFIRE, TO PICKLE, TO PRESERVE.

<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>confisant.</i>	<i>Part. Past.</i>	<i>confit, m. confite, f.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je confis,	tu confis,	il confit ;
	nous confisons,	vous confisez,	ils confisent.

IND. <i>Imp.</i>	Je confisais, nous confisions,	tu confisais, vous confisiez,	il confisait : ils confisaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je confis, nous confimes,	tu confis, vous confites,	il confit ; ils confirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je confirai, nous confirons,	tu confiras, vous confirez,	il confira ; ils confiront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je confirais, nous confirions,	tu confirais, vous confiriez,	il confirait ; ils confiraient.
IMPER.		confis, confisez,	qu'il confise ; qu'ils confissent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	que je confise, que nous confisions,	tu confises, vous confissiez,	il confise ; ils confissent.
	<i>Imp.</i> que je confisse, que nous confissions,	tu confisses, vous confissiez,	il confît ; ils confissent.

Some authors give no Imperfect Subjunctive to this verb, and prefer having recourse to a circumlocution, and say, *Je voudrais que vous RISSIEZ CONFIRE des prunes*, rather than *je voudrais que vous confissiez des prunes*, I wish you would preserve some plums.

Suffire, to suffice, to be sufficient, is conjugated like *confire* ; but its Participle past is *suffi*, which has no feminine.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

I shall preserve some fruits this year. — Will you preserve
— année f.
these cherries with sugar or with brandy? — Preserve
cerise f. à art. art. eau-de-vie f.
some apricots and peaches. — Have you pickled any
abricot m. pr. art. pêche f.
cucumbers? — Little suffices to the wise. — A hundred
concombre m. Peu de bien *
pounds a year suffice him for his maintenance. —
livres sterling par an m. subsistance f.
If he lose that lawsuit, all his property will not suffice. —
perd procès m. bien m. y
That would not suffice me. — That sum is not sufficient to
somme f. pour
pay your debts. — (Here are) three thousand francs, will that
dette f. Voici —
be enough? — That is enough.
suffire

CONNAÎTRE, TO KNOW.

Part. Pres. connaissant.*Part. Past.* connu.

IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je connais,	tu connais,	il connaît ;
	nous connaissons,	vous connaissez,	ils connaissent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je connaissais,	tu connaissais,	il connaissait ;
	nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je connus,	tu connus,	il connut ;
	nous connûmes,	vous connûtes,	ils connurent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je connaîtrai,	tu connaîtras,	il connaîtra ;
	nous connaîtrons,	vous connaîtrez,	ils connaîtront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je connaîtrais,	tu connaîtrais,	il connaîtrait ;
	nous connaîtrions,	vous connaîtriez,	ils connaîtraient.
IMPER.		connais,	qu'il connaisse ;
	connaissez,		qu'ils connaissent.
SUBJ. Pres.	$\frac{2}{2}$ je connaisse,	tu connaisses,	il connaisse ;
	$\frac{2}{2}$ nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissent.
	<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{2}{2}$ je connusse,	tu connusses,	il connût ;
	$\frac{2}{2}$ nous connussions,	vous connussiez,	ils connussent.

[See, p. 133, our Remarks on *Savoir* and *Connaître*.]

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Disparaître, to disappear.	reconnaître, to know again.
paraître, to appear.	reparaître, to appear again.

EXERCISE XC.

I know him perfectly. — He knows his (weak side.) —
parfaitement. *faible m.*

We know nobody in this neighbourhood. — Do you know our
voisinage m.

house? — He knew me by my voice. — I would know him
*à * art. voir f.*

among a thousand. — The compass was not known by the
*entre * boussole f. de*

ancients. — At the approach of our troops, the enemy disappeared.
approche f. pl.

— It seems you are wrong. — You do not appear
paraître que avoir tort.

convinced. — Do you not recognise me? — Do they acknowledge
convaincu reconnaître reconnaître

their errors? — He knew his horse again.

CONTREDIRE, *to contradict*; see the conjugation of *dire*.

COUDRE, TO SEW.

	<i>Part. Pres. cousant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. cousu.</i>	
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je couds, nous cousons,	tu couds, vous cousez,	il coud ; ils cousent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je cousais, nous cousions,	tu cousais, vous cousiez,	il cousait ; ils cousaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je cousis, nous cousîmes,	tu cousis, vous cousîtes,	il cousit ; ils cousirent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je coudrai, nous coudrons,	tu coudras, vous coudrez,	il coudra ; ils coudront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je coudrais, nous coudrions,	tu coudrais, vous coudriez,	il coudrait ; ils coudraient.
IMPER.	cousons,	couds, cousez,	qu'il couse ; qu'ils cousent.
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je couse, $\frac{o}{o}$ nous cousions,	tu couses, vous cousiez,	il couse ; ils cousent.
	<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je cousisse, $\frac{o}{o}$ nous cousissions,	tu cousisses, vous cousissiez,	il cousît ; ils cousissent.

Découdre, *to unsew*, and *recoudre*, *to sew again*, are conjugated in the same manner.

CRAINdre, TO FEAR.

	<i>Part. Pres. craignant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. craint, m. crainte, f.</i>	
IND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je crains, nous craignons,	tu crains, vous craignez,	il craint ; ils craignent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je craignais, nous craignions,	tu craignais, vous craigniez,	il craignait ; ils craignaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je craignis, nous craignîmes,	tu craignis, vous craignîtes,	il craignit ; ils craignirent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je craindrai, nous craindrons,	tu craindras, vous craindrez,	il craindra ; ils craindront.
COND.	<i>Pres.</i> Je craindrais, nous craindrions,	tu craindrais, vous craindriez,	il craindrait ; ils craindraient.
IMPER.	craignons,	crains, craignez,	qu'il craigne ; qu'ils craignent.

Imp. Que je craignisse, tu craignisses, il craignît ;
 nous craignissions, vous craignissiez, ils craignissent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *aindre* and *oindre*; as, *plaindre*, to pity, and *joindre*, to join. — When *plaindre* is used reflectedly, it signifies to complain: *Je vous plains, mais je ne me plains pas de vous*, I pity you, but I do not complain of you.

EXERCISE XCI.

That girl *sews* well. — My sisters *were sewing* all yesterday.—
ind-3 hier.

Sew a button on this waistcoat. — That is badly *sewed*. —
bouton m. à gilet m. mal

His coat was torn, but his tailor sewed it again very neatly. —
habit m. déchiré tailleur proprement.

He is afraid of being discovered. — He was a man who feared
craindre d' inf-1 découvert. C' ind-2

nothing. — I *pity* his family. — He *complains* without cause. —
famille f. se plaindre sujet.

They *were* always *complaining*.—They *united* their efforts. —
2 *toujours* *1* *ind-2* *joindre* — m.

Let us unite prudence with courage.
art. — f. à art. — m.

***CROIRE*, TO BELIEVE.**

Part. Pres. croyant.

Part. Past. cru, m. crue, f.

IND. *Pres.* Je crois,
nous croyons,

tu crois, il croit ;
vous croyez, ils croient.

**Imp. Je croyais,
nous croyions,**

tu croyais, il croyait ;
vous croyiez, ils croyaient.

Pret. Je crus,
nous crûmes.

tu crus, il crut ;
vous crûtes. ils crurent.

Fut. Je croirai,
nous croirons.

tu croiras, il croira ;
vous croirez. ils croiront.

COND. *Pres.* Je croirais,
nous croirions.

tu croirais, il croirait ;
vous croiriez, ils croiraient.

IMPER. croyons.

crois,
croyez,

qu'il croie ;
qu'ils croient.

SUBJ. Pres.	^{que} je croie,	tu croies,	il croie ;
	^{que} nous croyions,	vous croyiez,	ils croient.
Imp.	^{que} je crusse,	tu crusses,	il crût ;
	^{que} nous crussions,	vous crussiez,	ils crussent.

REMARK. — Some people put the preposition *de* after the verb *croire*, when followed by an infinitive ; but this is contrary to the best writers and good usage ; we must say : *j'ai cru bien faire*, and not *j'ai cru DE bien faire*, I thought I was doing well. — (*Féraud, Girault-Duvivier, &c.*)

CROÎTRE, TO GROW.

	Part. Pres. croissant.	Part. Past. crû, m. crûe, f.	
IND. Pres.	Je crois,	tu crois,	il croît ;
	nous croissons,	vous croissez,	ils croissent.
Imp.	Je croissais,	tu croissais,	il croissait ;
	nous croissions,	vous croissiez,	ils croissaient.
Pret.	Je crûs,	tu crûs,	il crût ;
	nous crûmes,	vous crûtes,	ils crurent.
Fut.	Je croîtrai,	tu croitras,	il croitra ;
	nous croîtrons,	vous croîtrez,	ils croîtront.
COND. Pres.	Je croitrais,	tu croitrais,	il crotrait ;
	nous croîtrions,	vous croîtriez,	ils croîtraient.
IMPER.		crois,	qu'il croisse ;
	croissons,	croissez,	qu'ils croissent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^{que} je croisse,	tu croisses,	il croisse ;
	^{que} nous croissions,	vous croissiez,	ils croissent.
Imp.	^{que} je crûsse,	tu crûsses,	il crût ;
	^{que} nous crûssions,	vous crûssiez,	ils crûssent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *accroître*, to increase, and *décroître*, to decrease.

Accru, and *décru*, past Participles of *accroître* and *décroître*, are written without any accent. — (*Acad.*)

EXERCISE XCII.

I believe you. — She ^{ne} believes only what she sees. — Do ^{que ce qu'}
 you think that I wish to deceive you ? — He thought
croire *vouloir* subj-1 * *tromper* ind-2
 to gain his law-suit. — They thought they heard some cries —
 * *gagner* ind-3 * inf-1 *cri m.*

I *should think* (I would be wanting) in my duty. — *Believe*
manquer à devoir m.
 nothing of all that. — He *thought* he was doing well. — The
ind-4
 vine does not *grow* in cold countries. — These plants
vigne f. art. 2 'pays m. plante f.
 grow on the margin of streams. — His fortune *increases*
bord m. art. ruisseau m. — f. s'
 every day. — The river has *fallen* two inches. —
tous les jours. rivière f. décroître de pouce m.
 After Midsummer, the days begin to *shorten*.
la Saint-Jean décroître

DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.

	<i>Part. Pres. disant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. dit, m. dite, f.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je dis, nous disons,	tu dis, vous dites, il dit ; ils disent.
Imp.	Je disais, nous disions,	tu disais, vous disiez, il disait ; ils disaient.
Pret.	Je dis, nous dîmes,	tu dis, vous dîtes, il dit ; ils dirent.
Fut.	Je dirai, nous dirons,	tu diras, vous direz, il dira ; ils diront.
COND. Pres.	Je dirais, nous dirions,	tu dirais, vous diriez, il dirait ; ils diraient.
IMPER.	disons, dites,	dis, dites, qu'il dise ; qu'ils disent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je dise, Que nous disions,	tu dises, vous disiez, il dise ; ils disent.
Imp.	Que je disse, Que nous dissions,	tu dissés, vous dissiez, il dît ; ils dissent.

Redire, to say again, is conjugated exactly like *dire* ; but

contredire, <i>to contradict</i> ,	} make in the 2d pers. plur. of the pres. of the Ind. and of the Imper.	contredisez.
dédire, <i>to disown</i> ,		dédisez.
interdire, <i>to prohibit</i> ,		interdisez.
médire, <i>to slander</i> ,		médisez.
prédire, <i>to foretell</i> ,		prédisez.

Maudire, to curse, is conjugated like *dire*, except that it takes double *s* in the Part. pres. *maudissant* ; in the IND. pres. *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent* ;

148 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

in the Imperf. *je maudissais*, etc.; in the IMPER. *qu'il maudisse, maudissons*, etc., and in the SUBJ. *que je maudisse, que tu maudisses*, etc.

EXERCISE XCIII.

I tell you. — He *tells* all ^{ce qu'} he knows. — What do you ^{savoir}
say? — Those who *say*: I shall not ^{Cruz} work, are the most ^{travailler}
 miserable. — *Tell* us which you would prefer. — You always ^{préférer}
contradict me. — That physician ² *prohibits* ¹ wine to all his ^{art.}
patients. — He *slanders* (every body.) — The makers of ^{malade}
almanacs ^{foretell} rain and fine weather. — Do not ^{de tout le monde.} ^{faiseur}
almanach m. art. *pluie* f. art. *temps* m.
say: (That man) is of one people, and I am of another
Celui-là ^{peuple} m. ^{moi}
 people: for all people have had on earth the same
car art. art.
 father, who was Adam, and have in heaven the same
 ind-2 — art. *ciel* m.
 father, who is God.

DISSOUDRE, *to dissolve*, is conjugated like *absoudre*, which has neither Preterite definite, nor Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

ÉCLORE, *to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower*, is used only in the present of the Infinitive; in the Part. past, *éclos*, f. *écloسة*, and in the third persons of the following tenses: IND. pres. *il éclôt, ils éclosent*. Fut. *il éclôra, ils éclôront*. COND. *il éclôrait, ils éclôraient*. SUBJ. pres. *qu'il éclosse, qu'ils éclosent*. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much in use.

The primitive of *éclore*, is *clore*, to close, to shut. Another compound is *enclore*, to enclose.

ÉCRIRE, TO WRITE.

	Part. Pres. écrivant.	Part. Past. écrit.
IND. Pres.	J'écris,	tu écris,
	nous écrivons,	vous écrivez,
		il écrit;
		ils écrivent,

IND. <i>Imp.</i> J'écrivais,	tu écrivais,	il écrivait ;
nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivaient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'écrivis,	tu écrivis,	il écrivit ;
nous écrivîmes,	vous écrivîtes,	ils écrivirent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'écrirai,	tu écriras,	il écrira ;
nous écrirons,	vous écrirez,	ils écriront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i> J'écrirais,	tu écrirais,	il écrirait ;
nous écririons,	vous écrieriez,	ils écriraient.
IMPER.	écris,	qu'il écrive ;
	écrivez,	qu'ils écrivent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> ² J'écrive,	tu écrives,	il écrive ;
² nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivent.
<i>Imp.</i> ² j'écrivisse,	tu écrivisses,	il écrivît ;
² nous écrivissions,	vous écrivissiez,	ils écrivissent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Circonscrire, <i>to circumscribe.</i>	proscrire, <i>to proscribe.</i>
décrire, <i>to describe.</i>	récrire, <i>to write again.</i>
inscrire, <i>to inscribe.</i>	souscrire, <i>to subscribe.</i>
prescrire, <i>to prescribe.</i>	transcrire, <i>to transcribe.</i>

EXERCISE XCIV.

Silk-worms *are hatched* in the beginning of
 art. *ver à soie* ind-1 *à commencement* m. art.
 spring. — These flowers *will soon blow*. — That man
printemps m. ²bientôt ¹
 speaks well, but he *writes* badly. — Saint John *wrote* his
mal. — ind-3
 gospel, at the age of ninety, and joined the quality of an
évangile m. ind-3 *qualité* f. *
 evangelist to that of an apostle and a prophet. — I *shall*
 * *apôtre* *de* *
 write to you from Naples. — Write that on a sheet of paper. —
feuille f.
 This poet *describes* a battle well. — His physician has
² *bataille* f. ¹ *médecin*
prescribed to him another regimen. — Sylla *proscribed* three or
régime m. — ind-3
 four thousand Roman citizens. — He *is not writing again*, it is
²romain ¹citoyen m. ^c
 a sign that he is coming. — I *shall subscribe* for that atlas. —
 * *signe* m. — m.
 I have *transcribed* several passages from Cicero and Tacitus.
 — *Cicéron de Tacite*

ENSUIVRE (s'), to follow from, to ensue; see *Suivre*.

ÊTRE, to be, is conjugated at length, p. 58.

FAIRE, TO DO, TO MAKE.

	Part. Pres. faisant.	Part. Past. fait.
IND. Pres.	Je fais, nous faisons,	tu fais, vous faites, ils font.
Imp.	Je faisais, nous faisions,	tu faisais, vous faisiez, ils faisaient.
Pret.	Je fis, nous fîmes,	tu fis, vous fîtes, ils firent.
Fut.	Je ferai, nous ferons,	tu feras, vous ferez, ils feront.
COND. Pres.	Je ferais, nous ferions,	tu ferais, vous feriez, ils feraient.
IMPER.	faisons,	fais, faites, qu'il fasse; qu'ils fassent.
SUBJ. Pres.	$\frac{a}{e}$ je fasse, $\frac{o}{u}$ nous fassions,	tu fasses, vous fassiez, ils fassent.
Imp.	$\frac{a}{e}$ je fisse, $\frac{o}{u}$ nous fissions,	tu fisses, vous fissiez, ils fissent.

(Acad.—Trévoux.—Dict. des Dict.—Restaut.—Noël & Chapsal, etc.)

The diphthong *ai* having the sound of *e* mute, in *faisant*, *nous faisons*, *je faisais*, as well as in the derivatives *bienfaisant*, *bienfaisance*, *contre-faisant*, etc., Voltaire, and many writers, after his example, have substituted *e* mute instead of *ai*. But *Dumarsais*, *Condillac*, *Girard*, *Beauzée*, *D'Olivet*, and *Domergue*, have constantly opposed the adoption of this change, and the French Academy, the true judges in this matter, have formally rejected it.

Conjugate like *faire* :—

contrefaire, to counterfeit, to	refaire, to do again.
[mimic.]	satisfaire, to satisfy.
défaire, to undo, to defeat.	surfaire, to exact, to overcharge.

EXERCISE XCV.

I do my duty; do yours. — (Every thing) she does, she
devoir m. Tout ce qu'
does well. — Pliny relates that Cæsar took above
le Plinie rapporter faire ind-3 plus de
800,000 prisoners. — The king has made him a knight of
* chevalier

the legion of honour.—She *mimics* (every body.)— What the
tout le monde. Ce que
 one *does*, the other *undoes*. — Penelope *undid*, at night,
*le Pénélope ind-2 * art.*
 the work she had *done* during the day. — The fleet of
*ouvrage m. qu' **
 the enemy was completely *defeated*. — If it were to
pl. ind-3 complètement c' ind-2 à
 do again, I would not do it. — That scholar *pleases* all his
satisfaire
 masters. — You *ask too much* for your goods.
*surfaire * marchandise f.*

FEINDRE, *to feign*, is conjugated like *peindre*.

FRIRE, *to fry*, besides the Present of the Infinitive, is used only in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*; in the Future, *Je frirai, tu friras, il frira, nous frirons, vous frirez, ils friront*; in the Conditional, *Je frirais, tu frirais, il frirait, nous fririons, vous fririez, ils friraient*; in the second person singular of the Imperative, *fris*; and in the compound tenses, which are formed with the Participle past, *frit, frite*.

To supply the persons and tenses which are wanting, we make use of the verb *faire* prefixed to the Infinitive *frire*; as, *Nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire; je faisais frire*, etc.

LIRE, TO READ.

	Part. Pres. lisant.	Part. Past. lu.	
IND. Pres.	Je lis,	tu lis,	il lit;
	nous lisons,	vous lisez,	ils lisent.
Imp.	Je lisais,	tu lisais,	il lisait;
	nous lisions,	vous lisiez,	ils lisaient.
Pret.	Je lus,	tu lus,	il lut;
	nous lûmes,	vous lûtes,	ils lurent.
Fut.	Je lirai,	tu liras,	il lira;
	nous lirons,	vous lirez,	ils liront.
COND. Pres.	Je lirais,	tu lirais,	il lirait;
	nous lirions,	vous liriez,	ils liraient.
IMPER.		lis,	qu'il lise;
	lisons,	lisez,	qu'ils lisent.

SUBJ. Pres.	^{je} je lise,	tu lises,	il lise ;
	^{vous} nous lisons,	vous lisiez,	ils lisent.
Imp.	^{je} je lusse,	tu lusses,	il lût ;
	^{vous} nous lussions,	vous lussiez,	ils lussent.

The regular mode of interrogation is, *lis-je bien ?* and not *lis-je bien ?*
If *lis-je bien* be thought harsh to the ear, another turn of expression may be adopted.—(Acad., *Th. Corneille*.) See page 82, Rem. 6th.

Élire, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated like *lire*.

LUIRE, TO SHINE.

	Part. Pres. luisant.	Part. Past. lui, m. No feminine.
IND. Pres.	Je luis,	tu luis, il luit ;
	nous luisons,	vous lueizez, ils luisent.
Imp.	Je luisais,	tu luisais, ' il luisait ;
	nous luisions,	vous luisiez, ils luisaient.
	(No Preterite Definite.)	
Fut.	Je luirai,	tu luiras, il luira ;
	nous luirons,	vous luirez, ils luiront.
COND. Pres.	Je luirais,	tu luirais, il luirait ;
	nous luirions,	vous luiriez, ils luiraient.
	(No Imperative.)	
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je luisse,	que tu lisses, qu'il luisse ;
	que nous luisions,	que vous luisiez, qu'ils luisent.
	(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)	

(Acad. and the modern Grammarians.)

Reluire, to shine, to glitter, is conjugated like *luire*, but the participle present has never been used in a figurative sense.

MAUDIRE, to curse ; see page 147.

EXERCISE XCVI

Get that fish fried.—The soles are not yet fried.—
Faites ² *poisson* m. ¹inf-1 — f. *encore*
I am reading the Roman history.—She reads well.—They read
distinctly.—What author do you read in your class?—
distinctement. *auteur* m. *classe* f.
I was reading Don Quixote. — He is a man who has read
— *Quichotte.* C' ²

(a great deal.) — He can neither read nor write. — Read that
'beaucoup ne sait ni ni
 letter again. — They elected him for their representative. — We
 ind-3 *représentant.*
shall elect the most worthy. — The sun *shines* for (every body.) —
digne. tout le monde.
 All that *glitters* is not gold.
ce qui

METTRE, TO PUT.

	<i>Part. Pres. mettant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. mis.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mets, nous mettons,	tu mets, vous mettez,
		il met ; ils mettent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mettais, nous mettions,	tu mettais, vous mettiez,
		il mettait ; ils mettaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mis, nous mimes,	tu mis, vous mîtes,
		il mit ; ils mirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mettrai, nous mettrons,	tu mettras, vous mettrez,
		il mettra ; ils mettront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je mettrais, nous mettrions,	tu mettrais, vous mettriez,
		il mettrait ; ils mettraient.
IMPER.	mettons, mettez,	mets, mettez,
		qu'il mette ; qu'ils mettent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Que je mette, Que nous mettions,	tu mettes, vous mettiez,
		il mette ; ils mettent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je misse, Que nous missions,	tu misses, vous missiez,
		il mît ; ils missent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Admettre, <i>to admit.</i>	omettre, <i>to omit.</i>
commettre, <i>to commit.</i>	permettre, <i>to permit.</i>
compromettre, <i>to compromise.</i>	promettre, <i>to promise.</i>
se démettre, { <i>to resign ; to put</i>	remettre, <i>to put again ; to put</i>
{ <i>out of joint.</i>	soumettre, <i>to submit.</i> [off.]
s'entremettre, <i>to intermeddle.</i>	transmettre, <i>to transmit.</i>

EXERCISE XC VII.

Put on your hat. — You have *put* (the cart before the
 * *chapeau m. la charrue devant les*
 horse.) — I do not *admit* that principle. — They *committed*
bauf. *principe m. ind-3 de*

154 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

great excesses.—I shall not compromise you.—Diocletian *resigned*
excès m. Dioclétien ind-3
the empire. — I shall omit nothing that depends
de — m. de ce qui dépendre ind-7
upon me to serve you. — The law of Mahomet does not
de pour —
allow wine.—Allow me to tell you.—He promises enough,
permettre art. de assez
but he seldom keeps his word. — Do not defer till to-
rarement parole f. remettre à
morrow what you can do to-day. — They submit to your
ce que aujourd'hui. se
decision. — His actions will transmit his name to posterity.
art.

MOUDRE, TO GRIND (corn, coffee, &c.)

	<i>Part. Pres. moulant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. moulu.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je mouds, nous moulons,	tu mouds, vous moulez, ils moulent.
Imp.	Je moulais, nous moulions,	tu moulais, vous mouliez, ils molaient.
Pret.	Je moulus, nous moulûmes,	tu moulus, vous moulûtes, ils moulurent.
Fut.	Je moudrai, nous moudrons,	tu moudras, vous moudrez, ils moudront.
COND. Pres.	Je moudrais, nous moudrions,	tu moudrais, vous moudriez, ils moudraient.
IMPER.	moulons,	mouds, moulez, qu'il moule; qu'ils moulent.
SUBJ. Pres.	que je moule, que nous moulions,	tu moules, vous mouliez, ils moulent.
Imp.	que je moulusse, que nous moulussions,	tu moulusses, vous moulussiez, ils moulussent.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Émoudre, to grind (knives, razors, &c.) | rémoudre, to grind again.
remoudre, to grind again (corn, &c.) | (knives, razors, &c.)

NÂÎTRE, TO BE BORN.

	<i>Part. Pres. naissant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. né.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je nais, nous naissons,	tu nais, vous naissez, ils naissent.

IND. <i>Imp.</i>	Je naisssais,	tu naisssais,	il naisssait ;
	nous naissons,	vous naissez,	ils naisaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je naquis,	tu naquis,	il naquit ;
	nous naquîmes,	vous naquîtes,	ils naquirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je naîtrai,	tu naîtras,	il naîtra ;
	nous naîtrons,	vous naîtrez,	ils naîtront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je naîtrais,	tu naîtrais,	il naîtrait ;
	nous naîtrions,	vous naîtriez,	ils naîtraient.
IMPER.	naissons,	nais,	qu'il naisse ;
		naissez,	qu'ils naissent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	$\frac{2}{3}$ je naisse,	tu naisses,	il naisse ;
	$\frac{2}{3}$ nous naissons,	vous naissiez,	ils naissent.
<i>Imp.</i>	$\frac{2}{3}$ je naquisse,	tu naquisses,	il naquît ;
	$\frac{2}{3}$ nous naquissions,	vous naquissiez,	ils naquissent.

This verb takes the auxiliary *être* ; but *renaitre*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, therefore, no compound tenses.

NUIRE, to hurt ; see page 141.

INSTRUIRE, to instruct, is conjugated like *conduire*.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

This mill does not grind fine enough. — Grind some
moulin m. *fin* ¹
 pepper. — Are my scissors ground? — From labour
poivre m. *ciseaux m. pl.* *art. travail m.*
springs health ; from health contentment, source of
naître art. *art.* *art.* —
 every joie. — Abraham was born about three hundred and
tout joie f. — *ind-3 environ* *
 fifty years after the deluge. — Moses was born a hundred years
an m. *Moïse* *
 after the death of Jacob. — Napoleon Bonaparte was born at
 — *Napoléon* —
 Ajaccio, in Corsica, on the 15th of August 1769. — They
 — *en Corse* * *
 were born on the same day. — Many diseases spring from
 * *Beaucoup de maladie f.*
 intemperance. — (Every thing) revives in spring.
Tout renaitre à art.

PAÎTRE, TO GRAZE.

	<i>Part. Pres. paissant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. pu, m. No feminine.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je pais, nous paissions,	tu pais, il pait ; vous paisez, ils paissent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je paissais, nous paissions, (<i>No Preterite Definite.</i>)	tu paissais, il paissait ; vous paissiez, ils paissaient.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je paîtrai, nous paîtrons,	tu paîtras, il paîtra ; vous paîtrez, ils paîtront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je paîtrais, nous paîtrions,	tu paîtrais, il paîtrait ; vous paîtriez, ils paîtraient.
IMPER.	paissions,	pais, qu'il paise ; paisez, qu'ils paissent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Que je paise, que nous paissions,	que tu paisses, qu'il paise ; que vous paissiez, qu'ils paissent.

(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)

Repâître, to feed, is conjugated in the same manner, and has, besides, a Preterite Definite, *je repus*, and an Imperfect of the Subjunctive, *que je repusse*.

PARAÎTRE, to appear, is conjugated like *connaître*.

PEINDRE, TO PAINT.

	<i>Part. Pres. peignant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. peint, m. peinte, f.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je peins, nous peignons,	tu peins, il peint ; vous peignez, ils peignent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Je peignais, nous peignions,	tu peignais, il peignait ; vous peigniez, ils peignaient.
	<i>Pret.</i> Je peignis, nous peignîmes,	tu peignis, il peignit ; vous peignîtes, ils peignirent.
	<i>Fut.</i> Je peindrai, nous peindrons,	tu peindras, il peindra ; vous peindrez, ils peindront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je peindrais, nous peindrions,	tu peindrais, il peindrait ; vous peindriez, ils peindraient.
IMPER.	peignons,	peins, qu'il peigne ; peignez, qu'ils peignent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	Que je peigne, Que nous peignions,	tu peignes, il peigne ; vous peigniez, ils peignent.
	<i>Imp.</i> Que je peignisse, Que nous peignissions,	tu peignisses, il peignît ; vous peignissiez, ils peignissent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *eindre*; as,

Astreindre, to bind, to subject. | éteindre, to extinguish, to put
atteindre, to attain, to reach. | feindre, to feign. [out.

EXERCISE XCIX.

The sheep quietly feed on the grass
mouton m. ³tranquillement ¹paître * ²herbe h m.
under the care of the shepherd and the dogs. — The
sous garde f. berger m. pr.
flocks were grazing in the meadows. — He feeds himself
troupeau m. prairie f. se repaître
with vain hopes. — She paints from nature. — Joy
d' ²l'espérance f. d'après — art. se
was painted in his eyes. — He has attained his fifteenth year. —
ind-2 année f.
We shall reach that village before night. — Put out that
— m. art.
candle. — The fire is out. — He feigns to be sick. — He
chandelle f. d' malade.
pretended not to see him.
feindre ind-3 de ne pas *

PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

	Part. Pres. plaisant.	Part. Past. plu.
IND. Pres.	Je plais, nous plaisons,	tu plais, vous plaisez, il plaît; ils plaisent.
Imp.	Je plaisais, nous plaisions,	tu plaisais, vous plaisiez, il plaisait; ils plaisaient.
Pret.	Je plus, nous plûmes,	tu plus, vous plûtes, il plut; ils plurent.
Fut.	Je plairai, nous plairons,	tu plairas, vous plairez, il plaira; ils plairont.
COND. Pres.	Je plairais, nous plairions,	tu plairais, vous plairiez, il plairait; ils plairaient.
IMPER.	plaisons, plaisez,	plais, plaisez, qu'il plaise; qu'ils plaisent.
SUBJ. Pres.	^u je plaise, ^o nous plaisions,	tu plaises, vous plaisiez, il plaise; ils plaisent.
Imp.	^u je plusse, ^o nous plussions,	tu plusses, vous plussiez, il plût; ils plussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *déplaître*, to displease, and *complaire*, to humour.

PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

	<i>Part. Pres. prenant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. pris.</i>
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je prends, nous prenons,	tu prends, vous prenez,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je prenais, nous prenions,	tu prenais, vous preniez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je pris, nous primes,	tu pris, vous prîtes,
<i>Fut.</i>	Je prendrai, nous prendrons,	tu prendras, vous prendrez,
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je prendrais, nous prendrions,	tu prendrais, vous prendriez,
IMPER.	prenons, prenez,	prends, prenez,
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i>	que je prenne, que nous prenions,	tu prennes, vous preniez,
<i>Imp.</i>	que je prisse, que nous prissions,	tu prisses, vous prissiez,

Conjugate in the same manner : —

Apprendre, to learn. [<i>prehend.</i>]	se méprendre, to mistake.
comprendre, to understand, to comprehend.	reprendre, to take back;
désapprendre, to unlearn, to forget.	to reply; to censure.
entreprendre, to undertake.	surprendre, to surprise.

The *n* of the above verbs is always doubled, as in *prendre*, when it comes before the *mute* terminations, *e*, *es*, *ent*.

EXERCISE C.

That painting *pleases* me more than the other.—*Let us not tableau m.*

give offence by *airs* of haughtiness.—He took *déplaître* pr. art. — m. *hauteur*, li a. pr. art. guides who conducted him. — I shall take a hackney-coach.—*fiacre m.*

Take the first street on the right. — The cat has caught a *rue f. à * droite.* *prendre*

mouse. — The place was *taken*. — *Let us learn* our lesson. —
souris f. — f. ind-2

I do not *understand* these two words. — Philosophy
 mot m. art.

comprehends logic, ethics, physics, and
 art. *logique* f. art. *morale* f. s. art. *physique* f. s.

metaphysics. — They *undertake* (too many) things at
 art. *métaphysique* f. s. trop de à

once. — I *took* up my gun *again*. — You *surprise* me
 art. *fois* f. * fusil m.

(very much) by telling me that.

beaucoup en

RÉSOUTRE, TO RESOLVE.

Part. Pres. résolvant.

Part. Past. résolu, or résous.

IND. *Pres.* Je résous,
 nous résolvons,

tu résous, il résout ;
 vous résolvez, ils résolvent.

Imp. Je résolvais,
 nous résolvions,

tu résolvais, il résolvait ;
 vous résolviez, ils résolvait.

Pres. Je résolus,
 nous résolûmes,

tu résolus, il résolut ;
 vous résolûtes, ils résolurent.

Fut. Je résoudrai,
 nous résoudrons,

tu résoudras, il résoudra ;
 vous résoudrez, ils résoudront.

COND. *Pres.* Je résoudrais,
 nous résoudrions,

tu résoudrais, il résoudrait ;
 vous résoudriez, ils résoudraient.

IMPER.

résolvons,
 résolvez, qu'il résolve ;
 qu'ils résolvent.

SUBJ. *Pres.* $\frac{g}{c}$ je résolve,
 $\frac{c}{c}$ nous résolvions,

tu résolves, il résolve ;
 vous résolviez, ils résolvent.

Imp. $\frac{g}{c}$ je résolusse,

tu résolusses, il résolût ;

$\frac{c}{c}$ nous résolussions, vous résolussiez, ils résolussent.

N.B. When *résoudre* signifies to determine, to decide, the Part. past, *résolu*, m. *résolue*, f. is to be employed ; but if it mean to change, to reduce, or turn one thing into another, then the Participle *résous* (without feminine), is to be used :

Ce jeune homme a *résolu* de
 changer de conduite.
 Le soleil a *résous* le brouillard
 en pluie.

This young man has resolved to
 change his conduct.
 The sun has turned the fog
 into rain.

RIRE, TO LAUGH.

	<i>Part. Pres. riant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. ri, m.</i>	<i>No feminine.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je ris,	tu ris,	il rit ;
	nous rions,	vous riez,	ils rient.
Imp.	Je riais,	tu riais,	il riait ;
	nous riions,	vous rieiez,	ils riaient.
Pret.	Je ris,	tu ris,	il rit ;
	nous rîmes,	vous rites,	ils rirent.
Fut.	Je rirai,	tu riras,	il rira ;
	nous rirons,	vous rirez,	ils riront.
COND. Pres.	Je rirais,	tu rirais,	il rirait ;
	nous ririons,	vous ririez,	ils riraient.
IMPER.		ris,	qu'il rie ;
	rions,	riez,	qu'ils rient.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je rie,	tu ries,	il rie ;
	Que nous riions,	vous rieiez,	ils rient.
Imp.	Que je risse,	tu risses,	il rit ;
	Que nous rissions,	vous rissiez,	ils rissent.

Rire is also used with a double pronoun, in the sense of to laugh at, to ridicule ; as, *JE ME RIS de ses menaces*, I laugh at his threats.

Sourire, to smile, is conjugated in the same manner.

SUFFIRE, to suffice, to be sufficient ; see p. 142.

EXERCISE CI.

We *resolved* to set off immediately. — Have they *resolved*
ind-3 de sur-le-champ. A-t-on
on peace or war? — (Every body) *is laughing* at his
* art. art. Tout le monde
expense. — She *was laughing* most heartily. — They *were*
dépens m. pl. de tout son cœur.
laughing (in their sleeves.) — They *laughed* even to tears. —
sous cape. * art. larme f.
You make me *laugh*. — Fortune *smiles* on him. — She *smiled*
art. — f. * lui ind-2
at my embarrassment. — He *smiled* to him, in sign of approbation
de embarras n. ind-3 en —
He came up to me *smiling*.
ind-3 au-devant de moi ep

SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

	<i>Part. Pres. suivant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. suivi.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je suis, nous suivons,	tu suis, vous suivez,	il suit ; ils suivent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je suivais, nous suivions,	tu suivais, vous suiviez,	il suivait ; ils suivaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je suivis, nous suivîmes,	tu suivis, vous suivîtes,	il suivit ; ils suivirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je suivrai, nous suivrons,	tu suivras, vous suivrez,	il suivra ; ils suivront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je suivrais, nous suivrions,	tu suivrais, vous suivriez,	il suivrait ; ils suivraient.
IMPER.	suivons,	suis, suivez,	qu'il suive ; qu'ils suivent.
SUBJ <i>Pres.</i>	Que je suive, nous suivions,	tu suives, vous suiviez,	il suive ; ils suivent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je suivisse, nous suivissions,	tu suivisses, vous suivissiez,	il suivît ; ils suivissent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *poursuivre*, to pursue, to prosecute.

S'ensuivre, to ensue, to result, follows the same conjugation, but is used only in the third persons singular and plural of every tense ; as,

Un grand bien *s'ensuivit*.—(ACAD.) | *Much good* resulted from it.

SURVIVRE, to survive, is conjugated like *vivre*.

TAIRE, TO CONCEAL, TO KEEP SECRET.

	<i>Part. Pres. taisant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. tâ, m. tue, f.</i>	
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je tais, nous taisons,	tu tais, vous taisez,	il tait ; ils taisent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je taisais, nous taisions,	tu taisais, vous taisiez,	il taisait ; ils taisaient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je tus, nous tûmes,	tu tus, vous tûtes,	il tut ; ils turent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je tairai, nous tairons,	tu tairas, vous tairez,	il taira ; ils tairont.
COND. <i>Pres.</i>	Je tairais, nous tairions,	tu tairais, vous tairiez,	il tairait ; ils tairaient.

IMPER.		tais,	qu'il taise ;
	taisons,	taisez,	qu'ils taisent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je taise,	tu taises,	il taise ;
	Que nous taisions,	vous taisiez,	ils taisent.
Imp.	Que je tusse,	tu tusses,	il tût ;
	Que nous tussions,	vous tussiez,	ils tussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *se taire*, to be silent, to hold one's tongue.

EXERCISE CII.

An ass-driver said : I am not what I follow, for if I were
ânier m. ce que car étais
 what I follow, I would not be what I am. — Trouble
art. embarras m.
attends riches. — Several princes of Germany
suiro art. richesses f. pl. — Allemagne
 follow the doctrine of Luther. — I shall follow you very
— f. — de fort
 closely. — Always follow the advice of your father. —
près. 2 1 avis m. monsieur
 Let us pursue our journey. — Well ! what (is the consequence?)
chemin m. Eh bien ! que s'ensuivra
 I shall not conceal from you my way of thinking. — After
** façon f. inf-l*
 having said that, he held his tongue. — Let us be silent.
inf-l

TRAIRE, TO MILK.

	<i>Part. Pres. trayant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. trait, m. traite, f.</i>	
IND. Pres.	Je trais,	tu trais,	il trait ;
	nous trayons,	vous trayez,	ils traitent.
Imp.	Je trayais,	tu trayais,	il trayait ;
	nous trayions,	vous trayiez,	ils trayaient.
	<i>(No Preterite Definite.)</i>		
Fut.	Je trairai,	tu trairas,	il traira ;
	nous trairons,	vous trairez,	ils trairont.
COND. Pres.	Je trairais,	tu trairais,	il trairait ;
	nous trairions,	vous trairiez,	ils trairaient.
IMPER.		trais,	qu'il traie ;
	trayons,	trayez,	qu'ils traitent.
SUBJ. Pres.	g je traie,	tu traies,	il traie ;
	g nous trayions,	vous trayiez,	ils traitent.
	<i>(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)</i>		

Conjugate in the same manner : —

<i>Abstraire, to abstract.</i>	<i>retraire, to darn.</i>
<i>distraire, to distract, to divert.</i>	<i>retraire, to redeem.</i>
<i>extraire, to extract.</i>	<i>soustraire, to subtract.</i>

(See our remarks on *Abstraire* and *Attraire*, p. 137 & 138.)

VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

Part. Pres. vainquant.

Part. Past. vaincu.

IND. <i>Pres.</i> Je vaincs,	tu vaincs,	il vainc ;
nous vainquons,	vous vainquez,	ils vainquent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je vainquais,	tu vainquais,	il vainquait ;
nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je vainquis,	tu vainquis,	il vainquit ;
nous vainquîmes,	vous vainquîtes,	ils vainquirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vaincrai,	tu vaincras,	il vaincra ;
nous vaincrons,	vous vaincrez,	ils vaincront.
COND. <i>Pres.</i> Je vaincrais,	tu vaincrais,	il vaincrait ;
nous vaincristions,	vous vaincriez,	ils vaincraient.
IMPER. (The 2d pers. s. is not in use.)	qu'il vainque ;	
vainquons,	vainquez,	qu'ils vainquent.
SUBJ. <i>Pres.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je vainque,	tu vainques,	il vainque ;
$\frac{e}{e}$ nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquent.
<i>Imp.</i> $\frac{e}{e}$ je vainquisse,	tu vainquisses,	il vainquît ;
$\frac{e}{e}$ nous vainquissions,	vous vainquissiez,	ils vainquissent.

The Present and Imperfect of the Indicative of this verb are seldom used. — (ACAD.)

Convaincre, to convince, to convict, is conjugated in the same manner.

EXERCISE CIII.

Is the cow *milked*? — The least thing *diverts* his
vache f. *moindre le **
 attention. — He has *extracted* that passage from a dialogue of
 * — m. — m.

Plato. — Arithmetic teaches to *add*, *subtract*,
Platon. art. arithmétique f. *à additionner, pr.*

multiply, and divide. — Scipio *vanquished* Hannibal at
 pr. *multiplier*, pr. *diviser*. Scipion ind-3 Annibal
 the battle of Zama in Africa. — The Greeks *vanquished* the
 — *en Afrique.* Grec ind-3

164 IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

Persians at Marathon, Salamis, Platea, and Mycale.
Perse à — pr. Salamine, pr. Platée, pr. —
 How many people cannot be convinced but by
Combien de gens ne peuvent m. pl. que art.
 experience!

VIVRE, TO LIVE.

Part. Pres. vivant. Part. Past. vécu. (No feminine.)

IND. Pres.	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
	nous vivons,	vous vivez,	ils vivent.
Imp.	Je vivais,	tu vivais,	il vivait ;
	nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivaient.
Pret.	Je vécus,	tu vécus,	il vécut ;
	nous vécûmes,	vous vécûtes,	ils vécurent.
Fut.	Je vivrai,	tu vivras,	il vivra ;
	nous vivrons,	vous vivrez,	ils vivront.
COND. Pres.	Je vivrais,	tu vivrais,	il vivrait ;
	nous vivrions,	vous vivriez,	ils vivraient.
IMPER.		vis,	qu'il vive ;
	vivons,	vivez,	qu'ils vivent.
SUBJ. Pres.	ne je vive,	tu vives,	il vive ;
	vous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivent.
Imp.	ne je vécusse,	tu vécusses,	il vécut ;
	vous vécussons,	vous vécusseriez,	ils vécusseraient.

In the same manner are conjugated, *revivre*, to revive ; and, *survivre*, to survive.

Ils ont vécu, in the sense of *ils sont morts* (they are dead), is an expression purely Latin : the Romans avoided, from superstition, the use of words reckoned inauspicious. We say more generally, *ils sont morts* ; however, *ils ont vécu*, has become a French phrase, owing to its adoption by a great number of authors ; besides it produces a finer effect than the expression for which it stands. — (*Caminade*.)

To live *on* or *upon*, is expressed by *vivre DE* ; as, *Il vit DE légumes* (ACAD.), he lives upon vegetables.

C'est une fille accoutumée à *vivre DE salade, DE lait, DE fromage et DE pommes*. — (*Molière*.)

VIVE le Roi! is an exclamation to express that we wish the king long life and prosperity. *Vive* is also a term made use of to mark that we highly esteem a person, or set a great value upon something.

Vive la liberté ! Vivent nos libérateurs ! — (Acad.)

Malgré tous les chagrins, vive la vie ! — (Gresset.)

Vivent les gens d'esprit ! — (Palissot.)

Vivent les gens qui ont de l'industrie ! — (Pluche.)

Vive or vivent in the above and similar phrases is the third person of the present of the Subjunctive of the verb *vivre*. (ACAD., Féraud, Trévoux, etc.)

EXERCISE CIV.

I live with economy. — He *lives* like a great lord. — She

*en * seigneur.*

lives upon her income. — We *live* in the country. — Those

rentes f. pl. *à*

animals *live* upon herbs and roots. — Saint Louis (Louis

herbe f. *pr. racine f.*

IX) *lived* in the thirteenth century. — So good a prince *will*

ind-2 à siècle m.

live for ever in history. — It is dear *living* in this

éternellement dans art. fait inf-1 dans

town. — The people shouted, *Long live the king!* —

peuple m. *crier* ind-3 art.

Fathers live again in their children.— He *will* never survive

revivre dans

the loss of his reputation. — The husband has *survived*

à perte f.

his wife.—He did not long *survive* a person who was so

ind-3 a f. ind-2

dear to him. — He was in great dejection of mind ;

ind-2 un accablement m.

but the news which he has just received, have *revived*

vient de inf-1 **fait** inf-1

him.—Homer *lived* probably about eight hundred and fifty

Homère ind-2 environ

years before the Christian era.

avant 2 1

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE ADVERB.

THE *Adverb* is an invariable sort of word, so called, because it is most frequently added to a verb, to express some quality, manner, or circumstance; as, *il écrit BIEN*, he writes well; *elle parle DISTINCTEMENT*, she speaks distinctly.

The adverb serves also to modify an adjective, and even another adverb; as, *il est TRÈS éloquent*, he is very eloquent; *elle chante FORT bien*, she sings very well.

Some adverbs consist of a single word, as *bien*, well; *toujours*, always; others are compound, and consist of two or more words, and are generally called, in French, *locutions adverbiales*; such are, *pêle-mêle*, promiscuously; *sur-le-champ*, immediately; *tout à coup*, suddenly; *tout à fait*, entirely.

SITUATION OF THE ADVERB.

Adverbs, in French, are generally placed after the verb, in *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the participle, in *compound tenses*; as,

Il parle souvent de vous.		He often speaks of you.
Il a souvent parlé de vous.		He has often spoken of you.

But compound adverbs are placed after the participle in compound tenses; as,

Vous avez jugé à la hâte.		You have judged hastily.
---------------------------	--	--------------------------

CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be classified according to their different uses; we shall give a list of those most in use.

I. *Adverbs of Affirmation.*

Certes,	certainly.		soit,	be it so.
oui,	yes.		volontiers,	willingly.
sans doute,	doubtedly.		d'accord,	done, agreed.

II. Adverbs of Negation.

Non, ne, ne pas, } no, not. | nullement, *by no means.*
ne point, } point du tout, *not at all.*

III. Adverbs of Doubt.

Peut-être, *perhaps.* | probablement, *probably.*

EXERCISE CV.

Certainly, either I am mistaken, or the affair passed
ou *se tromper* *se passer* ind-4
(in that manner.) — *Yes, yes*, I remember it.—That is un-
ainsi. *se souvenir en* C'est là
doubtedly a very fine action.—You wish it: *be it so.*—I willingly
— f.
consent to that bargain.— *No, no*, I shall not consent (to it.)—
marché m. y
Will you give up your rights to him?—*By no means.*— Do you
céder droit m.
fear his resentment? — *No, not at all.* — You *perhaps* think that
ressentiment m. croire
he is one of your friends; you are in a mistake. — He will
* art. *erreur* f.
probably succeed in his undertaking.
réussir

IV. Adverbs of Interrogation.

Combien, *how much, how many.* | d'où, *whence.*
comment, *how.* | pourquoi, *why.*
où, *where.* | quand, *when.*

V. Adverbs of Quantity.

Assez, *enough.* | peu, *little.*
beaucoup, *much, very much.* | presque, *almost.*
bien, fort, très, *very.* | tant, *so much, so many.*
davantage, *more.* | trop, *too, too much, too many.*

EXERCISE CVI.

How much have you got in your purse?—*How many* verbs
* *de verbe* m.
have you learned? — *How* is he? — *Where* do you
se porter

168 EXERCISE ON ADVERBS OF COMPARISON.

live? — *Whence* do you come? — *Why* do you make *so much* *demeurer*

noise? — *When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing you *de* inf-1.

again? — You have played *enough*. — She speaks *much* and *jouer*

reflects *little*. — I am *very* glad to meet you. — Science is *de* art. — f.

estimable, but virtue is *much more* so. — *Almost* all the *art.* *l' bien **

philosophers think *so* — He has *so many* *ainsi.* *d'* friends! — He

drinks *too much*.

VI. Adverbs of Comparison.

Ainsi, *thus, so.*

aussi, *as, too, also.*

autant, *as much, as many.*

comme, *as, like.*

mieux, *better.*

de mieux en mieux, *better and*

moins, *less. [better.*

pis, *worse.*

plus, *more.*

si, *so.*

EXERCISE CVII.

The president spoke *thus*. — That book has merit; but *du*

there are others *as good*. — If he has done that, I can do *en* * *d'* *en*

as much. — There were *as many* ladies as gentlemen. — *ind-2* *de* *que de monsieur*

Don't read *like* him. — Women speak *better* than they *art.* *qu'*

write. — She sings *better and better*. — Since the invention of *art.* *Depuis* — f.

powder, battles are *less* bloody than they were. — *art. poudre f. art.* *sanglant qu' ne l' ind-2*

His affairs are going from bad to *worse*. — You do not offer *mal en*

enough, give something *more*. — I was *so far off*, that I *de* *ind-2* *loin **

could hear nothing.

VII. *Adverbs of Order or Rank.*

Premièrement,	<i>first.</i>	après,	<i>after.</i>
secondement, &c.	<i>secondly, &c.</i>	ensuite,	<i>afterwards.</i>
d'abord,	<i>at first, first.</i>	auparavant,	<i>before.</i>

VIII. *Adverbs of Place.*

Ailleurs,	<i>elsewhere.</i>	loin,	<i>far.</i>
ici,	<i>here.</i>	partout,	<i>everywhere</i>
là,	<i>there.</i>	y,	<i>there.</i>

REMARK. — *Y* adverb comes from the Latin *ibi*, there; it must not be confounded with the relative pronoun *Y* which has the sense of *to him, to her, to it, to them, &c.* — See p. 44.

EXERCISE CVIII.

Do *first* what we have agreed upon. — Work *first*, you
*ce dont être convenir * d'abord*
 will amuse yourself *afterwards*. — You will go before, and he
devant lui
after. — The painter had brought together in the same picture
ind-2 rassembler un tableau m.
 several different objects: *there* a troop of bacchants, *here* a
2 1 bacchante
 group of young people; *there* a sacrifice, *here* a disputation of
gens — m. dispute f.
 philosophers. — Alexander gave to Porus a kingdom larger
Alexandre ind-3 — plus grand
 than the one he had *before*. — Don't go *far*. — I have
celui qu' ind-2
 looked for it *everywhere*. — Will you go *there*?
chercher Vouloir y

IX. *Adverbs of Time.*

Present.

Aujourd'hui, *to-day.* | maintenant, *now.*

Past.

Autrefois, *formerly.* | hier, *yesterday.* [*terday.*
 dernièrement, *lately.* | avant-hier, *the day before yes-*

Future.

Demain, *to-morrow.* | bientôt, *soon, very soon.*
 après-demain, *the day after* | désormais, *hereafter.*
to-morrow. | dorénavant, *henceforth.*

Indeterminate.

Alors, <i>then.</i>	rarement, <i>seldom.</i>
longtemps, <i>long.</i>	souvent, <i>often.</i>
quelquefois, <i>sometimes.</i>	toujours, <i>always.</i>

EXERCISE CIX.

We expect him *to-day* or *to-morrow*. — *Formerly*, the
attendre

education of females was neglected, but *now* it is very much
art. *femme* ind-2 *négligé* on * *beaucoup*

(attended to.) — He set out *the day before yesterday*. — Let us
s'en *occupe* *est parti*

be wiser *hereafter*. — Be more exact *henceforth*. — Where were
ind-2

you *then*? — He goes *sometimes* on foot, *sometimes* in a coach. —
à *en* * *voiture*.

That *seldom* occurs. — People *often* deceive themselves by
arriver *On* *se tromper* *en*

judging from appearances. — The moon *always* revolves
sur art. *apparence* f. *tourner*

round the earth.
autour de

X. *Adverbs of Manner and Quality.*

Bien, <i>well.</i>	à la mode, <i>fashionably.</i>
mal, <i>badly, ill.</i>	à tort, <i>wrongfully.</i>
à la hâte, <i>hastily.</i>	exprès, <i>on purpose.</i>

To this class must be added the adverbs formed from adjectives, by annexing *ment*. There are, in French, few adjectives, from which adverbs of this nature have not been formed. This termination in *ment* corresponds to the *ly* of the English, and comes from the Italian substantive *mente*, itself derived from the Latin substantive *mens*, *mentis*, which signifies *mind*, *intention*, *manner*; so that *tendrement*, *fortement*, have the same meaning as “in a tender manner,” “in a strong manner.”

These adverbs are formed from adjectives in the following manner: —

RULE I. When the adjective ends with a vowel, in the masculine, the adverb is formed by simply adding *ment* to it; as,

poli,	<i>polite</i> ;	poliment,	<i>politely</i> .
sage,	<i>wise</i> ;	sagement,	<i>wisely</i> .
vrai,	<i>true</i> ;	vraiment,	<i>truly</i> .

Exception. — *Impuni*, unpunished, makes *impunément*, with impunity.

The six following adverbs take an *é* accented before the final *ment*, instead of the *e* mute of the adjectives : —

Aveuglement,	<i>blindly</i> .	énormément,	<i>enormously</i> .
commodément,	<i>commodiously</i> .	incommodément,	<i>incommodiously</i> .
conformément,	<i>conformably</i> .	opiniâtrément,	<i>obstinately</i> .

Bellement, softly ; *follement*, foolishly ; *mollement*, effeminately ; and *nouvellement*, newly, are formed from the adjectives, *bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, according to the following rule.

RULE II. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment* to it ; as,

franc, m.	franche, f.	<i>frank</i> ;	franchement, <i>frankly</i> .
heureux, m.	heureuse, f.	<i>happy</i> ;	heureusement, <i>happily</i> .
naïf, m.	naïve, f.	<i>artless</i> ;	naïvement, <i>artlessly</i> .

Exception. — *Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily ; because in *gentil*, the letter *l* is not pronounced.

The six following adverbs take an *é* accented, instead of the *e* mute of the feminine of the adjectives from which they are formed : —

Communément,	<i>commonly</i> .	obscurément,	<i>obscurely</i> .
confusément,	<i>confusedly</i> .	précisément,	<i>precisely</i> .
expressément,	<i>expressly</i> .	profondément,	<i>profoundly</i> .

RULE III. Adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, in the masculine, form their adverbs by changing *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *emment* ; as,

constant,	<i>constant</i> ;	constamment,	<i>constantly</i> .
éloquent,	<i>eloquent</i> ;	éloquemment,	<i>eloquently</i> .

Lent, slow, and *présent*, present, are the only exceptions in this class ; they follow the second rule, making *lentement*, slowly, and *présentement*, presently.

N. B. Most adverbs of manner, and a few of the other classes, have the three degrees of comparison, which are formed as in the adjectives.

172 EXERCISE ON ADVERBS OF MANNER, ETC.

The following adverbs are irregular in French, as well as in English : —

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bien, <i>well.</i>	mieux, <i>better.</i>	le mieux, <i>the best.</i>
mal, <i>badly.</i>	pis, <i>worse.</i>	le pis, <i>the worst.</i>
peu, <i>little.</i>	moins, <i>less.</i>	le moins, <i>the least.</i>

(See our previous remarks on these adverbs, p. 24)

EXERCISE CX.

(*N. B.* In this Exercise, some adjectives are given, from which the student will form adverbs, according to the foregoing rules.)

All goes *well*. — I said it *on purpose*. — He has done that
ind-4
very *cleverly*. — He acts *conformably* to your orders. — Speak
fort *habile* agir
to me *frankly*. — He is *dangerously* wounded. — Corneille and
dangereux
Racine are the two best French tragic poets ; the pieces of
3 2tragique 1 pièce f.
the former are *strongly*, but *incorrectly* written ; those of the
premier 2fort 3 4incorrect 1
latter are more *regularly* beautiful, more *purely* expressed,
dernier régulier beau pur exprimé
and more *delicately* conceived. — You walk too *slowly*.
délicat pensé

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

I want shoes that I can put on *easily*. — He receives
vouloir pr. art. subj-1 * aisé
2(everybody) 1(very *politely*.) — Read *attentively*. — The lion is
tout le monde attentif
naturally courageous. — The ancients believed that the swan
naturel ancien ind-2 cygne m.
sang *melodiously*, when it was about to die. — We see *evidently*
ind-2 mélodieux lorsqu' ind-2 près de évident
that three times three make nine. — That affair goes *badly*. —
fois affaire f.
Sit upon this sofa ; you will be *better* than on that
Asseyez-vous — m.
cl' air. — Of all our great writers, he is the one I like *best*.
chaise f. écrivain c' celui que le

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

THE *Preposition* is an invariable part of speech, so called, because, as its Latin derivation implies, it is generally *placed before* the word with which it is joined.

The preposition serves to express the relation which words have with each other, or to show the condition of things.

It is by means of *prepositions* that we supply the *cases* which are wanting in the French language; for instance, the preposition *de* often corresponds to the genitive and ablative of the Latins. *Le livre de Pierre.* — *Je viens de Rome.*

“The more one studies our language,” says the *Abbé d’Olivet*, “the more one will admire the use which it makes of its prepositions. Among which, let us distinguish two, *à* and *de*, which support almost the whole edifice.”

Prepositions are either *simple* or *compound*. The simple consist of a single word; as, *à*, to; *de*, of; *avec*, with. Compound prepositions consist of two or more words, and are often called, in French, *locutions prépositives*; such are, *quant à*, as to; *vis-à-vis*, opposite; *à l’égard de*, with regard to.

The prepositions are divided into different classes, according to the manner in which they express relation or connexion.

I. To denote Place.

Auprès, <i>near.</i>	près, <i>near.</i>
autour, <i>round, around.</i>	proche, <i>near.</i>
chez, <i>at.</i>	sous, <i>under.</i>
dans, <i>in.</i>	sur, <i>on, upon, over.</i>
devant, <i>before.</i>	vers, <i>towards. (Vers is also</i>
derrière, <i>behind.</i>	<i>a prep. of time.)</i>
entre, <i>between.</i>	vis-à-vis, <i>opposite.</i>
jusque, <i>till, until.</i>	voici, <i>behold, here is or are.</i>
parmi, <i>among.</i>	voilà, <i>behold, there is or are.</i>

EXERCISE CXI.

Chicanery roams incessantly *around* Themis, envy
 art. *chicane* f. *rôder sans cesse* *de* *Thémis* art.
around prosperity, calumny *around* virtue,
de art. art. *de* art. art.
 error *around* the mind of man, and injustice *around*
de *esprit* m. art. art. — f.
 his heart: what ravages do these monsters not commit,
de — m. * *ne font-ils pas,*
 when once they can gain access! — *In* prosperity it is
une fois *pénétrer!* art. *il*
 agreeable to have a friend; in misfortune it is a necessity. —
d' art. *malheur* m. *c'* *besoin* m.
 Write injuries upon sand, and benefits upon
 art. art. art. *bienfait* m. art.
 brass. — The loadstone points towards the north. —
airain m. *aimant* m. *se tourner*
 Paper was invented towards the end of the fourteenth
 art. ind-4 *fin* f.
 century; and printing, towards the middle of the fif-
siècle m. art. *imprimerie* f.
 teenth century.

II. To denote Order.

Avant, before.		depuis, since.
après, after.		dès, from.

III. To denote Union.

Avec, with.		outré, besides.
durant, during.		selon, } according to.
pendant, whilst, during.		suivant, }

EXERCISE CXII.

Augustus began to reign forty-two years before Jesus Christ. —
Auguste ind-3 *Jésus* —
 I fear God, and after God, I fear principally those who do not
ceux
 fear him. — Man from his birth has the feeling of
 art. *sentiment* m. art.
 pleasure and of grief. — The soldier defends his country
 art. *douleur* f. * art. *patrie* f.

with his sword; the man of letters enlightens it *with* his pen.

éclairer

It is *during* youth that we must lay the foundations of
pendant art. *il faut poser* *fondement* m.

an honourable and happy life. — The wise man acts
2 *3* *4* *1* *• se conduire*

according to the dictates of reason. — Talents
maxime f. art. art. — m.

(are productive) according to their cultivation.
produisent *• art. culture* f.

IV. To denote Separation or Privation.

Sans, *without*.

excepté, *except*.

hors, *except, save*.

hormis, *except, but*.

V. To denote Opposition.

Contre, *against*.

malgré, *in spite of*.

nonobstant, *notwithstanding*

EXERCISE CXIII.

No virtue *without* religion, no happiness *without* virtue.—
Point de —

A child *without* innocence is a flower *without* perfume.— Where

(will you find) roses *without* thorns? — We must always be
trouver inf-1 *des* — *Il faut* *2* *1*

ready to serve our friends, *except against* our conscience. — All
ses *sa* — f.

is lost *save* honour.— Work is a better resource *against*
art. art. *travail* m.

ennui than pleasure.— Truth, *notwithstanding*
art. — m. art. art. art.

prejudice, error and falsehood, (clears its way) and
préjugé m. art. art. *mensonge* m. *se fait jour*

penetrates at last.

percer à la fin.

VI. To denote the End.

Envers, *towards*.

pour, *for*.

concernant, *concerning*.

touchant, *about, respecting*.

VII. To denote Cause and Means.

Par, *by*.

— *moyennant*, *by means of*.

attendu, *on account of*.

vu, *considering*.

EXERCISE CXIV.

Fulfil your duties *towards* God, *towards* your parents, and
Remplir
towards your country. — That letter is not *for* you. — It
 * art. *patrie* f. *Ce*
 was at the entrance of Edward III. into Calais, in 1547,
 ind-3 *entrée* f. *Edouard* *dans* *l'an*
 that (the drum was heard to beat) *for* the first time. — He has
l'on entendit battre le tambour *fois* f.
 written to him *respecting* that business. — She charms every body
tout le monde
by her kindness and her gentleness. — They will succeed *by*
bonté f. *douceur* f. *réussir*
means of your counsels. — The fleet cannot sail *on account*
avis m. *partir*
of contrary winds.
 art. 2 1

The preposition *à* is used to express several relations
 the principal of which are : —

1. *place* ; as, *aller à Paris*, to go *to* Paris ; *demeurer à Londres*, to live *in* London.
2. *time* ; as, *se lever à six heures*, to rise *at* six o'clock.
3. *matter* ; as, *bâtir à chaux*, to build *with* lime.
4. *manner* ; as, *s'habiller à la française*, to dress *after* the French fashion.
5. *cause* ; as, *un moulin à vent*, a windmill ; *des armes à feu*, firearms.
6. *use, destination* ; as, *un moulin à papier*, a paper-mill ; *un sac à ouvrage*, a work-bag.
7. *means* ; as, *peindre à l'huile*, to paint *in* oil.
8. *possession* ; as, *ce livre est à Alfred*, this book belongs *to* Alfred.

EXERCISE CXV.

One can go in two hours from Paris *to* Versailles. — How far
On *en* *Combien*
 is it from London *to* Edinburgh ? — The neglect of all religion
y a-t-il *Edimbourg ?* *oubli* m. *— f.*
 soon conducts *to* the neglect of all the duties of man. —
bientôt *devoir* m. *art.*

EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS *A* AND *DE*. 177

Hypocrisy is an homage that vice pays to
 art. *hommage* m. art. — m. *rendre* art.
 virtue. — Come back at six o'clock. — We left him
Revenir *heure* *quitter* ind-4
 at (twelve o'clock.) — That is at the rate of five per cent. —
midi. *C'* * *raison* *pour*
 The walls of this ancient castle are built with lime and
mur m. *château* m. *bâtir* prep.
 cement. — It is a steam-engine of (twenty horse-power.)
ciment. *C'* *machine à vapeur* f. *la force de vingt chevaux.*

The principal use of the preposition *DE* is to express : —

1. *place* ; as, *venir de Lyon*, to come from Lyons.
2. *time* ; as, *il est parti de jour*, he went away in the day-time.
3. *matter* ; as, *une table de marbre*, a marble table ; *une tabatière d'or*, a gold snuffbox.
4. *possession* ; as, *le livre de Berthe*, Bertha's book.
5. *subject* ; as, *parlons de cette affaire*, let us speak of that affair.
6. *cause, motive* ; as, *je suis charmé de sa fortune*, I am happy at his fortune.

EXERCISE CXVI.

I come from Dublin, where I have spent a week very
 — *où* *passer huit jours*
 agreeably. — I intend to go from France to Switzerland ;
se proposer d' *en Suisse*
 and from Switzerland to Italy. — The seven wonders of the
Italie. *merveille* f.
 world were, the walls and gardens of Babylon ; the
 ind-2 *muraille* f. art. *Babylone* ;
 pyramids of Egypt ; the pharos of Alexandria ; the
pyramide f. *Egypte* ; *phare* m.
 mausoleum which Artemisia erected for Mausolus, her husband ;
tombeau m. *Artémise fit élever Mausole*
 the temple of Diana at Ephesus ; the statue of Jupiter
 — m. *Ephèse* ; — f. —
 Olympus, by Phidias ; and the colossus at Rhodes.
Olympien, — *colosse* m. *de* —

178 EXERCISE ON THE PREPOSITION EN.

The preposition *EN* serves to mark the relations of *place, time, situation, &c.*, and is variously expressed in English.

1. *place* ; as, *voyager en Allemagne*, to travel in Germany ; *aller en Italie*, to go to Italy.
2. *time* ; as, *en hiver*, in winter ; *en temps de paix*, in time of peace.
3. *situation, manner* ; as, *être en bonne santé*, to be in good health ; *agir en maître*, to act as a master.

REMARK. — The noun which follows *en* seldom admits of the article, whereas the noun which comes after *dans* is generally preceded by the article.

EXERCISE CXVII.

²(The same prejudices) ¹(are found) in Europe, in Asia, in Africa, and even in America. — I have travelled in England, *préjugé m. on trouve* — *jusqu' Amérique.*

Scotland, and Ireland. — Queen Elizabeth was born *pr. Ecosse pr. Irlande. art. Elisabeth naître ind-3* in 1533, and died in 1603. — Narcissus was metamorphosed *ind-3 Narcisse ind-3 métamorphosé* into a flower. — He has acted, on this occasion, like a great *agir dans* — f. *
man. — Conscience warns us as a friend before punishing *art. — f. avertir * de inf-1* us as a judge. *

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

My father is in Russia, my brother in Prussia, and my sister in *Russie Prusse*
Austria. — (It is computed) that there are in France four hundred *Autriche. On compte * * ** 23 towns, and forty-three thousand villages. — I can go in one *pouvoir* day from Boulogne to Paris, and in two days from Paris to *à* Geneva. — He spends the whole day in going from house to *passer à 234* house, from street to street, and from place to place.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

The *Conjunction* is an invariable part of speech, which serves to connect words or sentences. When I say : —

Travaillons, si nous voulons acquérir des talents, car le temps s'enfuit, et persuadons-nous bien qu'il ne revient plus.

Let us work, if we wish to possess acquirements, for time flies, and let us never forget that it returns no more.

In this phrase the words *si*, if, *car*, for, *et*, and, *que*, that, are conjunctions, as they serve to unite the different parts of the sentence.

Some conjunctions are *simple*, that is, they consist of a single word ; as, *ou*, or ; *mais*, but ; others are *compound*, that is, composed of two or more words, and are generally called, in French, *locutions conjonctives* ; such are, *au reste*, besides ; *à moins que*, unless.

Dumarsais and other grammarians reckon as many sorts of conjunctions as there are ways in which the sentence is affected by them, but as these properties are common to both languages, we shall content ourselves with giving here a list of the conjunctions most in use in the French language.

TABLE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Afin de,	<i>to, in order to.</i>	ni,	<i>nor, neither.</i>
afin que,	<i>that, in order that.</i>	or,	<i>now, then.</i>
ainsi,	<i>so, thus.</i>	ou,	<i>or.</i>
car,	<i>for.</i>	ou bien,	<i>or else.</i>
cependant,	<i>however, yet.</i>	parce que,	<i>because.</i>
c'est-à-dire,	<i>that is to say.</i>	pendant que,	<i>while, whilst.</i>
comme,	<i>as.</i>	pourtant,	<i>however, yet.</i>
d'ailleurs,	<i>besides.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided that.</i>
de plus,	<i>moreover.</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
de sorte que,	<i>so that.</i>	quand,	<i>though, although.</i>
donc,	<i>then, therefore.</i>	que,	<i>that.</i>
et,	<i>and.</i>	quoique,	<i>though, although.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till, until.</i>	savoir,	<i>namely, to wit, viz.</i>
lorsque,	<i>when.</i>	si,	<i>if.</i>
mais,	<i>but.</i>	sinon,	<i>if not, or else.</i>
néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless.</i>	soit,	<i>whether.</i>

EXERCISE CXVIII.

I have brought this book *in order to* consult it. — To listen
Ecouter
 with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish
 * *médisant* m. * *lui c' réchauffer*
 the serpent that stings, *in order that* he may sting more
 — m. *piquer*
 effectually. — David was a king *and* a prophet. — All the
sérement. — ind-2 * *
 evils are (long ago) out of the box of Pandora, *but*
mal m. *depuis longtemps hors* *boîte* f.
 hope is yet within. — The compass was not
 art. *encore dedans.* *boussole* f. n' ind-4 *point*
 invented by a mariner, *nor* the telescope by an astronomer,
trouvée *marin* m. *télescope* m.
nor the microscope by a (natural philosopher), *nor* printing
 — m. *physicien* m. art. *imprimerie* f.
 by a literary character, *nor* gunpowder by a military man.
homme de lettres, art. *poudre à canon* f. *

EXERCISE CXIX.

Which of the two was most intrepid, Cæsar or Alex-
 ind-3 *le*
 ander? — The memory of Henry IV. is *and* always will be
Henri
 dear to the French, *because* he placed his glory *and*
 pl. *mettre* ind-2 pron.
 happiness in rendering his people happy. — *Provided* you
 à inf-1 *qu' on*
 know the ruling passion of one, you are sure to
sache ²*dominant* — f. *quelqu'un, on assuré de*
 please him. — The Gauls worshipped Apollo, Minerva,
lui *Gaulois adorer* ind-2 *Apollon,*
 Jupiter, *and* Mars; they believed *that* Apollo kept off
 — — ind-2 *chasser* ind-2
 diseases; *that* Minerva presided over works; *that*
 art. *maladie* f. ind-2 à art. *travail* m.
 Jupiter was the sovereign of heaven; *and* Mars the arbiter
 ind-2 art. pl.
 of war.
 art.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

The *Interjection* is a word which serves to express some sudden emotion of the mind.

The interjections most commonly used in French, are : —

I. *For Joy.*

Ah ! ah !
bon ! well !

II. *For Grief and Pain.*

Ah ! ah !
aïe ! ay !
ahi ! oh dear !
hélas ! alas !

III. *For Fear.*

Ah ! ah !
hé ! oh !

IV. *For Aversion, Contempt,
and Disgust.*

Fi ! fy !
fi donc ! fy ! fy !

V. *For Derision.*

Oh ! oh !
hé ! kah !
zest ! pshaw !

VI. *For Surprise.*

Oh ! oh !
ha ! ha !

VII. *For Admiration.*

Oh ! oh !
ah ! ha !

VIII. *For Silence.*

Chut ! hush !
st ! hist !

IX. *For Encouraging.*

Cà ! }
oh cà ! } come on !

X. *For Warning.*

Gare ! take care !
holà ! hold !
hem ! hem !
oh ! oh !

XI. *For Calling.*

Holà ! holla !
hé ! soho !

XII. *Ô* (with a circumflex accent) is an interjection which serves to express various emotions of the mind ; it is seldom used but in conjunction with a substantive.

Although several of the preceding interjections are the same for different emotions, yet they vary much in the utterance.

We must also consider as interjections certain words and phrases that are not so in their nature, but which become such when expressed with emotion, and in an unconnected manner; as, *paix!* peace! *courage!* cheer up! *tout beau!* softly! Such are also many words used by the great dramatist *Molière*; as, *morbleu!* *parbleu!* *corbleu!* and an infinity of other similar expressions.

EXERCISE CXX.

Ah! how glad I am to see you! — *Ah!* the cowards,
 ^{que} ^{'aise} ¹ ^{de} ^{lâche}
 exclaimed Pompey. — *Ay!* you hurt me! — *Alas!* I have
 ^{s'écrier} ^{Pompée.} ^{blesser}
 lost (every thing.) — *Ha!* you (are there.) — *Oh, oh!* I
 ² ^{'tout} ^{voilà.}
 thought the contrary. — *Hush!* some one is coming. —
 ^{croire} ind-2 ^{quelqu'un}
Holla! who is there? — *O* my son! adore God. — *O* supreme
 ^{là?}
 pleasure to practise virtue! — Come, my friends, cheer up!
 ^{de pratiquer} art. ^{Allons,}

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

Ha! how beautiful that is! — *Now!* do tell me what you
 ^{que} ³ ^{'cela} ² ^{ça} ^{*} ^{ce que}
 think. — *Hush!* peace! — Does this one please you? — *Fy!*
 ^{penser} ^{celui-ci}
fy! — *Hah!* I think your lordship (is making game) of me.
 ^{croire} ²⁴⁹ ^{se moque}
 — *Holla!* where are you? — *Ah* my friend! why dost thou wish
 ^{vouloir}
 to undertake that ²fatiguing ¹journey? — *Beware* of the bomb!
 ^{*} ^{fatigant} ^{voyage} m. ^{*} ^{bombe} f.
 — *Fy!* what infamy! plague take the rogue, to wish to beat his
 ^{soit} ^{du coquin} ^{de} ^{*}
 wife. — *Softly,* Sir, speak of him with more respect. — *Courage,*
 ^{lui} ²⁹¹ ^{de}
 soldiers, fear nothing!

PART II.

OF SYNTAX.

The word *Syntax* comes from a Greek word which means *arrangement, construction*. *Syntax* teaches the regular construction of the different parts of speech; conformably to the rules of grammar, and the genius of a language.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ARTICLE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLE. — The article is to be used, in French, before all substantives common, taken *in a determinate sense*, unless there be another word performing the same office; but it is not to be used before those that are taken *in an indeterminate sense*.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS TO BE USED.

RULE I. The article is used, in French, before all substantives taken in a general sense, or in the whole extent of their signification, although not used in English in such cases; as,

L'homme est mortel.

La guerre est le fléau du genre humain.

Man is mortal.

War is the scourge of mankind.

Man is here taken in its widest sense for all mankind, and *War* is taken for war in general, and not for any particular war.

EXERCISE CXXI.

Man was born for *society*. — *Liberty* is the natural state of
est né ² ¹état m.
man. — *Kings* are men (as well as) others. — *Heroes* have
comme les autres. héros
 their moments of fear, and *cowards* their brave moments.
crainte, lâche ² ¹de bravoure
 — *Children* owe respect to their masters. — *Fear* and ignorance
doivent maître
 are the sources of *superstition*. — *Interest* is the (touchstone)
 — f. *intérêt m. pierre de touche f.*
 of *friendship*. — *Honour* is badly guarded, when *religion* is
honneur h mu. mal gardé, lorsque
 not at the out-posts.
avant-postes.

EXERCISE CXXII.

Bread is the staff of life. — *Necessity* is the mother of
soutien m. f.
invention. — *Custom* is the legislator of *languages*. — *Success*
usage m. législateur m. langue f. succès m.
 repays us for all our troubles. — There is nothing that *man* gives
paie de peine f. Il que
 so liberally as *counsel*. — *Innocation* passed from
aussi libéralement que conseil pl. — f. passer ind-3
 Constantinople to London in 1721, and to Paris in 1755. —
à en
 The Persians who worshipped *fire*, and the Egyptians who
Perse qui adorer ind-2 Egyptien
 worshipped *crocodiles*, were idolaters.
 — m. ind-2 *idolâtre*

RULE II. The article is used in both languages before substantives denoting a particular thing or object, one particular individual or class; as,

LA terre tourne autour du soleil, et
 LA lune tourne autour de la terre.
 L'homme dont vous parlez, est un
 de mes amis.

The earth turns round the sun, and
 the moon turns round the earth.
 The man of whom you speak is a
 friend of mine.

EXERCISE CXXIII.

The diseases of the mind are more difficult to cure than
maladie f. âme f. difficile guérir que
 those of the body.—The empire of Alexander was divided
 — m. ind-3 *partagé*
 among his generals.—The Parthenon was in the citadel of
entre Parthénon m. ind-2 citadelle f.
 Athens.—The city of Rome was founded 753 years before
Athènes. ville f. a été fondé an m.
 Jesus Christ.—Fabius was appointed dictator in the war
Jésus-Christ. — ind-3 nommé dictateur
 against Hannibal.—The Roman empire extended from the
Annibal. 2 1 s'étendait depuis
 Western Ocean to the Euphrates.—(According to)
 2 *occidental 1Océan m. jusqu'à Euphrate. Selon*
 the poets, the car of Venus was drawn by doves.
poète m. char m. Vénus ind-2 attelé de colombe f.

EXERCISE CXXIV.

The birth of JESUS CHRIST is the era of the Christians,
naissance f. ère f.
 and the flight of Mahomet is that of the Mahometans,
fuïte f. mahométan
 commonly called the hegira. — The first year of the
 2 *ordinairement 1appelée hégire h mu. années f.*
 hegira corresponds to the year 622 of JESUS CHRIST.—In the
répond De
 time of Philip the Fair†, there were only the dukes, the
Philippe-le-Bel, il n'y avait que duc
 counts, and the barons whose ladies had the right to
comte — dont art. femme eussent droit m. de
 (treat themselves) with four gowns a year.—The invention
*se donner * robe f. par an. — f.*
 of the barometer is due to Pascal.
baromètre m. —

† Ascended the throne in 1285; died in 1314.

RULE III. The article is used, in French, before the names of arts, sciences, virtues, vices, metals; and also before adjectives, infinitives, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, used substantively; as,

L'ivrognerie est un vice affreux.		<i>Drunkness is a dreadful vice.</i>
Lx vert plait aux yeux.		<i>Green pleases the eye.</i>
Lx savoir a son prix.		<i>Knowledge has its value.</i>

N.B. — Adjectives, verbs, adverbs, etc. used substantively are masculine in French.

* EXERCISE CXXV.

Before we study *navigation* and *fortification*, we must
*Avant d' * étudier — f. — f. il faut*
 know *mathematics*. — *Grammar* teaches to speak correctly,
savoir mathématiques pl. apprendre à correctement
rethoric to speak elegantly. — *Chronology* and *geography*
réthorique f. élégamment. chronologie f. géographie f.
 are the eyes of history. — *Faith, hope, and charity* are
yeux art. foi f. espérance f. des
 cardinal virtues. — *Intemperance* and *idleness* are the two
théologale
 most dangerous enemies of life. — The principal metals are:
plus ennemi m. art. f.
gold, silver, copper, tin, iron, and lead. — He
or m. argent m. cuivre m. étain m. fer m. plomb m.
 knows *Latin* and *French*. — I (am fond of) *blue*. — *Eating,*
savoir aime bleu. manger
drinking, and sleeping, are necessary to man.
boire dormir art.

RULE IV. The article is put before proper names of countries, provinces, islands, mountains, rivers, and winds; but countries having the same name as their capitals dispense with the article; as,

LA France et L'Angleterre sont		<i>France and England are two</i>
deux états puissants.		<i>powerful states.</i>
Naples est un pays délicieux.		<i>Naples is a delightful country.</i>

EXERCISE CXXVI.

Europe contains the following states: on the north,
contenir ²*suiuant* ¹*état* m. à ¹*nord* m.
Norway, *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Russia*, and the *British*
Norwége f. *Suède* f. *Danemark* m. *Russie* f. ²*Britanniques*
Islands; in the middle, *France*, *Belgium*, *Holland*,
¹*îles* à ¹*milieu* m. — f. *Belgique* f. *Hollande* f.
Germany or the (German States), *Prussia*, *Poland*,
Allemagne f. * *Confédération germanique*, *Prusse* f. *Pologne* f.
Hungary, *Austria*, and *Switzerland*; on the south,
Hongrie f. h asp. *Autriche* f. *Suisse* f. à ¹*midi* m.
Spain, *Portugal*, *Italy*, *Greece*, and *Turkey* in *Europe*.
Espagne f. — m. *Italie* f. *Grèce* f. *Turquie* f. d'
— *Lapland* is the country of the rein-deer. — *Burgundy*
Laponie f. *patrie* f. *renne* m. *Bourgogne* f.
produces excellent wine. — *Sicily* is the granary of *Italy*.
produire d' *Sicile* f. *grenier* m.

EXERCISE CXXVII.

France is separated from *Italy* by the Alps, and from
séparé *Alpes* f. pl.
Spain by the Pyrenees. — The principal rivers of *Europe*
Pyénées f. pl. *rivière* f.
are: the Volga, the Dnieper or Boristhenes, the Don or
— m. *Dniéper* m. *Boristhène* — m.
Tanaïs, in Russia; the Danube, the Rhine, and the Elbe,
— *en* — m. *Rhin* m. — m.
in Germany; the Vistula, in Poland; the Loire, the Seine,
Vistule f. — f. — f.
the Rhone, and the Garonne, in France; the Ebro, the
Rhône m. — f. *Ebre* m.
Tagus, and the Douro, in Spain; the Po, and the Tiber,
Tage m. — m. *Pô* m. *Tibre* m.
in Italy; the Thames, and the Severn, in England; and the
Tamise f. *Saверne* f.
Shannon, in Ireland. — The first pheasants came from the
— m. *Irlande*. *faisan* m. *sont venus*
banks of the Phasis, a river of Colchis.
bord m. *Phase* m. * *fleuve* m. *Colchide*.

EXCEPTIONS AND REMARKS.

1. The article is not used before the names of countries when they are preceded by the preposition *en*; as, *Demeurer en Angleterre*, to live in England; *Aller en Allemagne*, to go to Germany.

With the names of towns, the preposition *à*, and not *en*, is used; as, *Demeurer à Londres*, to live in London; *Etre à Paris*, to be in Paris.

2. When the names of countries are governed by some preceding noun, and have the meaning of an adjective, they are used without the article; as, *roi d'Espagne*, king of Spain; *vins de France*, French wines; *laine d'Angleterre*, English wool.

3. The article is not used when we speak of countries as of places one comes or sets out from; as, *Il vient d'Italie*, he comes from Italy; *j'arrive de France*, I am just arrived from France. In this case, however, we use the article before the names of the five great divisions of the world; as, *je viens de l'Asie*, *il arrive de l'Amerique*.

4. The most part of the names of countries out of Europe, always keep the article; therefore, instead of the prepositions *en* and *de*, used alone, as in the preceding cases, we employ the prepositions *à* and *de*, with the article; thus we say, *je vais au Japon*, (and not *en Japon*), I am going to Japan; *j'arrive du Canada* (and not *de Canada*), I am just arrived from Canada.

EXERCISE CXXVIII.

In Norway, they cover the houses with the bark of the
En on couvrir avec écorce f.
 birch-tree. — We intend going to Switzerland and
bouleau m. se proposer d' inf-1 en
Italy. — Three English miles are a little more than
d'Angleterre ¹mille m. font plus d'
 one French league. — My brother will soon return from
de France ¹lieue f. revenir
Russia. — I (set sail) from Holland, to go to the
partir ind-3 pour me rendre

Cape of Good Hope. — We had set off *from Africa*,
Cap m. *Espérance f.* ind-2 *partir*
 when he arrived there. — He is gone *to China*. — Chocolate
 ind-3 *y†* *aller Chine f.* *chocolat m.*
 was brought *from Mexico* *into Europe* by the Spaniards.
 ind-3 *apporter Mexique m.* *en* *Espagnol*

RULE V. Substantives taken in a *partitive* sense, that is to say denoting only a *part* of a species, which is marked in English by the words *some* or *any*, sometimes expressed and oftener understood, must be preceded in French, by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive.

EXAMPLES.

Donnez-moi <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande, et <i>des</i> habits.		<i>Give me some bread, meat, and clothes.</i>
A-t-il <i>de l'</i> argent et <i>des</i> amis?		<i>Has he money and friends?</i>

Exception. — When a substantive taken in a *partitive* sense, is preceded by an adjective, instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, the preposition *de* only is used; as,

Donnez-moi <i>de</i> bon pain, <i>de</i> bonne viande, et <i>de</i> bons habits.		<i>Give me some good bread, good meat, and good clothes.</i>
---	--	--

(For farther explanation, see Rule 3d, p. 10, and the Remark, p. 57.)

In these expressions: *des petits-pois*, *des petites raves*, *des petits-pâtés*, *des petits-mâtres*, *des jeunes gens*, etc., the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word, and take the article according to Rule V.

We must likewise say: *l'opinion des anciens philosophes*; *la suite des grandes passions*; *le propre des belles actions*, etc., because, in expressions of this kind, the substantives are not taken in a *partitive* but in a *general* sense.

EXERCISE CXXIX.

I have bought *some* books. — Have you *any* change? —
monnaie f.

† See N. B., page 44.

Provence and Languedoc produce *oranges, olives, almonds*,
 — f. — m. *produire* — f. — f. *amande* f.
chestnuts, figs, peaches, apricots, and grapes. — I ask for
châtaigne f. *figue* f. *pêche* f. *abricot* m. *raisin* m. *
 red wine, and you give me white. — To write well, one
² ¹ *du vin* *Pour* ² ¹ *il*
 must have good paper, good ink, and good pens. — A great
fuut *
 heart, said a king of Persia, receives little presents with one
cœur m. ind-2 *Perse* *d'*
 hand, and makes large ones with the other. — (He is always
en faire grand * *de* *On le voit tou-*
 seen) with *wits* or *great lords*.
jours *beaux-esprits* *grands-seigneurs*.

RULE VI. The English make use of the indefinite article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number; but the French use the article *le, la*; as,

Un schelling L'aune.

Six sous LA livre.

Cinq schellings LE cent.

A shilling a yard.

Six-pence a pound.

Five shillings a hundred.

But, in speaking of time, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by *par*; as, so much *a-week*, *tant PAR semaine*.

A head, is rendered by *par tête*; — so much each, *tant par personne*; — so much a lesson, *tant par leçon*.

EXERCISE CXXX.

Corn sells at seven shillings *a* bushel. — The best
art. blé m. *se vend* * *boisseau* m.

French wines sell for ten shillings *a* bottle. — I
² ¹ *de France* *se vendent* * *bouteille* f.

sell sugar at four guineas *a* (hundred weight), coffee
vends art. * *quintal* m. art.

at two shillings *a* pound, and tobacco at three pence
 * art. *tabac* m. * *sou* m.

an ounce. — How much *a* dozen? — (Here are) beautiful
once f. *douzaine* f. *Voici*

oysters at one shilling *a* hundred. — He gives him *a* hundred
huitre f. *

pounds *a* year; it is more than eight pounds *a* month.
livre sterling *c'* *de*

RULE VII. When the article is used before the first of a series of substantives, it must be repeated before each; as,

Je vis hier le roi, la reine, et les princes. | I saw the king, queen, and princes, yesterday.

So you will not say: *les officiers et soldats; le père et mère; les frères et sœurs*; but you will say: *les officiers et les soldats; le père et la mère; les frères et les sœurs*.

Note. — This rule applies to the prepositions *à* and *de*, and to all the words which hold the place of the article. We must therefore say: *J'ai parlé à la reine et à la princesse*, I have spoken to the queen and the princess. *Son père et sa mère*, his father and mother.

EXERCISE CXXXI.

The gentleman and lady are gone. — Gold, silver,
monsieur dame partis. art.
 health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy,
santé f. ne peuvent rendre l'
 without virtue. — Self-love and pride are
art. art. amour-propre m. orgueil m.
 always the offspring of a weak mind. — Innocence of
partage m. 2faible 1esprit m. art. — f.
 manners, sincerity, and abhorrence of vice
art. mœurs pl horreur h mu. art. — m.
 inhabit this happy region. — Poetry, painting, and
habiter région f. art. poésie f. peinture f.
 music are (sister arts). — The love for one's father and
musique f. sœurs. amour m. son
 mother is the basis of every virtue.
base f. tout art. pl.

RULE VIII. When two adjectives are united by the conjunction *et* (and), and one of them is intended to qualify a substantive expressed and the other a substantive understood, the article must be repeated, in French, before each adjective; as,

L'histoire ancienne et la moderne. | Ancient and modern history.
 Le premier et le second étage. | The first and the second floor.
 Les philosophes anciens et les modernes. | Ancient and modern philosophers.

There are *two histories, two floors, philosophers* both ancient and modern; the one expressed, the other understood; therefore the article must be repeated.

Observe that the substantive is not put in the plural: *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne, le premier et le second étage*, because these phrases are elliptical, and stand for *l'histoire ancienne et l'histoire moderne, le premier étage et le second étage*.

But, when the adjectives united by *et* (and), qualify one and the same substantive, in such a manner that no other can be understood, the article is not to be repeated; so we say with the modern grammarians: *Le sage et pieux Fénélon*, the wise and pious Fénélon; and with Boileau:

Le doux et tendre ouvrage—(The sweet and tender work)—because it is the same person that is wise and pious, and the same work which is sweet and tender.

Note.— This rule upon the repetition, or non repetition of the Article, applies also to *mon, ton, son, leur, ce, cet, un, une*, etc.

EXERCISE CXXXII.

The first *and* the second volume.— The first *and* the fourth
—— m.

class. — The fifteenth *and* the sixteenth century were marked
classe f. *siècle m.* ind-4 *marqué*

by great discoveries. — The faults of Peter the Great
↑ *découverte f.* *défaut m.* *Pierre*

tarnished his great *and* admirable qualities. — Can any one
ternir ind-4 *qualité f.* *Peut-on*

contemplate the heavens, without being convinced that
contempler *ciel m. sing.* *inf-1 convaincre*

the universe is governed by a supreme *and* divine Intelligence?
gouverner ——— *f.*

— Homer has described men such as they were with *their*
Homère *peindre* *tel qu'* ind-2

good *and* bad qualities.
qualité f.

† See Exception to Rule V, page 189.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

RULE I. The article is omitted before substantives, when in using them, nothing is said as to the extent of their signification.

EXAMPLES.

Un tyran n'a ni parents ni amis.
Les chemins sont bordés de lauriers,
de grenadiers, de jasmins, et
d'autres arbres toujours verts et
toujours fleuris. — (Fénelon.)

[friends.
A tyrant has neither relations nor
The highways are bordered with
laurels, pomegranates, jessamines,
and other trees which are always
green, and always in bloom.

It follows from this rule that the article is not used before substantives : —

1. When they are in the form of a title or an address ; as,
OBSERVATIONS sur l'état de l'Eu- | Observations on the situation of
rope. | Europe.
Il demeure sur Piccadilly, QUAR- | He lives in Piccadilly, St. James's.
TIER Saint-James.

2. When they are governed by the preposition *en* ; as,

Etre *en ville*.

To be in town.

Vivre *en prince*.

To live like a prince.

3. When they are used as an apostrophe or interjection ; as,

Courage, soldats, tenez ferme ! | *Courage, soldiers, stand firm !*

We say, however, to a person whom we do not know, and with whom we are on no ceremony : *Écoutez, l'homme !* Hark ye, my man ! — *La fille, arrêtez !* Stop, girl !, etc. — (*Dict. de l'Elocution Française.*)

No article is used, but simply the preposition *de*, after the words *sorte*, *genre*, *espèce*, *mélange*, and such like ; as, *une sorte DE fruit*, a kind of fruit.

EXERCISE CXXXIII.

(We see there) neither *marble*, nor *columns*, nor *pictures*, nor
On n'y voit *marbre* *colonne* *tableau*
statues. — The fleets of Solomon, under the conduct of the
flotte f. *Salomon* *conduits f.*

Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and
Phénicien *ind-2* — *m.* *terre f.* —

Tharsis, in Ethiopia, whence they returned at the end
de — *en* *d'où* *revenir* *ind-2* *bout m.*

of three years, laden with *gold, silver, ivory, precious stones*, and other *kinds* of merchandise. — I will pay you in *gold*. — He lived and died *like a philosopher*. — Come, *children*, work. — That *kind* of work does not please (every body.)
chargé de ivoire m. 1
espèce f. marchandises. en
vivre ind-3 ind-3 Allons,
genre m. ouvrage plaire
à tout le monde.

RULE II. No article is used before proper names of deities, persons, animals, towns, and particular places.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Dieu</i> est tout-puissant.	God is <i>all-powerful</i> .
<i>Jupiter et Vénus</i> étaient des divinités païennes.	Jupiter and Venus were heathen divinities.
<i>Edimbourg</i> est une belle ville.	Edinburgh is a fine city.

Some proper names of towns and particular places always keep the article as an inseparable part of the name; as, *La Rochelle, La Flèche, la Haye, le Caire, la Mecque, &c.*

Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a particular sense, or to denote an individual distinction; as,

<i>Le Dieu</i> des Chrétiens.	The <i>God</i> of the Christians.
<i>Le Jupiter</i> d'Homère.	<i>Homer's</i> Jupiter.
<i>La Vénus</i> de Médicis.	The <i>Venus</i> de' Medici.

Observation. — In imitation of the Italians, the French use the article before the names of several celebrated Italian poets and painters, the word *poète* or *peintre*, being then understood; as, *le Dante, le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Titien, le Guide*. However, we say *Pétrarque, Boccace, Michel-Ange, Raphaël*, etc.; it is usage that decides here, as in a thousand other cases.

EXERCISE CXXXIV.

God said: let there be light, and there was light. — The
*ind-3 que la lumière soit, * 2ind-3 1*
 God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, was the only true God.
ind-2 seul vrai
 — *Plato, Aristotle, Homer, Demosthenes, Cicero, Virgil, and*
Platon, Aristote, Démosthène, Cicéron, Virgile,

Livy, are classical authors. — *Achilles* is the hero
Tite-Live, des ²classique ¹ *Achille* héros h asp.
 of the *Iliad*; *Æneas* is the hero of the *Æneid*. — *Helen* was
Iliade f. *Enée* *Enéide* f. *Hélène* ind-4
 the ruin of *Troy*. — *Bucephalus* (would carry none but) *Alexan-*
Troie. *Bucéphale* ne voulait porter qu'
der. — *Carthage* was the rival of *Rome*. — *Dante*, *Tasso*, and
 ind-2 *rivale* f.
Ariosto, hold the first rank among the Italian poets.
tenir *rang m.* *parmi* ² ¹

RULE III. The article is not used, in French, before the ordinal numbers *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, etc. when they come after the name of a sovereign, or after the words *book*, *chapter*, or such like; as,

Édouard premier.
 Richard trois.
 Livre premier.
 Chapitre second.

Edward the first.
 Richard the third.
 Book the first.
 Chapter the second.

Observe that in French, we make use of the *cardinal* numbers instead of the *ordinal*, in speaking of sovereigns, with the exception of the *first* of the series. With the *second*, it is optional to use *deux* or *second*, for we say indifferently *Henri deux* or *Henri second*. — (*Acad.*, *Girault-Duvivier*, etc.)

(For further remarks, see pages 28–29.)

The cardinal or ordinal numbers are indifferently used, the *first* excepted, after the words *livre*, *chapitre*, *page*, or such like. We say *livre premier*, *section première*, and not *livre un*, *section une*. But we say either *livre huit* or *huitième*; *chapitre dix* or *dixième*; *page trois* or *troisième*; *tome second* or *tome deux*, etc. — (*Acad.*)

EXERCISE CXXXV.

Pope Leo the tenth and Luther were cotemporaries. —
 art. *pape Léon* — *contemporain*
 William the third, king of England, married the princess
Guillaume *épouser* ind-3
 Mary, daughter of James the second, and grand-daughter of
Marié *Jacques* *petite-fille*

Charles *the first*.—Louis *the eleventh* had a Scotch guard.—
ind-2 ²*écossais* ¹*garde* f.

Louis *the fifteenth* was great grand-son of Louis *the fourteenth*.
ind-2 *arrière-petit-fils*

— Book *the sixth*, chapter *the fifth*. — Section *the seventh*,
— f.

rule *the fourth*, page *the ninth*.
règle f.

RULE IV. No article is used before substantives preceded by any of the possessive, demonstrative, or indefinite adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel*, nor before those which are preceded by a cardinal number; as,

Mon frère et ma sœur apprennent la géographie.

Cette montre est bonne; donnez-la à votre sœur.

Tout homme peut mentir, mais tout homme ne ment pas.

J'ai trois chevaux.

My brother and sister are learning geography.

This watch is good; give it to your sister.

Every man can lie, but every man does not lie.

I have three horses.

(See Observations, p. 36, and Rule, p. 38.)

EXERCISE CXXXVI.

It is *my* turn to speak. — Give me the number of his
C' à tour m. *à* *numéro* m.
house. — The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, and *its*
f. — f. *en*

mouth at Havre-de-Grâce. — All the husbands were at
embouchure f. *au* *mari* ind-2

the ball with *their* wives. — *These* ladies (are waiting for)
bal m. *femme* *dame* *attendent*

their carriages. — Those *two* boys have lost *their* hats. — The
voiture f.

Saracens occupied Spain during *several* centuries. — The
Sarrasins ont occupé *pendant* *siècle* m.

city of Troy sustained a siege of *ten* years. — The pound
ville f. *Troie soutint* *an* m.

sterling (is worth) about *twenty-five* francs.
vaut environ

RULE V. The indefinite article, *a* or *an*, used in English, before nouns expressing *title, profession, trade, country*, or any attribute of the noun preceding, is omitted in French ; as,

Le duc d'York, prince du sang.	<i>The Duke of York, a prince of the blood.</i>
Je suis médecin.	<i>I am a physician.</i>
Il est libraire.	<i>He is a bookseller.</i>
Êtes-vous Français?	<i>Are you a Frenchman?</i>
Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie.	<i>I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.</i>

But, when an adjective is joined to the noun, or when it is specified by some circumstance, then *a* or *an* must be expressed in French; as,

Je suis un prince infortuné. *I am an unfortunate prince.*
Je suis un Polonais d'une illustre *I am a Pole of an illustrious family.*
maison.

A or **an** is also expressed in French after *c'est*: as,

C'est UN évêque. | **He is a bishop.**

RULE VI. The English indefinite article *a* or *an*, is omitted in French, after *quel*, *quelle*, what, used as an exclamation; as,

Quel malheur !	<i>What a misfortune !</i>
Quelle beauté !	<i>What a beauty !</i>
Quelle belle maison !	<i>What a beautiful house !</i>
Quelle folie d'agir ainsi !	<i>What a folly to act thus !</i>

EXERCISE CXXXVII.

Napoleon was (at once) *an* emperor, *a* warrior, and *a* statesman. — Socrates was *a* philosopher; Apelles, *a* painter; Phidias, *a* sculptor; Cicero, *an* orator; Livy, *an* historian; and Virgil *a* poet. — His father was *a* barrister. — I am *an* Englishman, and *a* merchant. — The best coffee comes from Mocha, *a* town of Arabia Felix. — I am

unhappy Spaniard, who seek an asylum, where I may
malheureux Espagnol, cherche asile m. ou puisse
 end my days in peace. — He is *an* officer. — What a noise
finir en C' officier. bruit m.
 you make! — What a beautiful morning!
matinée f.

RULE VII. No article is used, but only the preposition *de*, after the following adverbs: —

assez,	<i>enough.</i>	moins,	<i>less, fewer.</i>
autant,	<i>as much, as many.</i>	pas or point,	<i>no.</i>
beaucoup,	<i>much, very much,</i>	peu,	<i>little, few.</i>
	<i>many.</i>	plus,	<i>more.</i>
comme,	{ <i>how much, how many.</i>	rien,	<i>nothing.</i>
que,		tant,	<i>so much, so many.</i>
jamais,	<i>never.</i>	trop,	<i>too much, too many.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Beaucoup de nations.	<i>Many nations.</i>
Plus d'effets et moins de paroles.	<i>More deeds and fewer words.</i>
Trop de peine.	<i>Too much trouble.</i>

Bien, in the sense of *beaucoup*, is the only adverb of quantity which, besides the preposition *de*, requires the article; as,

Elle a bien de l'esprit.	<i>She has a great deal of wit.</i>
Il a bien des amis.	<i>He has many friends.</i>

But, should the substantive that comes after the adverb be particularized by what follows, it requires the article; as,

J'ai encore beaucoup de l'argent que j'ai apporté de France.	<i>I have still a good deal of the money which I brought from France.</i>
---	---

EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

Enough money. — *Enough* friends. — The elephant has
éléphant
much intelligence. — For one Plato in opulence, *how many*
 — *f.* *dans* — *f.*
 Homers and Æsops in indigence! — The honest man
Homères h mu. Esopes dans — f. honnête

is esteemed, even by those who have no probity. — There is
estimé de pas Il n'y a
 no church (that can be) compared to Saint Peter's of Rome.
point église qu'on puisse inf-l

— He has few friends. — Mothers have often too much

indulgence for their children. — Study presents so many
 — f. † étude f. offrir

advantages that one cannot (give himself up to it) with
avantage m. on ne saurait s'y livrer
 too much ardour.

RULE VIII. No article is used before nouns joined to verbs with which they express but one idea, and form idiomatical expressions; as,

Ajouter foi, to give credit.

Avoir besoin, to want, to be in
 need of.

— carte blanche, to have full
 power.

— chaud, to be warm.

— froid, to be cold.

— compassion, to commiserate.

— dessein, to intend.

— envie, to wish.

— faim, to be hungry.

— soif, to be thirsty.

— honte, to be ashamed.

— patience, to have patience.

— peur, to be afraid.

— pitié, to pity.

— raison, to be in the right.

— tort, to be in the wrong.

— soin, to have care.

Donner carte blanche, to give
 full power.

Faire attention, to attend, to
 mind.

— peur, to frighten.

Faire plaisir, to do a favour.

— semblant, to pretend, to feign.

— tort, to wrong.

— voile, to set sail.

Mettre fin, to put an end.

Parler allemand, to speak Ger-
 man.

— anglais, to speak English.

— français, to speak French.

Porter bonheur, to bring good
 luck.

— malheur, to bring bad luck.

— envie, to bear envy.

Prendre courage, to take courage,
 to cheer up.

— garde, to take care.

— jour, to appoint a day.

— patience, to take patience, to
 bear or wait patiently.

— plaisir, to delight.

— racine, to take root.

Rendre visite, to pay a visit.

Tenir tête, to cope with one, to
 oppose.

† See Rule I, page 183.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

§ I. FUNCTIONS OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

THE Substantive is either the subject of the verb, or is governed by the verb, in which case it is called the regimen.

In this phrase : *la mère aime ses enfants*, the mother loves her children ; *la mère* is the subject, or nominative case ; and *enfants* is the regimen, object, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called the *regimen direct*, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

In *les enfants obéissent à la mère*, the children obey the mother ; *les enfants* is the subject, and *à la mère* is the regimen ; and this regimen is called *indirect* because it has a preposition (*à*) before it.

§ II. OF THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

We have already said (page 5) that the French language has but two genders, the masculine and the feminine.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, and the feminine gender denotes the female kind.

The French language has no neuter ; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine.

Generally speaking, French substantives have but one gender ; a few of them, however, are masculine in one signification, and feminine in another. The following are those most in use :—

AIGLE (eagle) is feminine in the sense of a standard, an ensign in war : *l'aigle ROMAINE*, *l'aigle IMPÉRIALE*.

In every other sense it is masculine: *Aigle NOIR*; *aigle ROYAL*; *l'aire d'UN aigle*. *C'est UN aigle*, in speaking of a man of genius, of superior talent.

COUPLE is feminine when it means a brace, two of a sort; as, *UNE couple de perdrix*; *UNE couple d'œufs*. It is masculine when speaking of a man and wife; as, *Ce fut UN HEUREUX couple*.

ENFANT is masculine, when speaking of a boy: *c'est UN bon enfant*; and feminine, when it is said of a girl: *voilà UNE belle enfant*.

GENS (people), requires all words preceding it and relating to it to be in the feminine, and all words following it to be in the masculine: *les VIEILLES gens sont soupçonneux*; *TOUTES les MÉCHANTES gens*. However, instead of *toutes*, *tous* is employed, 1st, When that adjective is the only one that precedes the substantive *gens*: *Tous les gens qui raisonnent*; *Tous les gens pieux*. 2dly, When *gens* is preceded by an adjective which has only one and the same termination for both genders, such as *aimable*, *brave*, *honnête*, etc. *Tous les honnêtes gens*; *Tous les habiles gens*.—(*Acad.*)

LIVRE, *masc.* a book; *fem.* a pound.

MANCHE, *masc.* the handle of a tool; *fem.* a sleeve, the English Channel.

MÉMOIRE, *masc.* a memoir, a bill; *fem.* the memory.

MOUSSE, *masc.* a young apprentice sailor; *fem.* moss, froth.

PAGE, *masc.* a page, an attendant; *fem.* the page of a book.

PERSONNE, (nobody, a person), see p. 46, and 47.

PIQUE, *masc.* spade at cards; *fem.* a pike, or long lance.

QUELQUE CHOSE is masculine, when it signifies *something*: *Quelque chose m'a été DIT*; *quelque chose de MERVEILLEUX*. It is feminine, when it means *whatever thing*: *Quelque chose qu'il ait DITE*, etc. — (*Acad.*)

Observe that when *Quelque chose* (something), is immediately followed by an adjective, it takes the preposition *de* before that adjective; as, *Quelque chose DE curieux*, something curious. — (*Acad.*)

EXERCISES ON THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES. 203

SOURIS, *masc.* a smile ; *fem.* a mouse.

TOUR, *masc.* a tour, turn, trick ; *fem.* a tower.

TROMPETTE, *masc.* a trumpeter ; *fem.* a trumpet.

VOILE, *masc.* a veil ; *fem.* a sail.

(For the gender of some particular words, see p. 16, 17, and 18.)

EXERCISE CXL.

Several Roman *eagles* were taken by the Germans, after the
ind-3 *Germanis*

defeat of Varus, under the reign of Augustus. — A *couple*
défaite f. — *règne m.* *Auguste.*

of sheep, which they roasted themselves, composed the
mouton m. *qu'* *faisaient rôtir* ind-2

feasts of the heroes of Homer. — We have shot a *brace* of
festin m. *héros d'* *tué*

pheasants.—Dear *child*, said a mother to her daughter, without
ind-2

thee there is no happiness for me. — What wicked *people* !
toi il n' point *Quel méchant*

— They are the best *people* in the world. — Young *people*
Ce de art.

are often lazy.

EXERCISE CXLI.

That *book* is stereotyped. — At Paris and in the greatest
stéréotypé.

part of France, the *pound* was sixteen ounces.—The
partie f. art. ind-2 *de*

Memoirs of Sully are (very much) esteemed. — That passage
fort

is at the bottom of *page* 164. — *Nobody* is more unhappy
bas m. art.

than a miser. — Have you seen the *person* that I sent
qu' avare m. *que 'ai 'envoyée*

to you? — I will give you *something* good. — The *tower* of
* 1

Cordouan serves as a lighthouse at the mouth of the
*de * phare embouchure f.*

Gironde.

f.

§ III. OF NUMBER IN SUBSTANTIVES.

Although there be plurality in the idea, certain French substantives do not take the mark of the plural; these are:—

1. Proper names; as, *l'Espagne s'honore d'avoir vu naître les deux SÉNÈQUE. Les deux CORNEILLE sont nés à Rouen.* Except when they are used as *common nouns*, that is to say, to designate individuals similar to those whose name is employed; as, *la France a eu ses CÉSARS et ses POMPÉES*; that is, generals such as Cæsar and Pompey. *Les Corneilles et les Miltons sont rares*; that is, poets such as CORNEILLE and MILTON.

REMARK. — It sometimes happens that poets and orators place the article *les* before proper names which designate but one individual. This is an irregularity, or at least a license, which can only be tolerated when productive of a fine effect, as in the following phrase of *Voltaire*:

Il manque à CAMPISTRON ces expressions heureuses qui font l'âme de la poésie et le mérite des HOMÈRE, des VIRGILE, des TASSE, des MILTON, des POPE, des CORNEILLE, des RACINE, des BOILEAU.

You discover that there is unity in the idea when the sense permits to suppress the article *les*: here we might say: *le mérite d'Homère, de Virgile, etc.*

The English do not hesitate to add an *s* to proper names when used in the plural. We read in HUME: "Some of the most considerable among the Scotch, as well as almost all the English barons, were of French origin. It is difficult to account for the settlement of so many French families in Scotland, the *Bruces, Baliols, St. Clairs, Montgomeries, Somervilles, Gordons, Frasers, Cummins, Colvilles, Moutrays, Hays, Maules.*" And, in BOURN's Chronological Exercises: "the first three *Edwards*; the first three *Georges.*"

To contrast the usage of the two languages on this point, we shall conclude by giving the French rule of the justly celebrated grammarian M. GIRAULT-DUVIVIER: "With the exception of the case in which we employ a proper name in place of a common noun, a proper name cannot

EXERCISE ON NUMBER IN SUBSTANTIVES. 205

take the mark of the plural, even if it should designate several persons bearing the same name ; consequently, we must write : *les Montmarini*, *les deux Tarquin*, *les deux Caton*, *les trois Guillaume*, etc., without the sign of the plural."

This opinion is conformable to that of *Beauzée*, *Wailly*, *M. Jorquemard*, *M. Boniface*, and several other Grammarians ; also, to that of *Voltaire*, *J. J. Rousseau*, *Marmontel*, *M. Raynouard*, etc. etc.

2. Words taken from the Latin, or from any foreign language, and which have not yet been naturalized by frequent use ; as,

<i>des alibi.</i>	<i>des post-scriptum.</i>
<i>des alinéa.</i>	<i>des quiproquo.</i>
<i>des auto-da-fé.†</i>	<i>des solo.</i>
<i>des duo.</i>	<i>des te-Deum.</i>
<i>des impronptu.</i>	<i>des vade-mecum.</i>

The French Academy write *des factums*, *des bravos*, *des opéras*, because these words are frequently used.

3. Words naturally invariable, and which are only accidentally employed as substantives ; such as, *les pourquoi*, *les car*, *les oui*, *les non*, *les on dit*, etc.

Les si, les car, les pourquoi sont la porte
Par où la noise entra dans l'univers.—(La Fontaine.)

EXERCISE CXLII.

Spain (is proud) of having produced *Lucan*, *Martial*, the
s'honore inf-1 *Lucain*, —
 two *Senecas*, etc.—The *Viscontis*, dukes of Milan, had
Senèque *Visconti* *duc* *porter* ind-2
 a snake in their coat of arms.— *Ciceros* and *Virgils*
givre f. *dans* * * *armes* f. pl. art. art.
 will always be scarce.—The *mistakes* of apothecaries
rare *quiproquo* m. *apothicaire* sing.
 are very dangerous.—After the victory, they sung *Te Deums* in
très *on* ind-3
 all the churches.—It was *cardinal Mazarin* who introduced in
église f. *C'est* art. ind-3
 France the taste for *operas*.
goût m. *de* art.

† *Auto-da-fé* ; three Spanish words, which signify, Act of Faith.

§ IV. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

Compound substantives which have not yet passed to the state of words, that is to say, whose distinct parts are connected by a hyphen, are written in the singular or in the plural, according as the nature and particular sense of the words of which they are composed require the one or the other number.† Such is the general principle, whose application will be facilitated by the following rules.

RULE I. When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un petit-maitre,</i>	<i>a dandy,</i>	<i>pl. des petits-maitres.</i>
<i>une chauve-souris,</i>	<i>a bat,</i>	<i>... des chauves-souris.</i>
<i>une basse-cour,</i>	<i>a poultry-yard,</i>	<i>... des basses-cours.</i>

To this rule there are a few exceptions; as, *UNE grand'mère*, plural *DES grand'mères*.

GRAND, without apostrophe, always agrees in gender and number with its substantive, but *GRAND'* is always invariable.

RULE II. When a compound word is formed of two substantives placed immediately one after the other, both take the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un chef-lieu,</i>	<i>a county town,</i>	<i>pl. des chefs-lieux.</i>
<i>un chou-fleur,</i>	<i>a cauliflower,</i>	<i>... des choux-fleurs.</i>
<i>une dame-jeanne,</i>	<i>a large bottle,</i>	<i>... des dames-jeannes.</i>

The exceptions to this rule are but few, among which is *UN Hôtel-Dieu* (*un hôtel de Dieu*), a name given to the principal hospital of several towns in France, plural *DES Hôtels-Dieu*.

RULE III. When a compound word is formed of two substantives joined by a preposition, the first only takes the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un arc-en-ciel,</i>	<i>a rainbow,</i>	<i>pl. des arcs-en-ciel.</i>
<i>un chef-d'œuvre,</i>	<i>a master-piece,</i>	<i>... des chefs-d'œuvre.</i>

† In compound nouns, the only words susceptible, by their nature, of taking the mark of the plural, are the *substantive* and the *adjective*.

Exceptions.—UN *tête-à-tête*, a conversation or interview between two persons; plural *DES tête-à-tête*. UN *coq-à-l'âne*, an unconnected, nonsensical speech, passing from one thing to another quite opposite, as from a *cock* to an *ass*, plural *DES coq-à-l'âne*.

EXERCISE CXLIII.

Those two men are *brothers-in-law*. — I know his two
beau-frère

grand-fathers.—There are in France eighty-six *capitals* of
grand-père *Y avoir* *chef-lieu* m.

departments.—*Rainbows* are formed by the reflection of the
sing. art. *réflexion* f.

(rays of the sun) in the clouds. — In warm countries
rayons solaires *dans* *nuage* m. *Dans* art. ² *'pays* m.

²*silk-worms* ¹(are reared) upon (mulberry trees.) — The
art. *ver-à-soie* m. *on élève* *sur* de art. *mûrier* m.

great nightshade (originally came) from Mexico. — He is
belle de nuit pl. *sont originaires* *Mexique* m. *

always making *cock and bull stories*.
fait de art. *coq-à-l'âne*

RULE IV. When a compound word is formed of a substantive joined to a verb, a preposition, or an adverb, the substantive only takes the sign of the plural, if there be plurality in the idea. So we write with an *s* in the plural:

un avant-coureur, *a forerunner*, pl. *des avant-coureurs*.
un contre-coup, *a counter-blow*, ... *des contre-coups*.
une contre-danse,† *a country-dance*, ... *des contre-danses*.

But we write without an *s* in the plural, because the expressions are elliptical, and there is unity in the idea:

<i>Des réveille-matin</i> (clocks which	} <i>alarm-clocks</i> .
<i>awake in the morning</i>),	
<i>Des contre-poison</i> (remedies against	} <i>counter-poisons</i> .
<i>poison</i>),	

† On croit que ce mot est une altération de l'anglais, *country-dance* (*dance de la contrée, de la campagne*.)

Finally, we write with an *s*, in the singular as well as in the plural, because there is always plurality in the idea:

un essuie-mains (that which } *a towel*, pl. *des* essuie-mains
wipes the hands)
un porte-mouchettes (what } *A snuffers stand ... des* porte-mou-
carries the snuffers) } chettes.

RULE V. When a compound substantive contains only such parts of speech as the *verb*, *preposition*, or *adverb*, none of its components takes the mark of the plural; as,
un passe-passe, *a sleight of hand*, pl. *des* passe-passe.
un passe-partout, *a master-key, a pass-key*, ... *des* passe-partout.

EXERCISE CXLIV.

The Cossacks are generally the scouts of the
Cosaque *ordinairement* *avant-coureur*
Russian armies.—Rear-admirals are below vice-admirals.
^{russe} ¹ *contre-amiral* *au-dessous de* art. *vice-amiral*
—Snow-drops bear flowers in the midst of the
perce-neige f. *porter de* art. *à* *milieu* m.
rigours of winter. — In time of war, the savages of
rigueur f. art. *En* *sauvage* m. art.
America are armed with tomahawks.—Gold is the surest of all
de *casse-tête* *
pass-keys. — These (are mere) hearsays.
art. *Ce ne sont que* de art. *ouï-dire*

§ V. THE KING'S PALACE; THE QUEEN'S CROWN; ETC.

This form of the possessive or genitive case, is rendered in French in an inverted manner, the last word coming first, as if it were *the palace OF THE king*, *le palais DU roi*; *the crown OF THE queen*, *la couronne DE LA reine*.

EXERCISE CXLV.

(Here are) Joséphine's gloves. — Where is Alfred's hat? —
Voici
My father's house. — The mayor's authority. — The king of
maison f. *maire* *autorité* f.

England's palaces. — The queen's presence of mind. —
esprit

Helen's beauty (was the cause of) Troy's destruction. —
Hélène h mu. *causa* *Troie*

Have you read Milton's Paradise Lost? — Will you lend
Paradis m. *Vouloir* *prêter*
 me La Fontaine's Fables? — Are you going to Mrs. Bell's
 — f.

party? — Paul's sister's son entered into the castle.
soirée f. *306* *forteresse* f.

§ VI. EAR-RINGS; DINING-ROOM; Etc.

These are a kind of compound words, the order of which is likewise inverted in French. *Boucles d'oreilles.* *Salle à manger.*

Here also, two different prepositions are used, *à* and *de*, the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

De is used when *of*, *of the*, *made of*, *composed of*, *coming from*, can be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>The house-door</i> , i. e. the door of the house.	}	La porte de la maison.
<i>Chambermaid</i> , i. e. maid of the chamber.		Femme de chambre.
<i>Silk-stockings</i> , i. e. stockings made of silk.		Bas de soie.
<i>Madeira wine</i> , i. e. wine coming from Madeira.		Vin de Madère.

EXERCISE CXLVI.

The *golden age* is one of the (most agreeable) fictions
âge m. *les plus agréables* f.
 of mythology. — He has bought a *country-house*. — He is a
 art. *campagne*
wine-merchant. — The *garden-seat* is broken. — My uncle has
marchand *banc* m.
 given me a *gold watch*, and a *silver chain*. — Do you like
chaîne f.

Newfoundland cod? — The English import a great quantity
Terre-Neuve morue f. importer
of Malta oranges and Turkey figs.
Malte figue f.

A is used in compound words, when *for*, *for the purpose of*, *by means of*, *with*, may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Paper-mill</i> , i. e. mill <i>for the purpose of</i> making paper.	} Moulin à papier.
<i>Steam-boat</i> , i. e. boat moved <i>by means of</i> steam.	
<i>Three thread - stockings</i> , i. e. stockings <i>with</i> three threads.	
	} Bateau à vapeur.
	} Bas à trois fils.

Note. — Some compound words take the article besides the preposition *à*; as, *un pot à u lait*, a milk-pot. In the following Exercise, when the article is required it has been pointed out.

EXERCISE CXLVII.

The inventor of *gunpowder* was a German monk, named
canon poudre f. ind-2 ² ¹moine
 Schwartz.—I have always *fire-arms* in my *bed-room*. — Give
coucher chambre f.
 me a *wine glass*, and a *soup spoon*. — The *hay-market*
verre m. *cuiller f.* *au foin marché m.*
 is on your left, and the *horse-fair* is before you. — There
à gauche *aux pl. foire f.* *devant*
 are (a great many) *windmills* in France. — Honour to the in-
beaucoup de *Honneur*
 ventor of the *steam-engine*! — I like *rice-soup*. — Take the
machine f. *au riz* *Porter*
coffee cups into the *dining-room*. — Where is my sister's *work-*
café tasse *manger salle f.* *Où* *ouvrage*
bag? — Have you ever seen a *steam-mill*? No; but I have
sac m. *jamais* *mais*
 seen several *water-mills*. — My brother has given me a penknife
plusieurs eau *canif m.*
 with an ivory handle.
^{*} *ivoire manche m.*

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ I. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

GENERAL RULE.—The Adjective, in French, must be of the same gender and number as the noun or pronoun to which it relates, for which purpose it often changes its termination. In English, on the contrary, the adjective is never varied on account of gender or number.

EXAMPLES.

Le BON père.		The GOOD father.
La BONNE mère.		The GOOD mother.
De BEAUX jardins.		FINE gardens.
De BELLES fleurs.		FINE flowers.

Bon is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular.

Beaux is masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine and plural; *belles* is feminine plural, because *fleurs* is feminine and plural.

(For the formation of the feminine, and plural of adjectives, see p. 14-19.)

EXERCISE CXLVIII.

The *formidable* empire which Alexander conquered,
ne dura pas plus longtemps longer than his life, which was *very short*.
ne dura pas plus longtemps f. ind-3 court
 — The victory which Cæsar obtained on the plains
f. remporter ind-3 dans plaine f.
 of Pharsalia was *baneful* to his country, *pernicious* to the
Pharsale ind-3 *funeste* pays m. *pernicieux*

Romans, and *disastrous* to mankind. — (It is believed)
Romain désastreux pour art. genre humain m. On croit
 that the *first* bayonets were made at Bayonne. — That
baïonnette f. ind-3 fabriquer
 custom is very *ancient* among us. — It is a *mere* evasion, for
coutume f. parmi C' franc défaite f. car
 the thing is *public*.

1st REMARK. — When the adjectives *demi*, half, *nu*, bare, are placed *before* a substantive, and when the adjective *feu*, late, comes *before* the article or a pronominal adjective, they always remain invariable; as, *une DEMI-livre*, half-a-pound; *il va NU-pieds*, he goes bare-foot; *FEU la reine*, the late queen. But the agreement takes place, if *demi* and *nu* be placed *after* the substantive, and *feu* after the article or pronominal adjective; as, *une livre et demie*, one pound and a half; *il a les pieds nus*, his feet are bare; *la feuë reine*, the late queen; *ma feuë nièce*, my late niece.

Observation. — The adjective *demi*, placed after the substantive, never takes the mark of the plural; because it does not agree with the substantive which precedes, but with a substantive following, which is understood, and which is always of the singular number. This phrase: *I a étudié quatre ans et demi*, he has studied four years and a half, is equivalent to this: *Il a étudié quatre ans et un demi an*, he has studied four years and one half year.

2d REMARK. — Adjectives used adverbially are invariable, that is to say, remain always in the masculine singular; as, *Ces dames parlent BAS*, those ladies speak low; *ces fleurs sentent BON*, these flowers smell well.

EXERCISE CXLIX.

An Irishman said to a Scotchman: Lend me three guineas.—
Irlandais ind-2 Ecossais Prêter guinée f.
 That is impossible, for I (only possess) *half* a guinea.—Well,
*Cela car ne possède qu' **
 lend it me, and you will owe me two guineas and a
toujours devoir
half. — They go bare-foot and bare-headed. — I have heard
tête f. ouï dire

à ² your ¹ late sister say that her daughter and I were born the ^{*} moi naquîmes
same year. — The late princess was universally regretted.—
année f. ind-3
She sings (out of tune). — They spoke loud.
faux fem. ind-3 haut

BESIDES the general rule upon the agreement of the Adjective with the substantive which it qualifies, there are particular rules which it is indispensable to know, because they serve to explain the general rule.

I. An adjective referring to two or more substantives singular, of the same gender, must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender; as,

Le riche et le pauvre sont égaux davant Dieu.	The rich and the poor are equal before God.
La rose et la tulipe sont belles.	The rose and the tulip are beautiful.

If the substantives are of *different* genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural; as,

Ma sœur et mon frère sont at- tentifs.	My sister and brother are at- tentive.
Il a montré une prudence et un courage étonnants.	He has shown astonishing pru- dence and courage.

REMARK.—When the substantives are of *different* genders, and the adjective qualifying them has not the same termination for the masculine and feminine, the ear requires that the masculine substantive should be placed the last in French, that is to say, immediately before the adjective; so it is better to say: *la bouche et les yeux* OUVERTS, than, *les yeux et la bouche* OUVERTS.

EXERCISE CL.

Pilpay and Confucius are very celebrated among the nations
— célèbres parmi peuple m.
of Asia.—Uprightness and piety are (very much) esteemed,
art. †droiture f. †piété f. très
even by the wicked. — Ignorance and self-love are
même de méchant pl. †— f. †amour-propre m.

† See Rule I, page 183.

equally *presumptuous*.—The inhabitants of (Davis' Strait)
présomptueux *habitant* art. *détroit de Davis* m.
 eat their flesh and their fish *raw*.—The room and
viande f. *poisson* m. *cru* *chambre* f.
 the closet are *open*, but the window and the drawer are
cabinet m. *ouvert* *fenêtre* f. *tiroir* m.
shut.
fermé.

II. The Adjective placed after two or more substantives which are synonymous or nearly so, agrees with the last substantive only; as,

Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un tra-		<i>His whole life has been nothing</i>
vail, qu'une occupation CON-		<i>but continual labour and occu-</i>
TINUELLE. (<i>Massillon</i> .)		<i>pation.</i>

In this case, there is really but one word to qualify, because there is only one and the same idea expressed, and it is with the last substantive that the agreement takes place, as striking the mind most.

III. When substantives are united by the conjunction *ou* (or), the adjective agrees with the last; as,

Un courage ou une prudence		<i>An astonishing courage or pru-</i>
ÉTONNANTE.		<i>dence.</i>

That conjunction gives the exclusion to one of the substantives, and it is upon the last, as fixing the attention most, that the qualification falls.

REMARK. — When an adjective relates to two or more substantives, and is one of those that must absolutely be placed before the substantive, it is repeated, in French, before each substantive, and agrees with it; as,

De GRANDS événements, et de		<i>GREAT events and revolutions</i>
GRANDES révolutions suivirent		<i>followed the death of Caesar.</i>
la mort de César.		

EXERCISE CLI.

Our Queen honours literature with that attachment and
*les lettres de m. attachement, * de*

patronage *capable* of ¹making ¹it flourish. — Birds
cette protection f. inf.-1 † *les fleurir.* oiseau m.
 build their nests with ³*admirable* ¹art and ²*address.*
construire nid m. avec un art, * *une adresse* f.
 — The demi-gods of the ancients were only men who
 ancien m. ind-2 *ne que des*
 (had distinguished themselves) by ⁴*extraordinary* ¹valour ²or
s'étaient distingués une
³virtue.
une

† *Note.* — It is only when *les* is an *article*, that the contraction of *de les* into *des* takes place. The same rule applies to *de le*, and to *à le*, *à les*.

§ II. PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

Some Adjectives are placed before the noun, and some after it; others are either put before or after, according as taste or ear may require. However, it may be laid down as a rule that the French more generally place the Adjective after the noun.

ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED BEFORE THE NOUN.

1. *Adjectives* of one syllable, as *beau, bon, grand, gros*, etc., generally precede their substantive. We say, *un BEAU jardin, un BON ouvrage, un GRAND chapeau, un SAINT personnage*, etc.

2. Plural *Adjectives* generally unite harmoniously with substantives beginning with a vowel; as, *BRILLANTS atours*. It is the same with the *Adjectives* which, although singular, terminate with an *x* which is pronounced like an *s*; as, *HEUREUX artifice*, etc.

(See Remark 5th, page 218.)

EXERCISE CLII.

Have you seen the *beautiful* lake of Geneva? — The Loire
 lac m. Genève
 is a *fine* river. — You arrive at a *good* moment. — The Turks
 rivière f. le — m. Turc
 make *great* use of opium. — The *big* fishes eat the
 un usage m. — gros poisson m.

2dly, *Adjectives* denoting colour are placed after the noun; as, *un habit NOIR*, a black coat; *une robe BLANCHE*, a white dress; *un ruban BLEU*, a blue ribbon.

In poetry, and in a figurative sense, *Noir* may be placed before the substantive; as, *un NOIR attentat*, a black crime.

Some compound words; as, *rouge-gorge*, a Robin-redbreast; *du blanc-manger*, *blancmange*, can scarcely be considered as exceptions to this rule.

EXERCISE CLIV.

She has *blue* eyes. — The Spanish soldiers wear a *red*
 art. *porter*
 cockade. — (Here is) a beautiful statue of *white* marble. —
cocarde f. Voici — f. blanc marbre m.
 The marigold is a *yellow* flower. — Saddle my *black* horse. — I
souci m. jaune Seller
 shall put on my *brown* coat, and my American boots. —
*mettre * brun américain botte f.*
 Almost all the trees of Florida, particularly the
arbre m. art. Floride f. en particulier
 cedar and the *green* oak, are covered with a *white* moss.
cèdre m. vert chêne m. d' mousse f.

3dly, *Adjectives* formed from the present participle of verbs, are, *generally*, placed after the substantive; as,

Un ouvrage divertissant.		An entertaining work.
La mode régnaute.		The reigning fashion.

But, *Adjectives* formed from the past participle are *always* placed after the substantive; as,

Un homme instruit.		A well-informed man.
Une figure arrondie.		A round figure.

EXERCISE CLV.

(That is) an *amusing* book. — The *smiling* images of
Voilà riant — f.
 Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a gentle
Théocrite † — porter doux
 feeling. — There are *striking* examples of English generosity.
sensibilité f. des frappant ‡ f.

† See Note to Rule VII, p. 191.

‡ See Observations, p. 30 & 31.

Grateful people (are like) those fruitful lands
 art. *reconnaissant* *personne* f. *ressemblent à* ²*fertile* ¹f.
 which give more than they receive. — He has made
rendre *ne* *des*
astonishing progress. — An *affected* simplicity is a refined
étonnant *progrès* m. pl. *affecté* † f. ²*délicat*
 imposture.
 1— f.

4thly, *Adjectives* are placed after the substantive, when expressing some physical or natural quality, such as *chaud*, hot; *froid*, cold; *humide*, damp; and when expressing form, as *une table carrée*, a square table.

5thly, *Adjectives* of several syllables seldom go well before substantives of one syllable; so, instead of saying *les champêtres airs*, rural airs; *les imaginaires lois*, imaginary laws, say *les airs champêtres*, *les lois imaginaires*.

6thly, When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are almost always placed after that noun. So, instead of adopting the English construction, *ces deux rivales et guerrières nations*, those two rival and warlike nations, say: *ces deux nations guerrières et rivales*.

EXERCISE CLVI.

Will you give me some *warm* water? — Bring me some *cold*
chaud
 milk. — Put it on the *round* table. — Never sleep in a *damp*
lait m. *rond* *coucher*
 room. — ²Arts ¹(are divided) into *liberal* Arts and *mechanical*
 art. *on divise* *en* m. *mécanique*
 Arts. — The king of Spain is styled the *Catholic* king. — She
appeler *catholique* *Elle*
 has an *harmonious* voice. — She is a *good* and *charitable* woman.
voix f. *C'*
 — He is an *amiable* and *virtuous* man.
C' *vertueux*

† See Observations, p. 30 & 31.

FINALLY, the placing of a great many Adjectives, before or after the substantive, holds so much to the genius of the French language, that from their being placed before or after, often depends the meaning of the substantive; and usage dictates so imperiously the law, that by infringing it we would not be understood.

LIST OF ADJECTIVES

which impart a different meaning to the noun, according as they are placed before, or after it.

Un bon homme, most frequently means <i>a simple man</i> .	} Un homme bon, <i>a good man</i> .
Un brave homme, <i>an honest man</i> .	
Une commune voix, <i>a unanimous voice</i> .	} Une voix commune, <i>a common voice</i> .
Une fausse clef, <i>a false key</i> .	
Une fausse porte, <i>a private door</i> .	} Une porte fausse, <i>a false door</i> .
Un furieux menteur, <i>a terrible liar</i> .	
Un grand homme, <i>a great man</i> .	} Un fou furieux, <i>a furious madman</i> .
Le grand air, <i>noble manners</i> .	
Une grosse femme, <i>a big stout woman</i> .	} Un homme grand, <i>a tall man</i> .
Le haut ton, <i>an arrogant manner</i> .	
Un honnête homme, <i>an honest man</i> .	} L'air grand, <i>a noble look</i> .
Des honnêtes gens, <i>respectable people</i> .	
Mauvais air, <i>a vulgar appearance</i> .	} Une femme grosse, <i>same as une femme enceinte</i> .
Une méchante épigramme, <i>a bad epigram</i> .	
Du mort bois, <i>wood of little value</i> .	} Le ton haut, <i>a loud tone of voice</i> .
Morte eau, <i>ebb tides</i> .	
Le nouveau vin, <i>the wine newly come</i> .	} Un homme honnête, <i>a polite man</i> .
De nouveaux livres, <i>other books</i> .	
	} Des gens honnêtes, <i>polite people</i> .
	} L'air mauvais, <i>an ill-natured look</i> .
	} Une épigramme méchante, <i>a wicked epigram</i> .
	} Du bois mort, <i>dead trees</i> .
	} Eau morte, <i>still water</i> .
	} Le vin nouveau, <i>the wine newly made</i> .
	} Des livres nouveaux, <i>new books</i> .

Un nouvel habit, <i>another coat.</i>	{ Un habit nouveau, <i>a new-fashioned coat.</i>
	{ Un habit neuf, <i>a new coat.</i>
Un pauvre homme, <i>a man without genius.</i>	{ Un homme pauvre, <i>a poor man.</i>
Un plaisant homme, <i>a whimsical ridiculous man.</i>	{ Un homme plaisant, <i>a pleasant facetious man.</i>
Un plaisant personnage, <i>a contemptible person.</i>	{ Un personnage plaisant, <i>an amusing person.</i>
Un plaisant conte, <i>an unlikely story.</i>	{ Un conte plaisant, <i>an amusing story.</i>
Un petit homme, <i>a little man.</i>	{ Un homme petit, <i>a mean man.</i>
Les propres termes, <i>the exact words.</i>	{ Les termes propres, <i>correct expressions.</i>
Une sage-femme, <i>a midwife.</i>	{ Une femme sage, <i>a prudent woman.</i>
Un seul homme, <i>a single man.</i>	{ Un homme seul, <i>a man alone.</i>
Unique tableau, <i>a single picture.</i>	{ Tableau unique, <i>a picture, the only one of its kind, incomparable.</i>
Un vilain homme, <i>a disagreeable man.</i>	{ Un homme vilain, <i>a mean man.</i>

EXERCISE CLVII.

He opened the presses with *false* keys. — As an actor
 ind-3 armoire f. de
 was walking on tiptoe to represent the great
 marcher ind-2 le bout des pieds pour
 Agamemnon, they cried out to him that he was making him a
 on ind-3 * †
 tall man, and not a great man. — Bonaparte had a loud
 non pas ind-2
 tone of voice. — He has (got on) a new-fashioned coat. — A lady,
 mis
 seeing Chapelain and Patru, said that the first was an author
 ind-3 ind-2 auteur
 without genius, and the second a poor author.
 pauvre

† See 4th Example, page 34.

§ III. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

One of the difficulties of the French language is to know what preposition must be used after an adjective, as the French prepositions are not always in this instance correlative to the English prepositions.

Adjectives which govern the preposition À.

Adonné à, addicted to.	pareil à, like.
ardent à, ardent in.	prêt à, ready to.
bon à, good for.	prompt à, prompt in, quick at.
cher à, dear to.	propre à, fit for.
conforme à, conformable to.	semblable à, similar to.
égal à, equal to.	sensible à, sensible of.
enclin à, inclined to.	sourd à, deaf to.
lent à, slow to, and in.	sujet à, subject to.
nuisible à, hurtful to.	utile à, useful to.

And in general all adjectives denoting *inclination, habit, aptness, fitness*. And, when followed by a verb, it is most commonly put in the present of the infinitive.

EXERCISE CLVIII.

Your intentions are *conformable* to my wishes. — He is *slow* *désir* m.

to punish, and *prompt* in rewarding. — Are you *ready* to go out? *récompenser.* *sortir*

— He is *fit* for (any thing.) — He is *deaf* to remonstrances. — *tout* *art.* *remontrance* f.

Sicily is *subject* to great earthquakes. — That man is *useful* *Sicile* f. . † m. *tremblement de terre.*

and *dear* to his family. — That is *easy* to say. — It is ridiculous *famille* f. *Cela facile* *Il ridicule*

to put oneself in a passion against objects which are *insensible* *de* *se* † *en* * *colère* † *objet* m. —

of our anger. *colère.*

† Place of *Se*, p. 34.

‡ Rule V, p. 189.

Adjectives which govern the preposition DE.

Agréable <i>de</i> ,	agreeable to.	ennuyé <i>de</i> ,	weary of.
aise <i>de</i> ,	glad to.	exempt <i>de</i> ,	exempt from.
avide <i>de</i> ,	greedy of.	fatigué <i>de</i> ,	fatigued with.
capable <i>de</i> ,	able to.	heureux <i>de</i> ,	happy to.
chargé <i>de</i> ,	loaded with.	inconsolable <i>de</i> ,	inconsolable at.
charmé <i>de</i> ,	charmed with.	inquiet <i>de</i> ,	uneasy about.
chéri <i>de</i> ,	beloved by.	libre <i>de</i> ,	free from.
content <i>de</i> ,	pleased with.	mécontent <i>de</i> ,	dissatisfied with.
coupable <i>de</i> ,	guilty of.	plein <i>de</i> ,	full of.
curieux <i>de</i> ,	curious to.	reconnaissant <i>de</i> ,	grateful for.
digne <i>de</i> ,	worthy of.	satisfait <i>de</i> ,	satisfied with.
enchanté <i>de</i> ,	delighted with.	sûr <i>de</i> ,	sure of.

As likewise adjectives expressing *plenty* and *scarcity*, and in general all those which are followed in English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*.

EXERCISE CLIX.

I am very *glad to* see you in good health. — Voltaire was
bien *santé f.* *ind-3*
 always *greedy of* praise. — The vine is *loaded with* grapes. —
louange pl. *vigne f.* *raisin*
 I am *pleased with* your answer. — Virtuous men are always
réponse f. *art. 2 vertueux 1*
worthy of esteem. — I am *tired with* running after him. — A
estime. *fatigué* *inf-1*
 heart *free from* cares enjoys the greatest felicity possible. —
soin m. *jour de* *f.*
 He is very *grateful for* the services you have rendered him.
fort *que* *2 3rendus 1*
 — Here is a purse *full of* louis † and napoleons. ‡ — I am
bourse f. *m.* *napoléon m.*
satisfied with my lot.
sort m.

SOME Adjectives are often followed in French, by the preposition *enters*, and in English by the preposition *to*;

† A gold coin of France, worth about twenty shillings; so called, since Louis XIII. from the name of the kings who coined it.

‡ A gold piece of twenty or forty francs, with the effigy of Napoleon. It is more commonly said of pieces of twenty francs.

such are, *affable, bon, complaisant, cruel, généreux, indulgent*, or any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards individuals ; as,

Il faut être *poli* ENVERS tout le monde. | We must be civil to every body.

Adjectives expressing gladness or regret at a thing, such as *aise, charmé, enchanté, fâché, contrarié*, etc., require the infinitive with *DE*, or the subjunctive mood ; as,

Je suis bien *aise* d'être de retour à temps. | I am very glad that I have returned in time.
Je suis bien *aise* que vous soyez de retour. | I am very glad that you have returned.

In the first example, there is only one subject, *Je*, and the second verb is in the infinitive.

In the second example, there are two subjects, *Je* and *vous* ; the verb, therefore, is put in the subjunctive mood.

IL EST, impersonal, joined to an adjective requires *de* before an infinitive. C'EST requires *à* ; as,

Il est horrible DE penser, DE voir. | It is horrid to think, to see.
C'est horrible À penser, À voir. | It is horrid to think of, to be seen.

EXERCISE CLX.

We must be charitable to the poor. — I do not like people
Il faut *pauvre* pl. *aimer* ceux
who are cruel to animals.—Scipio Africanus was respectful
Scipion l'Africain ind-2 *respectueux*
to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his servants, just
domestique *juste*
and affable to every body. — He will be delighted to see you. —
enchanté

I am very sorry you cannot come. — It is agreeable to
bien fâché *pouvoir* subj-l *Il*
live with one's friends. — It is noble to die for one's country. —
vivre *ses* *Il* *beau* *sa* *patrie*.
This is painful to see and to hear.
C' *pénible* *entendre*.

§ IV. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

(The numbers are given at full length, page 25.)

1. Of all the *cardinal* numbers, *un*, is the only one that takes an *e* for the feminine: *UN homme, UNE femme.*

2. *Unième*, first, is never used but after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent*, and *mille*. *C'est la vingt et UNIÈME fois*, it is the twenty-first time.

3. We say *second*, or *deuxième*, but we cannot say *vingt-second, trente-second*, we must say *vingt-deuxième, trente-deuxième, quarante-deuxième*, etc.

There is this difference between *le second*, and *le deuxième*, that this last makes you think on the *third*, it awakens the idea of a series, whereas *le second* awakens the idea of order without that of series. We say, therefore, of a work which has only two volumes: *Voici le SECOND tome*, and not *le deuxième*; and, of a work which has more than two volumes: *Voici le DEUXIÈME tome*, or also *voici le SECOND tome*. — (*Chapsal, Boniface*, etc.)

4. The French say, *le onze, le onzième, du onze, du onzième, au onze, au onzième, vers les onze heures, vers les une heure*, or *sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze, onzième*, and *une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

NOTE. — *Dumarsais* thinks, that if we write and pronounce *le onze*, it is in order not to confound *l'onze* with *l'once*.

Vers les une heure is an elliptical phrase, for, *vers les moments qui précèdent ou qui suivent une heure*. The article is allowed to remain in the plural, although the substantive is not expressed.

5. When a cardinal number is preceded by the pronoun *en*, the *adjective* or *participle* which follows that number must be preceded by the preposition *de*; as,

Sur mille habitants, il n'y en a pas un de riche.		Of one thousand inhabitants, there is not a rich one.
---	--	---

6. *Cent* and *mille* are sometimes used for an indefinite, but very large number; as,

Il nous fit cent caresses.		He showed us a hundred marks of kindness.
----------------------------	--	---

Heureux, heureux mille fois,

L'enfant que le Seigneur rend docile à ses lois! — (*Racine*.)

(For several important remarks on Nouns and Adjectives of Number, see p. 27, 28, 29.)

EXERCISE CLXI.

One of the nine Muses is called Terpsichore. — It was in
 — f. *s'appeler* — Ce ind-3
 the *thirty-first* year after the peace, that war (broke out again).
année f. paix f. se rallumer ind-3
 — William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and
Guillaume, surnommé Conquérant,
 duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the
 ind-3
eleventh century. — Of ten thousand combatants, there were
siècle m. Sur combattant il y en eut
 one thousand *killed*, and five hundred *wounded*. — The admiral
 * *blessé*
 showed me a *thousand* civilities.
*faire * caresse*

§ V. ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

Adjectives of dimension, such as *haut*, high; *long*, long; *large*, wide or broad; *épais*, thick; *profond*, deep, which come after the word of measure in English, come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de*; as,

Un mur <i>haut</i> de sept pieds.		A wall seven feet high.
Une chambre <i>longue</i> de vingt		A room twenty feet long.
pieds.		

Another construction, frequently used, is to let the words remain in French as in English, and to put *de* both before the number and before the word of measure or dimension. In this case, the substantive of dimension is often used instead of the adjective; as,

Un mur de sept pieds de haut,		A wall seven feet high.
or de hauteur.		
Une chambre de vingt pieds		A room twenty feet long.
de long, or de longueur.		

The English manner of expressing *dimension* is to use the verb *to be*; but the French, in general, make use of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the number, and the phrase is rendered thus: —

Ce mur a sept pieds de haut,		That wall is seven feet high.
or de hauteur.		

EXERCISE CLXII.

The walls of Babylon *were* two hundred feet *high* and fifty
Babylone avaient †
broad. — The great wall, on the north of China, *is* about
largeur. *muraille f. à* *Chine f. à environ*
 twelve hundred miles *long.* — The highest of the pyramids of
 † *pyramide f.*
 Egypt *is*, at least, five hundred feet *high.* — The Monument of
a au moins † — *m.*
 London is a round pillar two hundred feet *high.* — The Tiber
 ‡ *trond pilier m.* †
is three hundred feet *wide* at Rome. — The famous mine of
a † *largeur* — *f.*
 Potosi, in Peru, *is* more than fifteen hundred feet *deep.*
dans Pérou m. a de † *profondeur.*

§ VI. ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

1. *By*, after a comparative, is expressed by *DE* ; *as*,
 Il est plus grand *de* deux pouces. | *He is taller by two inches.*

2. In English, when the adverbs *more* and *less* are repeated to express a comparison, they are preceded by the article ; *as*, *THE MORE difficult a thing is, THE MORE glorious it is to do it well.* But, in French, the article is suppressed ; *as*, *PLUS une chose est difficile, PLUS il est glorieux de la bien faire.*

§ VII. ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

1. An adjective in the superlative degree governs the preposition *DE* ; *as*,

Le plus grand empire *du*
monde.

| *The greatest empire in the*
world.

 † See Rem. on *Cent*, p. 28.

‡ See Rule 4th, p. 218.

ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE. 227

2. When the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the article before them; but the substantive takes no article, if the superlative goes first; as,

Les gens les plus habiles. } The ablest men.
Les plus habiles gens. }

3. The article placed before *plus* and *moins* preceding an adjective, is always invariable, when there is no comparison; as, *La lune ne nous éclaire pas autant que le soleil, même quand elle est LE PLUS brillante*, The moon does not light us so much as the sun, even when it shines brightest. But the article takes gender and number, when there is a comparison; as, *La lune est LA PLUS brillante de toutes les planètes*, The moon is the most brilliant of all the planets.

EXERCISE CLXIII.

She is taller than her sister *by* the whole head. — *The more*
2 1 tout tête f.

one reads La Fontaine, *the more* one admires him. — Seneca
on Sénèque

was *the richest* man in the empire. — *The highest* mountains
ind-2 2 1 montagne f.

are the reservoirs (from which) issue *the largest* rivers. —
réservoir m. d'où sortir grand fleuve m.

Those whom I have always seen *most struck* with the writings
Ceux que vous frapper de écrit m.

of Homer, Virgil, Horace, Cicero, are minds of the first
† † † des esprit m.

order. — Although the Chinese boast of being *the most ancient*
Quoique Chinois se vanter inf-1 2

nation, they are far from being *the most enlightened*.
1 — f. loin inf-1 éclairé

† See Note to Rule vii, p. 191.

CHAPTER IV. OF PRONOUNS.

§ I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Place of Personal Pronouns.

THE Personal Pronouns, whether *subjects* or *objects*, are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses; except, *1st*, When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French; *2dly*, In interrogative sentences; *3dly*, When the verb is in the imperative *affirmative* (the third persons excepted.) Such is the general principle of the position of personal pronouns, which will be fully developed in this chapter.

(See what has already been stated on this subject, p. 32.)

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS.

I. The *personal* pronouns, *I, thou, he* or *it, she* or *it, we, you, they*, are expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* m., *elles* f., when they are the subjects or nominatives of the verb; as,

Je parle, I *speak*; *il* chante,
he *sings*.

Elle danse, she *dances*;
nous jouons, we *play*.

II. *I, thou, he, they* m. are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, eux*:—

1st, When used in answer to a question; as,

Qui a fait cela? — Moi. | *Who has done that? — I.*

2d, When joined to a noun or pronoun by a conjunction, or when a verb has two or more pronouns as subjects; as,

Mon frère et moi.

Lui et moi.

Vous, lui, et moi, nous irons.

My brother and I.

He and I.

You, he, and I will go.

3d, When they come after a comparative ; as,

Il est plus riche que *lui*, qu'*eux* et *moi*. | *He is richer than he, they and I.*

4th, When followed by the relatives *qui*, *que*, the adjective *seul*, or a present participle ; as,

Moi qui suis son fils.

Eux que j'aimais tant.

Lui seul respecte la vertu.

Eux, voyant qu'ils avaient tort.

I who am his son.

They whom I loved so much.

He alone respects virtue.

They, seeing that they were in the wrong.

5th, When they mark opposition or distinction, or point out the part taken in an action by different persons ; as,

Eux l'ont relevé, et *lui* l'a pensé.

They raised him up, and he dressed his wounds.

6th, When coming after these expressions, *It is, it was, it will be, it would be*, or similar ones, whether in the affirmative, negative, or interrogative ; as,

It is I, C'est moi.

It is he, C'est lui.

It is thou, C'est toi.

It is they, Ce sont eux, m. elles, f.

EXERCISE CLXIV.

I come from Dover. — *You* like the town, and *I* the *Douvers*.

country. — Who read last? — *He*. — *I* am not so tall
campagne f. ind-4 *le dernier* fem. si *grand*

as your sister, but *she* is older than *I*. — *They alone* have
que âgé seul

fought the enemy ; *they alone* deserve to be rewarded. —
combattre mériter d' récompensé

He, perceiving their intentions, gave up his project. —
s'apercevoir de † abandonner projet m.

Your uncles and your brother take charge of the enterprise ;
se charger

they find the money, and *he* will manage the work. —
fournir fonds pl. conduire ind-7 travail m.

Was it *he* that was singing? — No, it was *I*.
ind-2 *ce* qui ind-2 c' ind-2

† Most words ending in *ion* are alike in both languages. See *Observations*, p. 30 ; also *Remarks on Genders*, p. 5.

III. Personal pronouns used as *subjects*, are placed after the verb, although no interrogation is meant : —

1st, When the verb is in the subjunctive mood without any conjunction being expressed. In such a case, the final *e* of the first person is marked with an acute accent, for the sake of euphony ; as,

Puissé-je de mes yeux, &c. (CORN.) | *May I with my eyes, &c.*
Dussé-je, après dix ans, &c. (RAC.) | *Should I, after ten years, &c.*

2d, When the verb is preceded by any of these words, *aussi, peut-être, encore, en vain, du moins, au moins, à peine*; as,

Peut-être avez-vous raison. | *Perhaps you are right.*
En vain prétendons-nous. | *It is in vain that we pretend.*

We might also say : *Peut-être vous avez raison* ; — *en vain nous prétendons*, but then the expression possesses neither the same grace, nor the same energy.

3d, In narrations, as in English : —

Où allez-vous ? lui dis-je. | *Where are you going ? said I to him.*
Je le veux bien, lui répondit-il. | *I am very willing, replied he to him.*

Note.—Observe that in the foregoing examples a *hyphen* is put after the verb when followed by the pronoun its subject.

EXERCISE CLXV.

(Oh that I may) see him ! — (Though you were) more
Puissé-je *Fussiez-vous*
numerous, you will meet with resistance. — This
nombreux *éprouver* ind-7 pr. art.
lace is beautiful, (*but then*) it is dear. — The rose is
dentelle f. *aussi* *coûter* † ‡ — f.
the queen of flowers ; *therefore* it is the emblem of
art. *aussi* *emblème* m. art.
beauty. — *Perhaps* I shall go. — You were *hardly* gone when
Peut-être ind-2 *à peine* *partir* *que*
your brother arrived. — What would you have ? *said he* to me.
ind-3 ind-1 *

Life, replied I.
art. *répondre*

† See the 3d Rem. p. 82.

‡ See the 2d Rem. p. 212.

IV. Personal pronouns, when subjects or nominatives, must be repeated:—

1st, When we pass from negation to affirmation; as, *Je ne plie pas et je romps* (I do not bend and I break.) But we can say: *Je plie et je ne romps pas*, or *je plie et ne romps pas*, the first verb being in the affirmative.

2d, When the verbs are connected by any conjunction, except *et* (and), *ou* (or), *ni* (nor), *mais* (but).

Except in those two cases, the personal pronouns *subjects*, are either repeated or not, according as the harmony, energy, and especially the perspicuity of the phrase may require.

EXERCISE CLXVI.

You gain *nothing*, and you spend (a great deal.) — *I*
gagner *dépenser beaucoup.*
 (am not ignorant) that one cannot be happy without virtue,
n'ignore pas on ne saurait art.
 and I (am firmly resolved) always to practise it. — We detest
me propose bien de * 2 1
 the wicked, because we fear them.—He is learned although
méchant parce que craindre quoique
 he is very young.—I wish to see you happy, because I
 subj-1 *bien désirer* *
 am attached to you. — You will be truly esteemed, if you are
attaché * *vraiment*
 wise and modest.
modeste.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

A Personal pronoun, when the regimen† or object of the verb, is either *direct* or *indirect*. A pronoun is the direct object of the verb, when it is governed by the verb without any preposition, either expressed or understood; as, *Je la vois*, I see her. But, when a pronoun is the indirect object, it is always preceded by *à* (to), or

† REGIMEN. The word or member of a sentence governed by a verb; as, *Evil communication corrupts good manners*, where *good manners* may be said to be the regimen, or part of the sentence governed by the verb *corrupts*. — (*Walker's Dict.*)

de (of), either expressed or understood; as, *Je lui parle*, I speak to him; *J'en parle*, I speak of him.

I. When personal pronouns are in the accusative, or in other words, the *direct objects* of the verb, they are expressed in French thus:—

<i>me,</i>	by me	<i>us,</i>	by nous
<i>thee,</i>	„ te	<i>you,</i>	„ vous
<i>him,</i>	„ le	<i>them,</i>	„ les, m. and f.
<i>her,</i>	„ la		

and are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative; as,

<i>Il me flatte.</i>	<i>He flatters me.</i>
<i>Vous ne la surprendrez pas.</i>	<i>You will not surprise her.</i>
<i>Ils nous ont trompés.</i>	<i>They have deceived us.</i>
<i>Ne les connaissez-vous pas?</i>	<i>Do you not know them?</i>

REMARK.—When *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, come before a vowel, or *h* mute, the elision of the *e* takes place, as explained in the chapter of the apostrophe, page 3rd.

N. B. The pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, are also called *relative* pronouns, because they relate to a substantive already expressed.

EXERCISE CLXVII.

You suspect *me* (without reason.)—He has rewarded *me*
soupponner *mal à propos.* *récompenser*
 generously. — God is a father to those who love *him*, and a
généreusement. *le* *de ceux* *le*
 protector to those who fear *him*. — (As soon as) my sister
 † *de* *craindre* *Dès que*
 (shall have) arrived, I will go and see *her*. — Vice often
sera *ind-7* * *art.*
 deceives *us* under the mask of virtue. — We shall go and
masque m. *art.* *
 see *you* after dinner. — Do you not see *them*? —
après dîner.

II. When personal pronouns are the *indirect objects* of the verb, and governed by the preposition *à* (to), understood,

† Most English words ending in *er* become French by changing *er* into *eur*. See *Observations*, p. 30.

they are expressed by *me, te, lui*, m. and f.; *nous, vous, leur*, m. and f., and placed before the verb, in the same manner as when they are the direct objects; as,

Elle <i>me</i> parle.		<i>She speaks to me.</i>
Il <i>lui</i> donne.		<i>He gives him (i. e. to him.)</i>
Je <i>leur</i> écrirai.		<i>I will write to them.</i>

III. When the preposition *à* is to be expressed before the pronouns, they are then rendered by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*, and placed after the verb. This happens only in the following cases: —

1st, With the verbs *aller*, to go; *courir* and *accourir*, to run to; *marcher*, to walk; *penser* and *songer*, to think; *venir*, to come; *viser*, to aim at; *être* (in the sense of to belong); *avoir*, to have, used with the words *affaire, égard, rapport, recours*; as,

Votre frère vint <i>à nous</i> .		<i>Your brother came to us.</i>
Ce livre est <i>à moi</i> .		<i>This book belongs to me.</i>
J'aurai recours <i>à eux</i> .		<i>I will have recourse to them.</i>

2d, When a verb has two or more indirect regimens, and likewise with all reflected verbs; as,

Je parle <i>à lui</i> et <i>à elle</i> .		<i>I speak to him and to her.</i>
Il s'adressa <i>à moi</i> .		<i>He applied to me.</i>

EXERCISE CLXVIII.

Do you not speak to *her*, when you meet *her*? — Few
quand rencontrer Peu
 people are wise enough to prefer the blame that is useful
de gens pour
 to them, to the praise which betrays them. — They came to us
louange f. trahir
 when we (were not thinking) of them. — That horse was
ne pensions pas à ind-2
 formerly mine, but I sold it to your cousin. — If you don't
autrefois à moi ind-4 l'
 behave better, you will have to do with me. — He speaks
se conduire affaire à
 to you and to him. — We trust to them.
se fier

IV. When a personal pronoun, used as a direct or in-

direct object, accompanies a verb in the imperative mood, in the first person plural, or in the second person singular or plural, it is put in French, as in English, immediately after the verb, and *moi*, *toi*, are used instead of *me*, *te*. But, if a negation attends the imperative, the pronoun follows the general rule, and is placed before the verb, and again *me*, *te*, are used.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Affirmatively.</i>		<i>Negatively.</i> [them.]	
Aimons-les,	Let us love them.	Ne les aimons pas,	Let us not love them.
Sauvez-moi,	Save me.	Ne me sauvez pas,	Don't save me.
Dites-lui,	Tell him.	Ne lui dites pas,	Don't tell him.

REMARKS.—1. When there are two imperatives joined by the conjunction *et* or *ou*, and without a negative, it is considered more elegant to place the second pronoun before the verb; as,

Polissez-le sans cesse, et le repolissez. — (Boileau.)	Polish and repolish it continually.
--	-------------------------------------

2. When an imperative has two pronouns for regimens, one direct and the other indirect, the direct regimen is expressed first; as,

Donnez-le-moi.	Give it me.
Prêtez-le-lui.	Lend it to him.

Negatively, we would say, *Ne me le donnez pas; ne lui prêtez pas.*

3. When *moi*, *toi*, are placed after the imperative, and followed by the pronoun *en*, they are changed into *m'*, *t'*; as,

Donnez-m'en,	Give me some.	Retourne-t'en,	Go back.
--------------	---------------	----------------	----------

Note. — Observe again how a hyphen is introduced in the foregoing examples. The rule is thus laid down by *Beauzée* and *Féraud*. When the first and second persons of the imperative have for complement (or regimen) one of these words: *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *le*, *la*, *lui*, *les*, *leur*, *en*, *y*, they are joined together by a hyphen, and a second hyphen is introduced when there are two of those words as complement of the imperative. Examples: — *Donnez-moi, dépêchons-nous, accordez-la-leur, rendons-la-lui.*

But we write: *faites-moi lui parler*, and not *faites-moi-lui parler*, because *lui* is the regimen of *parler*, and not of *faites*; *venez me parler*, because *me* is not governed by *venez*, but by the infinitive *parler*.

EXERCISE CLXIX.

Listen to *me*; do not condemn *me* without a hearing. —
Ecouter * *condamner* *m'entendre*.
 Tell *me* the truth. — Don't speak to *me*. — Repeat to *them*
vérité f. *Répéter*
 continually, that, without honesty, one can never succeed in
sans cesse *on* *réussir*
 the world. — Don't repeat to *them* the same things. — Take
Prendre
them, or leave *them*, it is (all one) to *me*. — My innocence
laisser cela égal — *f.*
 is the only good that remains to *me*: leave *it* to *me*.
seul bien m. qui

V. Personal pronouns, whether direct or indirect objects, are repeated, in French, before every verb; as,

Il vous estime et vous honore. | *He esteems and honours you.*

Son visage odieux m'afflige et me poursuit. (RACINE.)

Il détourne les yeux, le plaint, et le révère. (VOLTAIRE.)

EXERCISE CLXX.

He beseeches and entreats *me*. — I say and declare to *you*. —
prier *conjurér* *

The idea that they believe him guilty, pursues, tor-
pensée f. *on croire* *coupable poursuivre* tour-
 ments, and overwhelms *him*. — He wearies and torments *us*
menter *accabler* *ennuyer* *obstéder*
 incessantly. — A ²well-educated ¹son never rebels against his
sans cesse. *bien élevé* *se révolter*
 father; he loves, honours, and respects *him*.
respecter

VI. The pronouns *it*, *they*, *them*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate things, are expressed in French by *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, when they are the subject or nominative of the verb, and by *le*, *la*, *les*, when they are in the accusative or direct object of the verb.

Be careful to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer. It is almost

unnecessary to repeat that the French language has no neuter gender, consequently inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine; so in speaking of the *rose*, which is feminine, we say *ELLE est belle*, it is beautiful; and of a book, *livre*, which is masculine, *vous a-t-IL amusé?* has it amused you?

REMARK. — When these pronouns come after a preposition, they are usually left out in French; then the preposition becomes an adverb, and conveys the idea sufficiently; as,

Approchez-vous du feu. — Je suis tout auprès.		Come near the fire. — I am quite near it.
---	--	---

EXERCISE CLXXI.

Look at that magnificent building; *it* unites grace
Regarder * *magnifique bâtiment m. réunir art. grâce f.*
 with beauty, and elegance with simplicity. — Where
à art. art. à art.
 is my pen? *It* is upon the table. — Never judge from
plume f. sur juger sur
 appearances, for *they* are often deceitful. — (There is) a
art. apparence f. car trompeur Voilà
 good book, read *it*. — My house is new; I will not sell *it*;
maison f. neuf ind-7
 but I will let *it*. — His cot was solitary; *near it*,
louer ind-7 cabane f. ind-2 isolé
 flowed a spring of pure water.
couler ind-2 source f. vif

VII. When *to it*, *to them*, relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *y*; as,

Ce tableau est très bon; mettez-y un cadre.		That picture is very good; put a frame to it.
--	--	--

But, when the pronouns *it*, *them*, are in the dative case, that is, used for *to it*, *to them*, and have reference to animals, plants, and ideal substances, in which we suppose an active principle, such as some virtues and vices, or are preceded by the verb *to owe*, or *to be indebted*, they

are translated by *lui* for the singular, and *leur* for the plural; as,

Ce chien a faim, donnez-LUI du pain.		<i>That dog is hungry, give it some bread.</i>
Ces orangers vont périr, si vous ne LEUR donnez point d'eau.		<i>These orange-trees will die, if you do not give THEM water.</i>

(For the proper place of *y*, see N.B. p. 44.)

EXERCISE CLXXII.

I study botany, and apply myself seriously to
 art. *botanique* f. pron. *s'appliquer sérieusement*
it.—History and geography are his delight, he (gives himself up)
 See R. 3d. p. 186. *délices* pl. *se livre*
to them entirely. — I leave you the care of that goldfinch;
entièrement. laisser soin m. *chardonneret* m.
 do not forget to give *it* water.—When virtue appears in all
oublier de paraître dans
 its beauty, we cannot refuse *it* our homage and respect.—
ne pouvons refuser — m.
 This book cost me (a great deal), but I (*am indebted*) to it for
coûte cher dois *
 my knowledge.
instruction f.

VIII. The pronoun *le*, which makes *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural of both genders, may supply the place of a substantive, or an adjective, or even of a member of a sentence.

When it supplies the place of a substantive or an adjective used substantively, the pronoun takes the gender and number of that substantive or adjective used substantively. In such a case, the English equivalent is almost always understood.

EXAMPLES.

Êtes-vous madame de Genlis? —		<i>Are you madame de Genlis? — I</i>
Je ne <i>la</i> suis pas.		<i>am not.</i>
Êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant? —		<i>Are you the mother of that child?</i>
Oui, je <i>la</i> suis.		<i>— Yes, I am.</i>
Êtes-vous la malade? — Je <i>la</i> suis.		<i>Are you the patient? — I am.</i>
Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes de		<i>Ladies, are you the relations of this</i>
monsieur? — Oui, nous <i>les</i> sommes.		<i>gentleman? — Yes, we are.</i>

EXERCISE CLXXIII.

Are you the sister of Colonel Abercromby? Yes, I am. —

Are you the daughter of General Rapp? No, I am not. — Are
filie

you Lady Melville? Yes, I am. — Are you the mistress of this
Lady† *maitresse*

house? I am. — Are you the ministers of the king? We are. —
ministre

Madam, are you the bride? Yes, I am. — Are those your
marée *-ce là*

servants? Yes, they are.
domestique *ce*

IX. The pronoun *le* remains invariable, when it has reference to a verb, an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively. The English equivalent, which is generally *so* or *it*, is almost always understood.

EXAMPLES.

Madame, êtes-vous malade? — Je *le* suis. | Madam, are you ill? — I am.

Êtes-vous mère? — Je *le* suis. | Are you a mother? — I am.

Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous prêtes? — | Young ladies, are you ready? —
 Oui, nous *le* sommes. | Yes, we are.

EXERCISE CLXXIV.

Madam, are you pleased with that speech? — Yes, I am. —
See p. 222. *discours m.*

Madam, are you married? Yes, I am. — Are you mistress of
marée *maitresse*

your actions? I am not. — Ladies, are you glad to have seen
bien aise

the new piece? Yes, we are. — Have we ever been so
nouveau pièce f. *jamais*

quiet as we are?
tranquille que

† Mot emprunté de l'anglais. On prononce *Lédi*. — (Acad.)

OF THE PRONOUNS *se*, *soi*.

(For the various meanings, see page 35.)

The pronoun *se* (*s'* before a vowel) is of both numbers and genders; it is always placed before the verb of which it is the regimen; as, *il se connaît*, he knows himself; *elle s'imagine*, she fancies.

Les yeux de l'amitié *se* trompent rarement. — VOLT.

The pronoun *soi* is of both genders, and is generally preceded by a preposition, or by the conjunction *que*. — When applied to persons, it is employed only in a vague and indeterminate sense; as, *Il faut prendre garde à soi*, it is necessary to take care of oneself.

Heureux qui vit chez *soi*. — LA FONTAINE.

EXERCISE CLXXV.

They lost *themselves* in the wood. — This flower is fading.
s'égarer ind-3 *fleur* f. *se flétrir*

These trees are dying. — A good deed carries its reward
se mourir *bienfait* m. *porter récompense* f.
 with *itself*. — Frankness is good of *itself*, but it has its excesses.
avec franchise f. *de* *excès* m.

When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is not fit for
*Quand * on n' * que on propre*
 society. — To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a
 * *See p. 222.* *soi*

weakness; but to be too much pleased with *ourselves* is a
faiblesse f. * *See p. 222.*
 folly.
sottise f.

RESPECTIVE PLACES OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

When a verb (the imperative *affirmative* excepted) governs two or more pronouns without a preposition, they are always placed before it, and before its auxiliary in compound tenses, in the following order: —

me, te, se, nous, vous,
le, la, les,
lui, leur,
y,

before all others.
 before *lui, leur, y, en.*
 before *y, en.*
 before *en.*

When the sentence is not interrogative, the pronoun which is the subject of the verb is always placed at the head.

EXAMPLES.

Vous ne me le conseillez pas.	You do not advise me so.
Je ne le lui dirais pas.	I would not tell it him.
Nous les en avertirons.	We shall warn them of it.
Nous lui en parlerons.	We will speak to him about it.
Ils ne s'y soumettront pas.	They will not submit to it.

In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les*, are always placed first; as, *donnez-le-moi*, give it me. *Moi* is placed after *y*; as, *menez-y-moi*, take me thither: but *nous* must precede *y*; as, *menez-nous-y*, take us thither.

EXERCISE CLXXVI.

Do not say to a friend, who asks something of you: Go, see p. 202. *
 and come again to-morrow, and I will give it you; when you
revenir *demain* * *lorsque*
 can give it him immediately. — It is certain that old
pouvoir *lui sur-le-champ.* art.
 Géronte has refused his daughter to Valère; but because he
parce qu'
 does not give her to him, (it does not follow) that he will give
il ne s'ensuit pas
 her to you. — I will give you some ²next ¹week. — I have a
en art. prochain
 letter for you. Your brother has sent it me to bring it
lettref. pour *envoyée* *pour*
 you. Give it me.

§ II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Under this head, we shall place the POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES, as we have already done, page 35.

1. *Possessive adjectives* agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined.

2. They are repeated before every noun of the same

sentence; as, *MON père, MA mère, † et MES frères sont venus*, my father, mother, and brothers have come.

3. They are repeated also before the adjectives that do not qualify the same noun; as, *MON grand et MON petit appartement*, which is equivalent to *mon grand appartement et mon petit appartement*. But I would say: *MON grand et bel appartement*, without repeating *mon*, were I speaking of an apartment both large and beautiful.

(See, p. 191 and 192, what is said upon the repetition of the article.)

EXERCISE CLXXVII.

Cyrus knew all the soldiers of *his* army, and could
 — ind-2 *soldat* † *armée* f. *pouvoir* ind-2
 designate them by *their* names. — ²Four ³things ¹(are required)
désigner nom m. on demande
 of a woman: that virtue (should dwell) in *her* heart; that
 à *femme* que § *habile* dans
 modesty (should shine) on *her* forehead; that gentleness
 § *brille* front m. § *douceur* f.
 (should flow) from *her* lips, and that work (should occupy)
découle lèvre f. § *travail* m. occupe
her hands.—*Her* father and mother are dead.—He (showed him)
 lui a montré
 both *his* fine and ugly dresses. — He showed him *his* beautiful
 * *beau vilain habits* m.
 and rich dresses.

4. The French make use of the article, and not of the possessive adjective, when the sense clearly points out who is the possessor; as,

J'AI mal à LA tête.

Pierre a reçu un coup de feu AU bras droit.

I have a pain in MY head.

Peter has received a shot in HIS right arm.

The reason of this custom is that there can be no

† *Mes père et mère, ses père et mère*, instead of *mon père et ma mère, son père et sa mère*, are phrases extremely incorrect, and though used by many people, are most certainly contrary to the principles of the French language, and are condemned by *Vaugelas, Wailly*, by the modern *Grammarians*, and finally by the *French Academy*.

‡ See *Obs.* 3d. page 36.

§ See Rule I, p. 183.

— You will cut *your* finger. — A (cannon ball)
se couper *doigt* m. *boulet de canon* m. *lui*
 carried off *his* arm. — Our carriage passed over *his*
emporter ind-3 *voiture* f. *lui* ind-3 *sur*
 body, and bruised *his* right shoulder.
corps m. *lui* *meurtrir* ind-3 *droit* *épaule* f.

8. When *its* and *their* relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, or leurs*: —

1st, When the possessor, substantive or pronoun, is expressed, as the subject, in the same member of a sentence; as,

Londres a ses beautés. | London has its beauties.

2d, When preceded by any preposition whatever; as,
 J'admire la largeur de ses rues. | I admire the width of its streets.

3d, When joined to a noun qualified by an adjective, unless the noun form the regimen; as,

Ses bâtiments réguliers plaisent | Its regular buildings please at first
 au premier coup d'œil. | sight.

4th, When joined to the subject of the verb, the latter is, or may be, followed in French by the preposition *de*; as,

Son commerce produit d'immenses ressources. | Its trade produces immense resources.

On all other occasions, *its* and *their* are expressed by *en*, before the verb, and by the article before the noun. So, still speaking of London, I would say:

La situation en est très commode pour le commerce. | Its situation is very convenient for trade.

EXERCISE CLXXIX.

A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt: (for which
coutume f. ind-2 *prodige* m. *en* aussi†
 reason) there never was a people that preserved so long
y avoir ind 3 *de* *conserver* subj-3
its usages, *its* laws, and even *its* ceremonies. — The pyramids
 — m. *pyramide* f.

† See Rule III, p. 230.

244 SYNTAX OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

of Egypt astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk,
également et *masse*
 and by the justness of *their* proportions. — The Thames is a
justesse f. —
 magnificent river: *its* channel is so wide and so deep below
superbe *lit m.* *large* *au-dessous de*
 London-bridge, that several thousand vessels lie at their ease
millier de *être* †

(in it).

g †

REMARKS.—1. *A friend of mine*; *a book of yours*, are turned in this manner in French, *un de mes amis*; *un de vos livres*. As if it were, one of my friends, one of your books; and so on with all other phrases of the same kind.

2. In speaking to a person of his relations, we generally put; *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive adjectives; as,

J'ai rencontré monsieur votre
 père.
 Comment se porte madame
 votre mère?

I met your father.

How does your mother do?

But this is a mere form of politeness, and has nothing to do with the rules of grammar.

§ III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Ce before *être*, requires this verb to be in the singular, except when it is followed by the third person plural. So we say, *C'EST moi, C'EST lui, C'EST nous, C'EST vous*. But we must say, *Ce SONT, c'étaient, ce furent, ce seront eux, elles, les parents, qui*, etc. — (*Gram. des Gram.*; *Gram. de Le Tellier*, etc.)

Such is the rule of the best grammarians, with the third person plural, however, some respectable authors use the verb *être*, sometimes in the plural, and sometimes in the singular.

† Rule 4th, p. 241.

‡ See N. B. page 44.



Ce is often used instead of *il, elle, ils, elles*, in reference to a person or thing mentioned before. *Ce* is preferred when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, accompanied by the article, or the adjective *un*; as,

Lisez Homère et Virgile; CE SONT LES plus grands POÈTES de l'an- tiquité.	Read Homer and Virgil; they are the best poets of antiquity.
C'est UN César. C'est UN Cicéron.	He is a Caesar. He is a Cicero.

But, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective without a noun, or by a noun taken adjectively, *il, elle, ils, elles*, must be used; as,

Lisez Démosthène et Cicéron; ILS sont très éloquents.	Read Demosthenes and Cicero; they are very eloquent.
J'ai vu le Louvre; IL EST magnifique, et digne d'une grande nation.	I have seen the Louvre; it is beauti- ful, and worthy of a great nation.

EXERCISE CLXXX.

It is we who have restored tranquillity. — It is you, brave rétablir

soldiers, who fought gloriously.—*It was the Egyptians*
soldat combattre ind-4 ind-3 Egyptiens
 that first observed the course of the stars, regulated
les premiers ind-3 cours m. astre m. régler
 the year, and invented arithmetic.—Read attentively Plato
année f. Lire
 and Cicero; *they are the two philosophers* of antiquity, who
philosophe
 have given us ²(the most sound and luminous) ¹ideas upon
art. sain lumineux idée f.
 morality.—I have seen the city of Edinburgh; *it is beautiful.*
morale f. ville f.

Ce qui, as the subject, and *ce que*, as the object, are much used in the sense of *what, that which, that thing which*.

When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* must be repeated in the second part of the sentence, if it begins with the verb *être*; as,

<i>Ce qui</i> m'attache à la vie, c'est vous.	What keeps me attached to life, is you.
<i>Ce que</i> je désire le plus, c'est d'aller vous voir.	What I wish most, is to come and see you.

246 SYNTAX OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The repetition of *cœ* is not indispensable when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive singular. Thus, we may say,

Ce qui mérite le plus notre admiration, c'est or est la vertu. | *That which deserves our admiration most, is virtue.*

Even in this case, however, it is better, in general, to repeat *cœ*, which gives more energy to the expression.

But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective or a past participle without a noun, the demonstrative *cœ* is not repeated; as,

Ce que vous dites est vrai. | *What you say is true.*

EXERCISE CLXXXI.

What I fear, is to displease you. — *What* pleases in the
Ce que craindre de déplaire *Ce qui dans*
 ancients, is that they have painted nature with a noble sim-
 ancien *peindre*
 plicity. — *What* we ²justly ¹admire in Racine, are those
Ce qu' on avec justice *dans*
 characters always natural and always well sustained. —
*caractère m. dans la nature * soutenu*
That which sustains man in the midst of the greatest reverses,
Ce qui soutenir à milieu m.
 is hope. — *What* I say is true.
espérance f.

Celui, celle, ceux, celles, are frequently used with the relatives *qui, que, dont, auquel, à laquelle*, in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, whoever, whichever*, etc.; as,

Heureux celui qui craint le	}	<i>Happy is he who fears the</i>
Seigneur!		<i>Lord!</i>
Celle qui aime la vertu est		<i>She who loves virtue is happy.</i>
heureuse.		

EXERCISE CLXXXII.

Happy is *he who* lives contented with his lot! — *He who* has
 * *vivre content* *See p. 222.* *sort m.*
 never been acquainted with adversity, says Seneca, has seen
 * *éprouvé* * *art.* *n'a vu*
 the world but on one side. — *She who* did it was punished.
que d' côté m. *ind-4 ind-4*

— *He who* thinks (of nobody but himself,) excuses others
ne qu'à lui-même dispenser les autres
 from thinking of him. — *He who* renders a service should
inf-l rendre doit
 forget it, *he who* receives it, remember it.
oublier s'en souvenir.

In the very familiar style, *œla* is sometimes contracted into *ça*; as, *Donnez-moi ça.* — (*Acad.*)

§ IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative pronouns *who*, *which*, and *that*, are expressed by *qui*, when they are the subject or *nominative* of a verb; as,

L'homme <i>qui</i> parle.		The man who speaks.
La dame <i>qui</i> chante.		The lady who sings.
La chaise <i>qui</i> vient.		The chaise which comes.

2. *Whom*, *which*, and *that*, are expressed by *que* when they are in the *accusative*, or in other words, the regimen or direct object of a verb; as,

L'homme <i>que</i> je vois.		The man whom I see.
Les chevaux <i>que</i> je vois.		The horses which I see.
La maison <i>que</i> j'ai.		The house that or which I have.

3. *Whom* is expressed by *qui*, when it has no antecedent, and means *what person*; as,

<i>Qui</i> appelez-vous?		Whom do you call?
Je sais <i>qui</i> vous voulez dire.		I know whom you mean.

Remember that the *s* of *que* is cut off before a vowel; *qui* is never changed.

Observation. — Should *qui* or *que* be divided from its antecedent by a noun, and any uncertainty arise as to which of the two nouns it may relate, use *lequel*, *laquelle*, instead of *qui*; as,

C'est un effet de la Providence,		It is an effect of Providence
lequel attire l'admiration.		which draws forth admiration.

Here *lequel* is preferable to *qui*, as a doubt might arise whether it was *effect* or *Providence* to which it related.

EXERCISE CLXXXIII.

Pythagoras was the first among the Greeks *who* took the
Pythagore est d'entre ait pris
 name of philosopher. — *Synonymous terms are words *which*
art. synonyme terme des mot
 signify the same thing. — (You must have) a man *that* loves
signifier Il vous faut n'
 (nothing but) truth and you, and *that* (will speak) the truth
que vous dise
 (in spite of) you. — Here is a lady *whom* you know. — Where
malgré Voici connaître
 is the horse *that* he has bought? — *Whom* shall we invite?
acheter

RULE. The relative pronoun *qui*, is always of the gender, number, and person of its antecedent; as,

Moi *qui* suis estimé.
 Elle *qui* est estimée.
 Nous *qui* sommes estimés.
 Vous *qui* riez.

I *who* am esteemed.
 She *who* is esteemed.
 We *who* are esteemed.
 You *who* laugh.

So *Molière* ought not to have said:

Ce n'est pas moi qui se ferait prier.

The antecedent of *qui* is *moi*; *qui* is therefore of the first person, and consequently requires the verb of which it is the subject to adopt that person; we must say: *qui* ME FERAIS *prier*, as we say: JE *me* *ferais prier*.

From the same principle we would say: *Vous parlez comme un homme* QUI ENTEND *la matière*, (you speak like a man who understands the subject), and not, QUI ENTENDEZ *la matière* — because the relative *qui* does not represent the pronoun *vous*, but represents the substantive *homme* which immediately precedes *qui*.

REMARK. — An adjective cannot serve as an antecedent to a relative pronoun; so, instead of saying: *Nous étions* DEUX *qui étaient du même avis*, (we were two who were of the same opinion), we must say: *Nous étions* deux *qui étions du même avis*, thus making *nous*, the subject of the preceding verb, the antecedent of the relative pronoun.

Observe that we would say: *Nous étions* **DEUX juges** *qui ÉTAIENT du même avis* (we were two judges who were of the same opinion), and not *qui ÉTIONS du même avis* — because the substantive *juges* is the antecedent of the relative *qui*.

RULE. The relative pronoun ought always to be placed near its antecedent; any other place occasions ambiguity. So *Boileau* is not to be imitated when he says:

La déesse, en entrant, qui voit la nappe mise.

He ought to have said : *la Déesse qui, en entrant, voit la nappe mise*, in order to bring the relative *qui* near its antecedent *déesse*.

EXERCISE CLXXXIV.

You *who* are esteemed. — We *who* study. — I *who* believe the
étudier *croire*
soul immortal. — The greatest men *who* were the ornament
ind-4 *ornement m.*
and glory of Greece, Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even Lycurgus
même Lycurgue
and Solon, went to learn wisdom in Egypt. — The 2^d mo-
— ind-3 * *apprendre sagesse f. en*
dern 'writers *who* attack the ancients, are children *who* beat
écrivain attaquer ancien des *battre*
their nurse. — I see only us *two who* are reasonable. — It is
nourrice. ne que *subj-1 raisonnable C'*
I *alone who* am guilty.
seul coupable.

RULE. The relative pronouns, *whom*, *that*, *which*, and also the conjunction *that*, are frequently understood in English, but *que* is always expressed in French; as,

L'homme *que* nous avons vu.

Le vin *que* nous avons bu.

Je crois que vous parlez français.

The man (whom or that) we saw.

The wine (that or which) we drank.

I think (that) you speak French.

Note.—The student will already have observed, that the English make much greater use of the ellipsis (or omission of some words) than the French, and that, in general, the words which are understood in English, are expressed in French. For previous instances of the ellipsis occurring in English, and not in French, see p. 9, 10, 21, 22, 36, 38, 57.

EXERCISE CLXXXV.

The lady you have married is my cousin. — The tea *femme* *épousée* *thé m.*
 drink is very good. — I will never forget the favour you have
prendre *oublier* *grâce f.*
 done me. — Have you received the letter I wrote to you? —
frêle *ai écrite*
 I think he will come. — Titus spent eighty millions in the
croire *dépense* *— dans*
 *public 'games he *once 'gave to the Roman' people.
jeu m. *une fois* *peuple m.*

WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, are generally expressed in French by *dont*, both in speaking of persons and things; as,

Le ciel, <i>dont</i> le secours est nécessaire.		Heaven, whose assistance is necessary.
L'homme <i>dont</i> il se plaint.		The man of whom he complains.
La maison <i>dont</i> vous parlez.		The house of which you speak.

But, when the relative requires to be separated from its antecedent, instead of *dont*, we use *duquel* and *de laquelle* in speaking of *things* or *animals*; as,

La Tamise, dans le lit *de laquelle*, etc. | *The Thames, in the bed of which*, &c.

In speaking of *persons*, it is generally a matter of indifference whether we use *de qui*, or *duquel*, *de laquelle*; as,

Le prince à la protection <i>de qui</i>		<i>The prince to whose patronage I</i>
ou <i>duquel</i> je dois ma fortune.		<i>owe my fortune.</i>

FROM WHOM is rendered by *de qui*, and not by *dont*.

N.B. *DONT* can only be used when the antecedent is expressed; for, in the beginning of an interrogative phrase, *of whom* would be rendered by *de qui*, and *of which* by *duquel*, *de laquelle*; as,

<i>De qui</i> parlez-vous?		Of whom do you speak?
<i>Duquel</i> vous plaignez-vous?		Of which do you complain?

Note.—We have said, page 41, that *dont* is never used to ask a question, that is — you never begin a question with *dont*; but, in the body of an interrogative phrase, the word is perfectly correct; as, *Où est la femme dont vous parlez?* Where is the woman *of whom* you speak?

WHOSE, used without reference to a noun expressed before, implies the word *person* understood.

If it can be changed into *of whom*, it is expressed by *de qui*; as,

<i>De qui êtes-vous fils ?</i>		Whose son are you ? i. e. of whom are you the son ?
--------------------------------	--	---

If WHOSE can be changed into *to whom*, it is expressed by *à qui*; as,

<i>À qui est ce chapeau ?</i>		Whose hat is this ? i. e. to whom does this hat belong ?
-------------------------------	--	--

EXERCISE CLXXXVI.

There is the gentleman *whose* horse has won the race. —
Voilà † *gagner pris de la course.*
 He is a man *of whom* I have a good opinion. — The lady *of whom*
C' *dame*
 you are speaking is gone. — Here is the book *of which* you
ind-1 *partir* *Voici*
 made me a present. — The daughter of Minos gave a thread to
ind-4 * *présent.* — *ind-3* *fil m.*
 Theseus, (by means) *of which* he got out of the labyrinth. —
Thésée *au moyen* *sortir* *ind-3* *labyrinthe m.*
 The people *from whom* you expect so many services deceive
gens *attendre tant de* — *tromper*
 you. — *Whose* daughter is she ? — *Whose* house is that ?

When WHOM and WHICH come after any preposition (except *of*), *whom* is expressed by *qui*, and *which* by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*; as,

Le monsieur à QUI j'écris est très riche.		The gentleman to whom I write is very rich.
Il y a un Dieu, par QUI tout est gouverné.		There is a God, by whom all things are governed.
Le cheval sur LEQUEL il est.		The horse on which he is.
La chaise dans LAQUELLE il est.		The chaise in which he is.
Le bonheur après LEQUEL j'aspire.		The happiness after which I aspire.

It follows from the foregoing rule, that *qui*, preceded by a preposition, is never said of things, but only of persons. So, we can say: *La personne à qui j'ai donné ma confiance*; but we cannot say: *Les sciences à qui je m'applique*. We must say: *Les sciences auxquelles je m'applique*.

† *Monsieur*, not *gentilhomme*, which, in the French language, means *Nobleman*.

EXERCISE CLXXXVII.

The man, *for whom* you speak, is gone to Paris. — He is a
aller C'
 friend *in whom* I put my confidence. — There are two things
en mettre confiance f. y avoir
 to which we must (accustom ourselves) under pain of finding
falloir s'accoutumer peine inf. l
 life insupportable: the injuries of time and the injustices of
injure f.
 men. — Regulus, in his expedition against Carthage, had to
Régulus ind-3
 combat a prodigious serpent, *against which* it was necessary to
*combattre m. falloir ind-3 **
 employ ²the ¹whole Roman army.

§ V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. — See p. 44.

1. Though the pronoun *ON* is generally followed by a masculine singular; as,

ON n'est pas toujours HEUREUX. | People are not always fortunate.

Yet, when it is quite evident that a female is spoken of, *on* should be followed by a *feminine* singular; as,

ON n'est pas toujours JEUNE et JOLIE. — (*Acad.*) | A woman cannot be always young and pretty.

On may likewise be followed by an adjective or substantive *plural*, when the sense clearly indicates that this pronoun relates to several persons: the verb however remains singular; as,

ON se battit en désespérés. | They fought like desperate men.

Ici on est égaux. (*Inscription sur la porte d'un cimetière.*)

2. *On* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject or nominative; as,

ON le loue, on le menace, on le caresse; mais, quoi que l'on fasse, on ne peut en venir à bout. | They praise, threaten, and caress him; but whatever they do, they cannot master him.

N. B. When *they* is used with reference to a plural noun expressed before, it is rendered in French by *ils* or *elles*, and not by *on*.

Observe also, that although *on* frequently represents *WE*, *THEY*, *PEOPLE*, which are all of the plural number, yet *on* is always followed by a verb in the *third person singular*.

3. The English have an indefinite manner of expressing themselves, by means of the *indefinite* pronoun *IT*, which the French express by *ON*, at the same time changing the verb from the passive into the active sense; as,

ON dit. *ON* pense. *ON* rapporte. | *It is said. It is thought. It is reported.*

4. *On* is much used in French as the subject of an active verb, when the passive voice is used in English. So, instead of saying as the English: *I am deceived*; — *I have been told*; the French say: *On me trompe*; — *On m'a dit*; as if it were, *They deceive me*; *They have told me*.

CHACUN, *each, every one*. This pronoun is always singular, but when preceded by a plural, it is sometimes followed by *son, sa, ses*, and sometimes by *leur, leurs*.

Chacun takes *son, sa, ses*, when it is placed after the direct regimen, or when the verb has no regimen of that nature; as,

Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes, chacun selon ses moyens.	<i>They have brought their offerings, every one according to his means.</i>
Les deux rois se sont retirés, chacun dans sa tente.	<i>The two kings have retired, each to his tent.</i>
Ils ont opiné, chacun à son tour.	<i>They voted, each in his turn.</i>

Chacun takes *leur, leurs*, when it is placed before the direct regimen; as,

Ils ont apporté, chacun, leurs offrandes.	<i>Each of them has brought his offer- ing.</i>
Ils ont donné, chacun, leur avis.	<i>Each of them gave his opinion.</i>

EXERCISE CLXXXVIII.

When a woman is handsome, she (is not ignorant of it.) —
*Quand * on on ne l'ignore pas.*

We are not slaves, to endure such ill treatment. — In
On des pour endurer de si mauvais pl.
that house, *they* laugh, play, dance, and sing. — *It is believed*
*rire danser **

that peace (will be made) this year. — *We* have been much
se fera année f. bien

deceived. — *He is said* to have succeeded. — Return those medals,
trompés. réussi. Remettre médaille f.

each to its place.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.*

§ 1. AGREEMENT of the VERB with its SUBJECT or NOMINATIVE.

GENERAL RULE.—A verb must agree with its subject in number and person; as,

Nous lisons; vous lisez.	We read; you read.	[asleep
La haine veille, et l'amitié s'endort.	Hatred is awake, and friendship is	

Observation.—When a verb has more than one subject, it is put in the plural; as,

Mon frère et lui parlent français. | My brother and he speak French.

And, should the subjects be of different persons, the verb must agree with the first person in preference to the other two, and with the second rather than with the third. In this case, the pronoun *nous* (not expressed in English) is *generally*† placed before the verb, if one of the subjects is in the *first* person; and, the pronoun *vous*,† if the *second* person is used with the *third*, without a *first* person; as,

Vous et moi, nous avons fait	You and I, have done our duty.
notre devoir. (<i>Acad.</i>)	

J'ai appris que vous et votre frère	I have heard that you and your
vous partiez bientôt. (<i>Ibid.</i>)	brother were soon to set out.

† Observe, I say *generally*, and not *always*, as most grammarians do; for *nous* or *vous* may sometimes be understood, as in this sentence of *Fénelon*: *Narbal et moi admirions la bonté des dieux.* Narbal and I were admiring the goodness of the gods.

EXERCISE CLXXXIX.

*Riches †often attract friends, and poverty keeps them
richesses pl. attirer art. éloigner

away.— Religion watches over †secret †crimes; the laws watch

* — f. veiller — m.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT. 255

over²public¹crimes.—Virgil, Horace, and Tibullus *were* friends.—

Tibulle ind-2

He and she *will go* to the country with my father. — You, *campagne* f.

your cousin, and I, *have* each a²different¹opinion. — You and
46 f.

he *shall accompany* me to the botanical garden.
accompagner

EXCEPTION.

When two subjects singular are joined by the conjunction *ou* (or, either), the verb is put in the singular; as,

Jean *ou* Jacques *le fera*. | *John or James will do it.*

When, however, the words joined by *ou* are of different persons, usage requires the verb to be in the plural, and that it should agree with the person that has priority, that is, with the first person rather than with the other two, and with the second rather than with the third; as,

Vous *ou* moi *parlerons*. | *You or I shall speak.*
Vous *ou* votre frère *viendrez*. | *You or your brother will come.*

REMARKS.

1. As *l'un et l'autre* (both), expresses plurality, the verb should be put in the plural; as,

L'un et l'autre *sont* venus. | *Both are come.*

L'un et l'autre *ont* promis. — (*Racine.*)

L'un et l'autre *ont* le cerveau troublé. — (*Boileau.*)

2. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* (neither, neither the one nor the other), and all subjects joined together by *ni* repeated, require also the verb in the plural; as,

J'ai lu vos deux discours: *ni l'un ni l'autre ne sont* bons. | *I have read your two speeches: neither the one nor the other is good.*

Ni l'or ni la grandeur *ne nous rendent* heureux. — (*La Fontaine.*)

Exception.—When one of the words united by *ni* can alone perform the action expressed by the verb, the verb is then put in the singular; as,

Ni l'un ni l'autre *n'obtiendra* le prix. | *Neither the one nor the other will obtain the prize.*

Ni M. le duc, ni M. le comte *ne sera* nommé ambassadeur à Saint-Petersbourg. | *Neither the Duke nor the Count will be appointed ambassador to St.-Petersburg.*

Observe that *Ni l'un ni l'autre* takes *ne* before the verb.

EXERCISE CXC.

It was either Pitt or Fox who *said* that.—*Either* mildness,
C' ind-1 * ind-4 *douceur* f.
or force will do it.—*Either* the one *or* the other *will write* to
ind-7
you.—It was either he *or* I that *did* that.—I send you my
ind-1 * ind-4
two servants, *both are honest.*—*Neither has done his duty.*—
domestique honnête devoir m.
Neither of them shall marry my daughter.
* * épouser

3. We have already seen (page 11) that there are two sorts of collective nouns: the *collective general*, and the *collective partitive*.—The *collective general* are those which express the totality of the persons or things of which we speak; as, *l'armée*, the army, *la foule*, the crowd; or a determinate number of those same persons or things; as, *la moitié*, the half.—The *collective partitive* are those which express only a partial number; as, *une quantité*, a quantity, *une foule*, a crowd.

La troupe de voleurs s'est introduite, the gang of thieves got in:—*Une troupe de voleurs se sont introduits*, a gang of thieves got in. In the first sentence *troupe* is a *collective general*; in the second it is a *collective partitive*.

RULE I. When a *collective general* is followed by the preposition *de* (of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun, participle, and verb, *agree with the collective general*; as,

L'armée des infidèles fut entièrement détruite.

Il a fourni LE NOMBRE d'exemplaires CONVENU.—(*Acad.*)

The army of the infidels was entirely destroyed.

He has furnished the number of copies agreed upon.

RULE II. When a *collective partitive* is followed by the preposition *de* (of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun, participle, and verb, *agree with the last noun*, because it

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT. 257

expresses the principal idea, and more particularly fixes the attention ; as,

LA PLUPART du monde le CROIT.	<i>Most people believe it.</i>
LA PLUPART des hommes le PENSENT.	<i>Most men think so.</i>
UN grand NOMBRE d'ennemis PARURENT.	<i>A great many enemies appeared.</i>
Il trouva UNE PARTIE des abricots mangés, UNE PARTIE des liqueurs BUES.	<i>He found a part of the apricots eaten, a part of the liquors drunk.</i>

Observations.—1. Adverbs of quantity, as *peu*, few; *beaucoup*, many; *assez*, enough; *plus*, more; *trop*, too many, etc. are considered as collectives partitive. Consequently we write :—

Peu de gens négligent leurs intérêts.	<i>Few people neglect their interests.</i>
Beaucoup de monde était à la promenade.	<i>Many people were walking.</i>

2. *Peu*, *beaucoup*, and *la plupart*, used by themselves, require the verb in the plural ; as,

Le sénat fut partagé, LA PLUPART VOULAIENT que ...	<i>The senate was divided, the majority wished ...</i>
--	--

The noun which here regulates the agreement of the verb is understood : *La plupart des SÉNATEURS voulaient que*, etc. ; the majority of the SENATORS wished ...

EXERCISE CXCI.

It was with James the first, that *began that series* of C' ind-1 à † *que* ind-1 *chaine* f. misfortunes which *gave* to the house of Stuart the title of *malheur* ind-4 *titre* m. unfortunate.—*A troop* of nymphs, crowned with flowers, *infortuné* *troupe* f. *nymphes* f. *de* *swam* behind her car. — *Few men reason*, and all wish to ind-2 *derrière* *char* m. *raisonner* *vouloir* * decide. — *Most* of them *were* of that opinion. * * ind-3 *avis* m.

† See Rule III. p. 195

Additional Remarks upon the General Rule.

1. When the words forming the subject are synonymous, the verb agrees, in French, with the last noun ; as,

Son courage, son intrépidité étonne les plus braves. — (Domergue.)

Synonymous nouns must never be joined, in French, by the conjunction *et*.

2. The verb agrees also with the last noun only, although the nouns be not synonymous, if we dwell more on the last than upon the others, either because it explains the preceding nouns—is more energetic, or is of such moment that the others are forgotten ; as,

Le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête. — (Racine.)

Le Pérou, le Potosé, l'Aïre est sa conquête. — (Voltaire.)

3. The verb is put in the singular, although preceded by plurals, when there is an expression which sums up all the nouns into one, such as *tout, rien, personne, nul, chacun* ; or when the conjunction *mais* is placed before the last noun, and this noun is in the singular ; as,

Paroles et regards, tout est charme dans vous. — (La Fontaine.)

Crainte, périls, rien ne m'a retenu. — (Racine.)

Non-seulement toutes ses richesses, mais toute sa vertu s'évanouit. — (Vaucluse.)

Words and looks, every thing is a charm in you.

Neither fear nor dangers, nothing could restrain me.

Not only all his riches, but all his virtue vanished.

4. When two subjects are joined by the following and similar conjunctions, *comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que*, the verb agrees with the first subject, the second being the subject of a verb understood ; as,

Cette bataille, comme tant d'autres, ne décida de rien. — (Voltaire.)

Aristophane, aussi bien que Ménandre, charmait les Grecs. — (J. B. Rousseau.)

That battle, like so many others, decided nothing.

Aristophanes, as well as Menander, delighted the Greeks.

It is as if it were :

Cette bataille ne décida de rien, comme tant d'autres batailles ne décidèrent de rien.
Aristophane charmait les Grecs, aussi bien que Ménandre charmait les Grecs.

EXERCISE CXCL

Vanity, says Pascal, is so rooted in the ²human ¹heart, that
ancré de l'homme
 a scullion, a porter even *boasts*, and *wishes* to have his
*marmiton crocheteur * se vanter vouloir **
 admirers. — Games, conversations, shows, *nothing* diverts
admirateur † jeu spectacle ne distraire
 her. — The strength of the mind, *like* that of the body, is the
force f. âme f.
 fruit of temperance. — Alcibiades, *as well as* Plato, *was*
art. Alcibiade
 among the disciples of Socrates.
au nombre de

§ II. PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

RULE. The subject or nominative is generally placed *before* the verb, in French, as in English; as,

Le maître enseigne, et l'écuyer apprend.

The master teaches, and the scholar learns.

Nous irons vous voir.

We shall come and see you.

There are a few cases in which the subject is placed *after* the verb; they are the following:—

1st, When, in any interrogative sentence, the subject is a *pronoun*; as,

Quand viendra-t-elle ?

When will she come?

But if, in asking a question, the subject of the verb is a *noun*, the noun is placed *before* the verb, and to show that a question is asked, one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, is placed immediately *after* the verb ; as,

Votre frère parle-t-il français ?

Does your brother speak French?

Vos sœurs sont-elles arrivées?

Have your sisters arrived?

Remark. — When an interrogative sentence begins with *que, à quoi, où*, we generally place the noun subject *after* the verb, without adding a pronoun to it; as,

Que fait votre frère ?

What is your brother doing?

À quoi s'occupe votre sœur ?

What is your sister busy with?

Où demeure votre oncle ?

Where does your uncle live?

(See the *Preliminary Remarks* on Interrogation, p. 82.)

260 PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

2d, When, as in English, we quote the words of another person ; as,

Que ferai-je ? dit *Télémaque*. | *What shall I do ?* said *Telemachus*.

3d, When the subjunctive mood is used without any conjunction being expressed ; as,

Fasse LE CIEL que vous soyez heureux ! | *Heaven grant you may be happy !*

Dussé-JE y périr, j'irai. | *Should I perish there, I will go.*

This turn of expression has more vivacity than if we had said : *Je souhaite QUE le ciel fasse que vous soyez heureux. QUOIQUE je dusse y périr, j'irai.*

4th, When the sentence begins with a unipersonal (or impersonal) verb, or with one of these words, AINSI, *thus, so ; TEL, such ;* as,

Il est arrivé d'heureux changements. | *Happy changes have taken place.*
Ainsi finit cette tragédie. | *Thus ended that tragedy.*

Tel fut le résultat de sa folie. | *Such was the result of his folly.*

(See Rule III. p. 230.)

5th, When the subject is followed by several words which are dependent upon it ; as in this phrase of *Fénélon* : —

Là coulent mille RUISSEAUX qui distribuent partout une eau claire. | *There flow a thousand rivulets that carry everywhere a clear water.*

This transposition of the subject is sometimes indispensable, and sometimes only the effect of taste.

EXERCISE CXIII.

The violet is the emblem of modesty. — Are they gone ?
violette f. emblème m. partir

Does your cousin often come to see you ? — What will posterity
venir

think ? — You are wrong, said her father to her. — May you
ind-7 avoir tort Pouvoir

succeed in your projects ! — ²(Great misfortunes) ¹(have hap-
réussir malheur m.

pened.) — So goes the world. — Such was his advice. — On one
monde m. avis m. D'

side was seen a river (from which) sprung islands lined with
on ind-2 où se former bordé de

lime trees in bloom.
tilleul fleuri



§ III. GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

The *regimen*, *object*, or *complement* of a verb, is a word which completes the idea begun by the verb.

There are two sorts of regimens, the one called *direct*, the other *indirect*.

The *direct regimen* denotes the immediate object of the action of the verb, without the help of any preposition, and answers to the question *qui ?* (whom?) for persons, and *quoi ?* (what?) for things ; as, *J'aime mon père*, I love my father. *J'aime, QUI ? mon père.* — *Il aime l'étude*, he likes study. *Il aime, QUOI ? l'étude.* *Mon père* and *l'étude* then are the direct regimens of the verb *aimer*, since they complete, without the help of any preposition, the idea begun by the verb.

The *indirect regimen* completes in an *indirect* manner the idea begun by the verb ; that is, it completes it only by means of a preposition expressed or understood ; it answers to the question *à qui ? de qui ? pour qui ? par qui ?* etc., for persons ; and *à quoi ? pour quoi ? de quoi ?* etc., for things ; as, *Il parle à son frère*, he speaks to his brother. *Il parle, à QUI ? à son frère.* *À son frère* is then the indirect regimen of *parler*, and completes the action expressed by that verb, by means of the preposition *à*.

The *direct regimen* corresponds to the *accusative* ; the *indirect regimen* to the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative* of the Latin.

RULE I. When a verb has two regimens, the one direct and the other indirect, the shorter must be placed first ; as,

Les hypocrites parent le vice des
dehors de la vertu.

Les hypocrites parent des dehors
de la vertu les vices les plus
honteux et les plus décriés.

Hypocrites deck vice with the ex-
terior of virtue.

Hypocrites deck with the exterior
of virtue the most shameful and
odious vices.

RULE II. If the regimens are of equal length, the direct regimen must be placed first ; as,

L'ambition sacrifie le présent à l'avenir, mais la volupté sacrifie l'avenir au présent.	Ambition sacrifices the present to the future, but pleasure sacrifices the future to the present.
--	---

EXERCISE CXCV.

He has sent a circular to all his correspondents. — He
circulaire f. *correspondant m.*
 devotes his talents to the defence of ²public ¹liberty. — Give
consacrer *pl.*
 to study all the time that you can.—I delivered the letter
étude f. *remettre ind-4*
 to the tutor of the prince. — Show your governess the
précepteur *à*
 letter that you have written.—I have given a ring to my sister.—
f.
 Alexander, in dying, said that he left his empire to the most
ind-3 *ind-2*
 worthy.

RULE III. *Passive* verbs require *de* or *par* before the noun or pronoun which they govern.

De is used, when the verb expresses an action *wholly of the mind* ; as,

L'honnête homme est estimé, même de ceux qui n'ont pas de probité.	As honest man is esteemed, even by those who have no probity.
--	---

Par is required, when the *bodily faculties* participate in the action ; as,

Carthage fut détruite par les Romains.	Carthage was destroyed by the Romans.
--	---------------------------------------

REMARK. — *Par* is also used to avoid the repetition of *de* in the same sentence ; as, *Son ouvrage a été censuré d'une manière sévère par les critiques.*

Remember that it is a **GENERAL RULE** to make every past participle used with the verb *être*, agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject of that verb.

EXERCISE CXCIV.

Your brother is honoured and respected *by* all who know
honorer ceux
 him. — (Covetous men) are tormented *with* the desire of
avare
 increasing what they have. — Bombs were invented *by*
augmenter inf-1 ce qu' bombe f. ind-3
 Gallen, a bishop of Munster, about the middle of the 16th
vers
 century. — The city of Troy was taken, plundered, and
ville f. ind-3 saccager
 destroyed *by* the Greeks, 1184 years B. C. This event
détruire avant J.-C. événement m
 has been celebrated *by* the two greatest poets of Greece and
 art.
 Italy.

†

The preposition *to*, before a second verb in the infinitive, is expressed in French, by *À*, *DE*, or *POUR*, but not indiscriminately. Sometimes also there is no preposition at all in French.

EXAMPLES.

J'aime à lire.	<i>I like to read.</i>
Je crains de tomber.	<i>I fear to fall.</i>
Je le fais pour vous obliger.	<i>I do it to oblige you.</i>
Ou laissez-moi périr, ou laissez-moi régner — (Corneille.)	<i>Either allow me to perish, or allow me to reign.</i>

It is important to observe, that when in French a preposition is required before an infinitive, it is the foregoing verb, noun, or adjective that determines which is to be used, according as that verb, noun, or adjective governs one or another preposition. This government must therefore be ascertained. This is one of the principal difficulties of the French language, and, in order to remove it, we give two Lists of Verbs with the prepositions that they respectively govern, and a third List of those Verbs that require no preposition.

† See Rule II. p. 9.

N.B. The present infinitive is used after prepositions* in French, and not the present participle; as,

Amusez-vous à lire.
Il m'empêche de le faire.

Amuse yourself with reading.
He hinders me from doing it.

The only exception is *EN*; as,

Nous causerons en marchant.
Il donna cet ordre en partant.

We shall talk as we walk.
He gave that order in going away.

LIST I. *Verbs which require the preposition À before the infinitive which follows them.*

s'Abaisser <i>à</i> ,	to stoop to.	Demander <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , †	to ask to.
aboutir <i>à</i> ,	to end in, tend to.	destiner <i>à</i> ,	to destine to.
s'accorder <i>à</i> ,	to agree in.	se déterminer <i>à</i> ,	to resolve upon.
accoutumer <i>à</i> ,	to accustom to.	disposer <i>à</i> ,	to dispose to.
aider <i>à</i> ,	to help to, assist in.	donner <i>à</i> ,	to give to.
aimer <i>à</i> ,	to like to. [with.	s'Efforcer <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , †	(physical) to endeavour to.
s'amuser <i>à</i> ,	to amuse oneself	employer <i>à</i> ,	to employ to, use to.
animer <i>à</i> ,	to animate to.	s'empreser <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , †	to be eager to.
s'appliquer <i>à</i> ,	to apply to.	encourager <i>à</i> ,	to encourage to.
apprendre <i>à</i> ,	to learn to.	engager <i>à</i> ,	to induce to.
s'apprêter <i>à</i> ,	to get ready to.	enhardir <i>à</i> ,	to embolden to.
aspirer <i>à</i> ,	to aspire to.	enseigner <i>à</i> ,	to teach to.
s'attendre <i>à</i> ,	to expect to.	s'étudier <i>à</i> ,	to study to.
autoriser <i>à</i> ,	to authorise to.	exceller <i>à</i> ,	to excel in.
avoir <i>à</i> ,	to have to.	exciter <i>à</i> ,	to excite to.
Balancer <i>à</i> ,	to hesitate to.	exercer <i>à</i> ,	to exercise in.
Chercher <i>à</i> ,	to seek to.	exhorter <i>à</i> ,	to exhort to.
commencer <i>à</i> , †	to begin to.	exposer <i>à</i> ,	to expose to.
condamner <i>à</i> ,	to condemn to.	se Fatiguer <i>à</i> ,	to get tired with.
condescendre <i>à</i> ,	to condescend to.	forcer <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , †	to force to, compel
consentir <i>à</i> ,	to consent to.	Gagner <i>à</i> ,	to gain by. [to.
consister <i>à</i> ,	to consist in.	Habituer <i>à</i> ,	to accustom to.
continuer <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , †	to continue to.	haïr <i>à</i> ,	to hate to.
contraindre <i>à</i> , <i>de</i> , †	to compel to.	se hasarder <i>à</i> ,	to venture to.
contribuer <i>à</i> ,	to contribute to.		

* To ascertain which preposition to use, consult the Lists.

† Some writers occasionally use *de*, and establish a shade of difference between *commencer à* and *commencer de*; but, according to the latest decisions of the *French Academy*, *à* may be properly used in all cases.

‡ As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid several *a*, and *a* to avoid several *de*.

§ *À* or *de*, as it sounds best in the active sense, but always *de* in the passive.

hésiter à, to hesitate to.	persistir à, to persist in.
Inviter à, to invite to.	se plaire à, to delight in.
se Mettre à, to set about to, be-	préparer à, to prepare to.
montrer à, to show to. [gin to.	provoquer à, to incite to. [to.
Obliger à, de, † to oblige to.	Recommencer à, to begin again
s'obstiner à, to persist in.	renoncer à, to renounce to.
s'offrir à, to offer to.	se résoudre à, to resolve to.
oublier à, to forget how.	réussir à, to succeed to, in.
Parvenir à, to succeed in.	Servir à, to serve to.
passer à, to spend in.	songer à, to think of.
penser à, to think of.	Tâcher à, to aim at.
perdre à, to lose in.	tendre à, to tend to.
persévérer à, to persevere in.	Viser à, to aim at.

EXERCISE CXCVI.

I shall not stoop to justify myself.—He likes to be flattered.—
ne point se justifier.

He amuses himself with making ²chemical ¹experiments.—
pr. art de chimie expérience

I expect to meet with many difficulties.—I have to thank
* bien des

you.—I begin to understand.—Liberality consists less in giving
comprendre.

much, than in giving seasonably.—He is asking to come in.—
beaucoup à propos. entrer.

They encouraged me to continue.—The example of his ancestors
ind-3 ancêtre

excites him to distinguish himself.—I offer to serve you.—Prepare
se distinguer.

yourself to receive him.

-vous

LIST II. Verbs which require the preposition DE before the
infinitive which follows them.

s'Abstenir de, to abstain from.	s'affliger de, to be grieved at.
accuser de, to accuse of.	ambitionner de, to be ambitious to.
achever de, to finish to.	appréhender de, to fear to.
affecter de, to affect to.	avertir de, to warn to.

† A or de, as it sounds best; but with the meaning of doing a service, or in a
pacific sense, always de.

s'aviser <i>de</i> ,	to bethink of.	se Hâter <i>de</i> ,	to hasten to.
Blâmer <i>de</i> ,	to blame for.	Manquer <i>de</i> ,	to fail to.
brûler <i>de</i> ,	to be impatient to.	menacer <i>de</i> ,	to threaten to.
Cesser <i>de</i> ,	to cease to.	mériter <i>de</i> ,	to deserve to.
charger <i>de</i> ,	to charge to.	Négliger <i>de</i> ,	to neglect to.
commander <i>de</i> ,	to command to.	Offrir <i>de</i> ,	to offer to.
conjurér <i>de</i> ,	to conjure to.	omettre <i>de</i> ,	to omit to.
conseiller <i>de</i> ,	to advise to.	ordonner <i>de</i> ,	to order to.
convenir <i>de</i> ,	to agree to.	oublier <i>de</i> ,	to forget to.
craindre <i>de</i> ,	to fear to.	Pardonner <i>de</i> ,	to forgive for.
Défendre <i>de</i> ,	to forbid to.	permettre <i>de</i> ,	to permit to.
défier <i>de</i> ,	to defy to.	persuader <i>de</i> ,	to persuade to.
se dépêcher <i>de</i> ,	to make haste to.	se piquer <i>de</i> ,	to pretend to.
désespérer <i>de</i> ,	to despair to, of.	plaindre <i>de</i> ,	to pity to, for.
différer <i>de</i> ,	to defer to, to de-	prescrire <i>de</i> ,	to prescribe to.
dire <i>de</i> ,	to tell to. [lay to.	presser <i>de</i> ,	to press to, urgeto.
discontinuer <i>de</i> ,	to discontinue to.	prier <i>de</i> ,	to request to.
disconvenir <i>de</i> ,	to disown to.	promettre <i>de</i> ,	to promise to.
dispenser <i>de</i> ,	to dispense with.	proposer <i>de</i> ,	to propose to.
dissuader <i>de</i> ,	to dissuade from.	Recommander <i>de</i> ,	to recommend
Écrire <i>de</i> ,	to write to. [vous to.	refuser <i>de</i> ,	to refuse to. [to.
s'efforcer <i>de</i> ,	(moral) to endeavour.	regretter <i>de</i> ,	to regret to.
empêcher <i>de</i> ,	to prevent to.	se réjouir <i>de</i> ,	to rejoice to.
entreprendre <i>de</i> ,	to undertake to.	remercier <i>de</i> ,	to thank for.
essayer <i>de</i> ,	to try to.	se repentir <i>de</i> ,	to repent of, to.
s'étonner <i>de</i> ,	to be astonished at.	reprocher <i>de</i> ,	to reproach for.
éviter <i>de</i> ,	to avoid to.	résoudre <i>de</i> ,	to resolve to.
excuser <i>de</i> ,	to excuse for.	rire <i>de</i> ,	to laugh at.
exempter <i>de</i> ,	to exempt from.	risquer <i>de</i> ,	to run the risk to.
Feindre <i>de</i> ,	to feign to.	rougir <i>de</i> ,	to blush to.
féliciter <i>de</i> ,	to congratulate upon.	Soupçonner <i>de</i> ,	to suspect to.
finir <i>de</i> ,	to finish to.	se souvenir <i>de</i> ,	to remember to.
se flatter <i>de</i> ,	to flatter oneself to.	suggérer <i>de</i> ,	to suggest to.
se Garder <i>de</i> ,	to take care not to.	supplier <i>de</i> ,	to entreat to.
se glorifier <i>de</i> ,	to glory in.	Tâcher <i>de</i> ,	to endeavour to.
gronder <i>de</i> ,	to scold for.	se Vanter <i>de</i> ,	to boast of.

REMARK. — Verbs generally require, before a noun, the same preposition that they require before an infinitive; as,

Il faut accoutumer les enfants à
obéir — à l'obéissance.
Je l'accuse de négliger ses études.
Je l'accuse de négligence.

We must accustom children to obey
— to obedience.
I accuse him of neglecting his stu-
dies. I accuse him of negligence.

EXERCISE CXCVII.

Abstain from injuring your enemies. — The courtiers of Darius
nuire à sing. *courtisan* —
accused Daniel *of* having violated the laws of the Persians. —
 ind-2 — *violier* *Perse*
 Your brother *will* never *cease* to think of you. — Zerbinette has
 ind-7
charged me to come and tell you that . . — God *commands* us to
 * *que* . .
 love him. — I *would* *advise* you to speak to him. — Reason
conseiller
forbids us to commit an injustice. — Who *told* you to do it?
faire ind-4
 He has *undertaken* to translate Homer.
traduire

EXERCISE CXCVIII.

I *shall* not *fail* to do what you wish. — I *ordered* him to
ce que *vouloir* ind-4
 go and see him. — You *forgot* to come this morning. — They
 * ind-4 *matin* m. On
 have *persuaded* him to marry. — I *promise* to observe what
lui *se marier*.
 the law *orders* me. — We should *blush* to commit faults,
ordonner *Il faut* *commettre* pr. art.
 but not to acknowledge them. — I will *endeavour* to satisfy you. —
non *avouer* *tâcher*
 General Desaix *contributed* to the gaining of the battle of
 ind-3 *gain* m. *bataille* f.
 Marengo. — I *thank* you for your kindness. — *Make* *haste* to
bonté f.
 breakfast. — I *congratulate* myself on having made so good a
me
 choice. — The king *orders* me to set out with the fleet —
choix m. *partir*
 Recommend to your children to shun vice, to love virtue.
fuir m.

LIST III. *Verbs which require no preposition in French before the infinitive which follows them, whether a preposition be used in English or not.*

Aimer mieux,*	to like better.	{ J'aime mieux voir mon fils. (J. B. Rousseau.)
Aller,	to go.	Le Rhin ira grossir la Loire. (Boileau.)
Compter,	to intend.	Il compte partir demain. (Acad.)
Croire,	to think.	Elle croyait servir l'état. (Bossuet.)
Daigner,	to deign.	Daignez leur parler. (Boileau.)
Devoir,	to owe.	{ Le jour qui doit nous rendre heureux. (L. Racine.)
Entendre,	to hear.	J'en ai entendu parler. (Acad.)
Espérer,†	to hope.	{ Il espère revivre en sa postérité. (Racine.)
Faire,	to make, to cause.	Je le fis nommer chef. (Le même.)
Falloir,	to be necessary.	Il faut voir. (Acad.)
s'Imaginer,	to fancy.	Il s' imagine être un grand docteur. (Ib.)
Laisser,	to leave, to let.	Il laisse opprimer l'innocence. (Rac.)
Oser,	to dare.	{ Qui suis-je pour oser murmurer? (L. Racine.)
Paraître,	to appear.	Il paraît être satisfait. (Acad.)
Pouvoir,	to be able.	Rien ne peut prospérer sur des terres ingrates. (L. Racine.)
Prétendre,	to pretend.	Il prétend donner la loi. (Acad.)
Savoir,	to know.	{ Je sais lire et écrire. (Molière, le Bourgeois gentilhomme.)
Sembler,	to seem.	{ L'ennui semble dire aux humains . . . (Voltaire.)
Souhaiter,‡	to wish.	{ Je souhaiterais pouvoir vous obliger. (Acad.)
Valoir mieux,*	to be better.	Il vaut mieux attendre un peu. (Ibid.)
Venir,§	to come.	Je viens adorer l'Éternel. (Racine.)
Voir,	to see.	Il n'aime pas à voir souffrir. (Acad.)
Vouloir,	to be willing.	{ Voulez-vous du public mériter les amours? Sans cesse en écrivant variez vos discours. (Boil.)

* *Aimer mieux* ; *valoir mieux*, followed by two verbs in the infinitive, require *de* before the second infinitive: *J'aimerais mieux mourir, que de faire une si mauvaise action.* — *Il y a beaucoup d'occasions où il vaut mieux se taire que de parler.*

† *Espérer*, being in the present infinitive, and followed by another verb also in the present infinitive, requires *de*: *Peut-on espérer de vous revoir?*

‡ *Venir* in the sense of *to be just, to have just*, requires *de* before the next infinitive; when used for *to happen*, it requires *à*; as,

Il vient de sortir. *He is just gone out.*
S'il venait à mourir. *If he should happen to die.*

EXERCISE CXCI.

I like better *vous* to pardon than to punish you.—She is going to sing.—When do you *intend* to go?—A man of honour *ought* to *Quand* *partir* *ind-1* keep his word. — I *hope* to see you often. — I will *show* you *parole f.* *faire voir* all the curiosities of the town. — He *appeared* to hesitate, but *curiosité f.* *ind-2* we encouraged him. — My sister *wishes* very much to go to *ind-3* France. — *It is better* to work than to beg. — Cæsar ordered *Labienus* to *come* and join him. — She *will* not stay. *a* *** *restler.*

General Rule for the use of POUR.

To, before an INFINITIVE, is expressed by POUR, when *in order to*, is either expressed or understood in English; as.

Je suis venu pour le complimenter. | ***I came in order to congratulate him.***
Je vais à la campagne pour chasser. | ***I am going into the country to shoot.***

The English present participle, preceded by the preposition **FOR**, explaining the motive of an action, is also expressed in French by the **INFINITIVE** with **POUR**; as,
Il a été chassé **POUR** avoir menti. | *He was expelled FOR telling lies.*

EXERCISE CC.

They ²all ¹agree *s'accorder* to deceive me. — I come *to* tell you that
your brother has arrived. — I was going to write to you
est
to ask a favour of you. — I want money *to* buy a horse. —
*grâce f. * ai besoin d'*
I have not ²money ¹enough *to* buy one. — I shall do it *in order*
en
not *to* displease you. — I have done all (I could) *to* gain his
déplaire non possible
friendship. — He was banished for life *for having* robbed on
ind-3 bannir à perpétuité voler
the highway.
grand chemin.

§ IV. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

The **INDICATIVE mood** simply declares a thing; as, *Elle chante bien*, she sings well; or it asks a question; as, *CHANTE-t-elle bien?* does she sing well? This mood has eight tenses — the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterite definite*, the *preterite indefinite*, the *preterite anterior*, the *pluperfect*, the *future absolute* (or *simple*), and the *future anterior*.

The **PRESENT tense** expresses something doing or existing at the present time; as, *J'écris*, I am writing; *Nous sommes*, we are. It is also used to express a *habit* or *custom*; as, *Il fume*, he smokes.

In historical narration, the *present* tense is used for the *past*, in order to awaken the attention, and make the thing, as it were, present; as,

César quitte la Gaule, passe le
Rubicon, et entre en Italie
avec cinq mille hommes.

Cæsar leaves Gaul, crosses the
Rubicon, and enters Italy with
five thousand men.

The *present* is also sometimes used to express a *future* near at hand; as,

Je suis de retour dans un moment.
Où ALLEZ-VOUS ce soir?

I shall be back in a moment.
Where are you going this evening?

N.B. In English there are *three* different ways of expressing the **PRESENT**: *I speak*, *I do speak*, *I am speaking*; but in French there is only one way, *Je parle*. There is likewise but one expression in French for any other tense, when the verb *to be* is used with the present participle; thus, *I shall be writing*, must be rendered by *j'écrirai*, and *I should be doing* by *je ferais*. The verb which is in the present participle is thus put in the tense expressed by the auxiliary *to be*.

EXERCISE CCL.

My sister *is* in her room, where she *is reading* the celebrated
discourse of Bossuet on Universal History. — Every body
discours m.

thinks that either ³your ⁴brother ²or ¹you have written that song.
penser *

— It ²seldom ¹rains in Egypt. — Seamen *smoke* a great deal. —
en marin beaucoup.

The battle *begins*, and immediately a cloud of arrows *darkens*
aussitôt nuée f. trait m. obscurcir
the air, and *covers* the combatants. — I *shall be* with you in a
à la

minute. — I *set out* to-morrow for the country.
partir

The IMPERFECT (*je parlais*, I was speaking, I spoke, I did speak, I used to speak) expresses a thing having been done at the moment that another took place; as,

Je PENSÂIS à vous, quand vous êtes entré.	I was thinking of you, when you came in.
--	---

It is also used when we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated*; as,

Quand j'étais à Paris, je me PRO- MENAIS ordinairement dans les Champs Élysées.	When I was in Paris, I generally walked in the Champs Élysées.
J'y RENCONTRAIS souvent des Anglais.	I often met Englishmen there.

Finally, the *imperfect* is used in describing the *qualities* of persons or things, the *state*, *place*, and *disposition* in which they were in a *time past*, but without fixing the time of its duration; as,

Alfred était un grand roi.	Alfred was a great king.
Carthage était sur le bord de la mer.	Carthage was on the sea-coast.

Nota. — Suppose you have to translate into French, *I spoke, I wrote*, and you are in doubt whether to use the Imperfect or Preterite, see whether you can turn the expression into, *I used to speak, I used to write*, or into, *I was speaking, I was writing* — if you can, the Imperfect is your tense. This rule is infallible.

EXERCISE CCH.

Montezuma *reigned* over the Mexicans, when Fernando
régnait *lorsque Fernand-*
Cortez attacked Mexico. — Socrates, wishing to harden himself,
ind-3 *s'endurcir*

went barefoot in the depth of winter. — In ^{plus fort}ancient ^{ancien}times,
 those who were taken in war ^àlost their liberty and ^{devenir}became slaves.
 — Among the Romans, the plebeians ^{Chez}attached themselves, under ^{plébéen}
 the name of clients, to some patrician whom they ^{s'}called their
 patron. — The temple of Delphi ^{quelque patricien}had for an inscription this
 maxim: ^{Delphes}KNOW THYSELF. — The pyramids of Egypt ^{*}were
 intended as ^{Connaiss-toi toi-même.}burying-places for the kings.
^{destiner à art.}destined to sepulture f. s. de

The PRETERITE DEFINITE (*je parlai, je reçus*) serves to express something done at a time completely past, and of which no part remains unexpired; hence it cannot be used when speaking of any thing done during the present day, week, month, year, or century; as,

J'écrivis hier à Bordeaux.

Nous nous rencontrâmes l'année dernière à Genève.

I wrote yesterday to Bordeaux.

We met last year at Geneva.

As the events related in history are considered as facts, completed in a time entirely elapsed, the *preterite definite* is principally used in that style; as,

Les Juifs quittèrent l'Égypte sous la conduite de Moïse.

The Jews left Egypt under the conduct of Moses.

EXERCISE CCIII.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a
^{dessein m. inf-l de}conqueror. He *set about* it after the manner of the Egyptians,
conquérant. ^{s'y prendre à manière f.}that is, with great ideas. All the children who were born
^{c'est-à-dire}*on the same day as* ^{pensée f.}Sesostris, *were brought to court,* by order
^{*}*que Sesostris amener art. cour f.*of the king: he *had* them educated as his own children, and
^{faire}*élèver* inf-l

with the same care as Sesostris. When he *was* grown up,
soin pl. que grand
 he ²made ¹him serve his apprenticeship in a war against the
lui faire apprentissage m. par
 Arabs. This young prince learned there to bear hunger and
Arabe y supporter faim f.
 thirst, and subdued that nation, till then invincible. He
soif f. soumettre jusqu'
²afterwards ¹attacked Libya, and conquered it.
ensuite Libye f.

EXERCISE CCIV.

After these successes, Sesostris *formed* the project of
succès m.
 subduing the ²whole ¹world. In consequence of this, he
*subjuguier inf-1 entier En * **
entered Ethiopia, which he *made* tributary (to him.) He
dans Ethiopie 2rendre 3 1se
continued his victories in Asia. Jerusalem *was* the first to feel
Jérusalem f. d
 the force of his arms: the rash Rehoboam *could* not
arme f. téméraire Roboam
²resist ¹him, and Sesostris *carried away* the riches of Solomon.
lui enlever richesse pl. Salomon.
 He *penetrated* into the Indies farther than Alexander *did*
Indes ne
 afterwards. The Scythians ²obeyed ¹him as far as the
ensuite. Scythe lui jusqu'à
 Tanais: Armenia and Cappadocia *were* subject to him. In
Cappadoce f. sujettes En
 a word, he *extended* his empire from the Ganges to
mot m. étendre — m. depuis Gange m. jusqu'à
 the Danube. — (BOSSUET.)

The PRETERITE INDEFINITE (*j'ai parlé*) is the past tense most used in French; it expresses something done in the course of the day, week, month, year, or century in which we are; as,

J'AI REÇU cette semaine la visite de monsieur votre père.	I have <i>this week</i> received a visit from your father.
Je lui AI ÉCRIT ce matin.	I wrote to him <i>this morning</i> .

274 OF THE PRETERITE ANTERIOR, ETC.

The *Preterite indefinite* is also used in speaking of a past action, without *specifying* the TIME in which it happened ; as,

J'AI VENDU mon cheval.	I have sold my horse.
Il A VOYAGÉ en Allemagne.	He has travelled in Germany.
J'en AI PARLÉ à votre maître.	I mentioned it to your master.

This tense is sometimes used instead of the *future* ; as,

AVEZ-VOUS bientôt FAIT ?	Will you have done soon ?
Attendez, j'AI FINI dans un moment.	Wait, I shall have done in a moment.

The PRETERITE ANTERIOR (*j'eus parlé*) denotes a thing past and done before another also past, and is, for this reason, called *anterior*. It is generally preceded by a conjunction, or an adverb of time, such as *quand*, *lorsque*, *dès que*, *aussitôt que* ; as,

Quand j'EUS RECONNU mon erreur, j'en fus honteux.	When I had seen my error, I was ashamed of it.
---	--

Note. — There is another *preterite*, called the *preterite anterior indefinite* : *J'ai eu parlé*, *tu as eu parlé*, etc., but it is little used.

The PLUPERFECT (*j'avais parlé*) represents a thing as *past* before another event happened ; as,

J'avais dîné quand il entra.	I had dined when he came in.
------------------------------	------------------------------

This tense, like the imperfect, serves to describe, and to express repetition, habit or custom ; as,

Dès que j'avais dîné j'allais à la pêche.	As soon as I had dined I went a fishing.
---	--

EXERCISE CCV.

I was (at your house) this morning ; I saw your brother, and *chez vous*
spoke to him. — We have written to him to-day. — The ²present *je* *aujourd'hui.* *actual*
 1st century began on the first day of the year 1801, and will end *année f.* *finir*
 on the last day of the year 1900. — He resided six months *demeurer*
 at Rome. — When I had done that, I set out. — I had finished *partir*
 my work when he arrived. — During his stay in the country, *Pendant séjour m. à*
 as soon as he had breakfasted, he went a hunting.

The FUTURE ABSOLUTE (*je parlerai*, I shall or will speak) represents the action as yet to come ; as, *Je vous ÉCRIRAI*, I shall write to you.

The FUTURE ANTERIOR (*j'aurai parlé*) intimates that a thing will be done before another takes place ; as,

J'aurai fini mon thème avant votre retour.	I shall have finished my exercise before your return.
---	--

N.B. The English often use the *present* tense after *when*, *as soon as*, *after*, or similar words, when they want to express a thing to come : the FUTURE, however, must always be used in French ; as,

Passes chez moi, quand vous serez prêt.	Call on me when you are ready.
--	--------------------------------

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

The CONDITIONAL *mood* has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

The *Conditional present* (*je parlerais*, I should or would speak) expresses that a thing would be done on a certain condition ; as,

J'irais avec vous si j'avais le temps.	I would go with you if I had time.
---	---------------------------------------

The *Conditional past* (*j'aurais parlé*, or *j'eusse parlé*†) expresses that a thing *might, could, would, or should*, have happened, at a time now passed, if another thing had taken place ; as,

Le ministre lui AURAIT DONNÉ cette place, s'il l'avait demandée.	The minister would have given him that place, if he had asked for it.
---	--

REMARK. — When *SI* (if) signifies *supposé que* (suppose that), the French use the present indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the conditional ; as,

J'irai demain à la campagne, s'il fait beau.	I shall go to the country to-morrow, if it be fine weather.
Si j'ALLAIS en France, je vous en préviendrais.	If I should go to France, I will let you know.

† Some writers often use this form, but the student will do well to follow the first.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The IMPERATIVE mood commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits. It has only one tense.

EXERCISE CCVL

I shall wait for you till six o'clock. — *When I have done,*
attendre jusqu'à heure
 I shall go out. — I will call on you, as soon as I have dined. —
passer chez aussitôt que
 I would sing, if I could. — I should have found him (at home),
chez lui
 if I had arrived a little sooner. — *If he should come, what*
être plus tôt.
 should I say to him? — Do good, if you wish to be
art. bien m. vouloir
 happy; do good, if you wish that your memory should be
subj-I
 honoured; do good, if you wish that heaven should open to
art. subj-I
 you its eternal gates.
porte f.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The INDICATIVE is the mood of affirmation, and the SUBJUNCTIVE that of doubt and indecision.

The Subjunctive is used:—

I. After any verb expressing *doubt, fear, surprise, admiration, will, wish, desire, consent, or command*; because then this verb denotes nothing affirmative, nothing positive with regard to the following verb; as,

Il veut, il exige, il désire que		<i>He wishes, he requires, he desires</i>
VOUS FASSIEZ votre devoir.		<i>you to do your duty.</i>

There is an uncertainty whether you will comply with his wish, his request, or his desire.

II. After an *interrogation*, and after a verb accompa-

nied by a *negation*, because then there is doubt, uncertainty, etc.; as,

Croyez-vous qu'il vienne ?	Do you think he will come ?
Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne.	I do not think he will come.

REMARK. ¶ — Sometimes an interrogation is used only to affirm or deny with more energy. In this case, the second verb is put in the *Indicative*, because there is no doubt expressed; as,

CROYEZ-VOUS que les Limousins sont des sots ?	Do you think that the Limousins (in- habitants of Limoges) are block- heads ?
--	---

That is: —

Are you simple enough to believe that the Limousins are blockheads?

III. After unipersonal verbs, or those used unipersonally; as,

Il convient qu'il vienne.	It is proper that he should come. [there.
Il importe que vous y soyez.	It is of importance that you should be

REMARK. — *Il semble*, accompanied by an indirect regimen of persons, *il y a*, *il paraît*, *il résulte*, and some other unipersonal verbs which express something positive, follow this rule when used *negatively* or *interrogatively*, else they require the *Indicative*; as,

Il me semble	} qu'il a raison.	It seems to me	} that he is right.
Il vous semble		It seems to you	
Il paraît		It appears	
Il est sûr		It is certain	

EXERCISE CCVII.

I tremble lest he should come. — I wish you may succeed. —
qu' ne souhaiter

I consent that you do it. — Do you think it will rain to-day? —
croire

I do not think it will rain much. — Although the wicked some-
Quoique

times prosper, do not think that they are happy. — ¶ Do you
penser

believe that the guilty man sleeps tranquilly, and that he
coupable * tranquille

can stifle the remorse with which he is racked?—*It is enough*
étouffer remords pl. *dont* déchirer *suffire*
 that you order me. — *I think I see him.* — It often
commander *Il me semble*
happens that we are deceived.
arriver *on*

IV. The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où*, etc., when they are preceded by *peu*, or by an adjective in the *superlative relative degree*. Among such adjectives are included *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*; as,

Il y a PEU d'hommes qui SACHENT supporter l'adversité.	<i>There are few men who can support adversity.</i>
Le MEILLEUR cortège qu' un roi FUISSE avoir, c'est le cœur de ses sujets.	<i>The best retinue that a king can have is the love of his subjects.</i>
Le chien est LE SEUL animal dont la fidélité SOIT à l'épreuve.	<i>The dog is the only animal whose fidelity is proof.</i>
C'est LA SEULE place où vous pussiez aspirer.	<i>It is the only place to which you can aspire.</i>

V. The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où*, etc., when we wish to express something doubtful and uncertain; as,

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me RENDRE ce service.	<i>I seek some one who may render me that service.</i>
Je sollicite une place que je FUISSE remplir.	<i>I solicit a place which I may be able to fill.</i>
J'irai dans une retraite où je sois tranquille.	<i>I shall retire to a place where I may be quiet.</i>

It is possible that the person I am seeking may not render me that service; that I may not be able to fill the place I solicit; and, that I may not be tranquil in the retreat where I shall go; it is the subjunctive that expresses this doubt and uncertainty.

Observe that we could also say: *qui me RENDRA ce service; que je PEUX remplir; où je SERAI tranquille*; but the sense would no longer be the same: the action marked by the verbs *rendre, pouvoir*, and *être*, would then be represented as certain and positive.

VI. The *Subjunctive* is required after *quel que, quelque . . . que, qui que, quoi que*; as,

<i>Quels que</i> soient vos talents.	<i>Whatever your talents may be.</i>
<i>Quelque</i> riche <i>que</i> vous soyez.	<i>However rich you may be.</i>
<i>Qui que</i> vous soyez, parlez.	<i>Whoever you be, speak.</i>

Quoi qu'on dise, un ânon ne deviendra qu'un âne.—(Grozelier.)

(See what has already been said on *quelque*, p. 51–52.)

Finally, The *Subjunctive* is required after certain conjunctions, see Chapter VIII.

EXERCISE CCVIII.

He is the *only* man *who lives* in that manner.—The example
C' de la sorte.

of a good life is the *best* lesson that one can give to
vie f. on art.

mankind. — The siege of *Azoth* lasted 29 years: it is the
genre humain m.

longest siege mentioned in ancient history. — Show me
DONT être question

a road that will lead to London. — *However* clever
chemin m. qui conduire habile

²(those two writers) ¹be, neither the one nor the other will
écrivain

obtain† the vacant seat in the French Academy.—*Whatever*
place f. à Quoi que

you study, you must (apply yourself to it) with ardour.
il vous y livrer

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND
THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

The *Subjunctive* mood being always subordinate to a verb that precedes it, its tenses are *regulated* by this *foregoing verb*; as,

Je ne crois pas que vous <i>veniez</i> .	<i>I do not think you will come.</i>
Je ne croyais pas que vous <i>vin-</i> siez.	<i>I did not think you would come.</i>

† See *Remarks on Neither*, p. 255.

RULE I. After the present and future of the Indicative, we use the *present* of the Subjunctive to express a thing present or future; but we use the *preterite* of the Subjunctive to express a thing past:—

Je doute	}	que vous <i>étudiez</i> maintenant.
Je douterai		
Je doute	}	que vous <i>ayez étudié</i> hier.
Je douterai		

REMARK.— After the present and future of the Indicative, we use the *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive instead of the present, and the *Pluperfect* instead of the preterite, when some conditional expression is introduced in the sentence:—

Je doute	}	que vous <i>étudiassiez</i> maintenant, demain, si l'on
Je douterai		
Je doute	}	que vous <i>eussiez étudié</i> hier, si l'on ne vous y
Je douterai		

EXERCISE CCIX.

*Do you doubt that I am your friend? — Does he think I shall have time? — I don't think you have learned mathe- art. art. matics. — He will wait till you are ready. — She will wish que vouloir que your sister to be one of the party. — I shall always doubt that * partie f. you have used all your endeavours. — Do you think I might faire effort m. pouvoir speak to him, were I to go now? — I doubt whether my si y ind-2 que brother would have succeeded, (had it not been for) your réussir assns assistance.*

RULE II. After the Imperfect, the Pluperfect, any of the Preterites or Conditionals, we use the *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive, if we mean to express a thing present

or future ; but to express a thing that is past, we use the *Pluperfect* : —

Je doutais	}	que vous <i>étudiassiez</i> aujourd'hui, demain.
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais		
J'aurais douté	}	que vous <i>eussiez étudié</i> la semaine passée.
Je doutais		
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais	}	
J'aurais douté		

REMARK. — With a *Preterite indefinite* the following verb is put in the *Present* of the Subjunctive, if we intend to express a thing which is, or may be done at all times; as,

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transpa- rentes au dehors, afin que l'on puisse voir à travers.		God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.
---	--	---

And in the *Preterite* of the Subjunctive, if we intend to express something past; as,

Il a fallu qu'il se soit donné bien de la peine.		He must have given himself a great deal of trouble.
---	--	--

EXERCISE CCX.

He *was waiting* till I *should be* ready. — *Would you wait* till
attendre que *que*
 we *should be* ready? — Sparta *was* sober before Socrates *had*
Sparte avant que
praised sobriety; before he *had praised* virtue, Greece abounded
avant qu' abonder
 in virtuous men. — William III. *left*, at his death, the reputa-
laisser
 tion of a great politician, although he *had not been* popular,
politique populaire
 and of a general (to be feared), although he *had lost* many
à craindre,
 battles. — You must *have had* (a great deal) of patience.
Il a fallu beaucoup

OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The *Present Participle* always terminates in *ant*, and is invariable : —

Un homme lisant ; des hommes lisant.	A man reading ; men reading.
Une femme lisant ; des femmes lisant.	A woman reading ; women reading.

We say, however : —

Des hommes obligeants ; une femme charmante.	Obliging men ; a charming woman.
--	----------------------------------

But the words *obligeants*, *charmante*, are not here present participles ; they are *verbal* adjectives.

We call *verbal* adjectives, those adjectives which are derived from verbs ; as, *charmant*, *menaçant*, &c. These adjectives always agree in gender and number with the nouns which they qualify.

The verbal adjective simply expresses a *quality* ; the present participle expresses an *action*.

N.B. In English, the verbal adjective is placed *before* the noun, and the present participle *after* it. In French, both are generally placed *after*. See Rule 3d, p. 217.

REMARK. — The present participle is often used in English as a noun, which is never the case in French : —

Le jeu et la chasse sont la ruine de bien des gens.	GAMING and HUNTING are the ruin of many people.
---	---

EXERCISE CCXI.

⁴David ¹is ³often ²represented *playing* on the harp. — She
on ind-l de
is a woman of a good disposition, *obliging* her friends, whenever
caractère m. quand
an occasion (presents itself.) — Those men *foreseeing* the danger,
l' s'en présente. prévoir
put themselves on their guard. — Those *foreseeing* men have
pl.
perceived the danger. — The *ruling* passion of Cæsar was
apercevoir dominant

Her singing was much admired.
chant m. ind-3 fort

† The participle *été* never varies. We say, *il* or *elle* *a été*, he or she has been; *ils* or *elles* *ont été*, they have been.

well *written*. — The city of London, having been *burnt* in
ville f.

1666, was *rebuilt* in three years, more beautiful and more
rebâtir année f.

regular than before. — The ancient Greeks were *persuaded* that
auparavant persuader

the soul is immortal. — It is to Jenner that ²(the discovery of
découverte f.

vaccination) ¹(is due.) — Artemisia survived ²(Mausolus, her
vaccine f. Artémise n' ind-4 à Mausole

husband,) ¹(only two years.) — The Amazons have *acquired*
que an m. Amazone

celebrity.

pr. art.

☞ To make a right application of the following rules, the student must distinguish well a *direct regimen* from an *indirect regimen*, for this is the pivot on which turn the principal difficulties of the *past participle*. For the meaning of *regimen*, see p. 201, 231, 261.

IV. The *Past Participle* accompanied by the auxiliary *avoir*, always agrees with its *direct regimen*, when that regimen is placed *before* the participle; as,

La lettre que vous avez écrite.

Voici les lettres que j'ai reçues.

Où est votre livre? — je l'ai perdu.

Où est votre plume? — je l'ai perdue.

Où sont vos livres? — je les ai perdus.

Ils m'ont félicité.

Il nous a félicités.

Quelle affaire avez-vous entreprise?

Que de désagréments ils m'ont
causés!

Combien de livres avez-vous lus?

The letter which you have written.

Here are the letters which I have
received.

Where is your book? — I have lost it.

Where is your pen? — I have lost it.

Where are your books? — I have lost

They have congratulated me. [them.

He has congratulated us.

What business have you undertaken?

What vexations they have caused
me!

How many books have you read?

These Examples show that the direct regimen which precedes the participle is expressed either by one of these pronouns *que, le, la, les, me, nous, te, vous, se*, or by a noun preceded by *quel, que de, or combien de*.

In the first example *écrite* agrees with *que*, of which the antecedent is *lettre*, feminine and singular. In the fifth example, *perdus* agrees with *les*, which stands for its antecedent *livres*, masculine and plural.

A lady would say,

Il s'm'ont félicitée. | They have congratulated me.

Félicitée agrees with *me*, of which the antecedent *dame* is understood.

The same analysis applies to the other and similar cases.

Observe that the rule says *direct regimen*, for although we say, *Il nous a vus*, he has seen us; we could not say, *Il nous a dits cela*, he has told us that: we must say, *Il nous a dit cela*; because *nous* is here used for *d nous*, and is an *indirect regimen*.

EXERCISE CCXIII.

Here is the answer which I have received. — The sciences
réponse f. — f.
which you have studied, will prove infinitely useful to you. —
être

General Villars often said, that the two ²(most lively)
art. vif

'pleasures he had felt in his life, had been the first
subj-2 ressentir ind-2

prize which he had obtained at college, and the first victory
prix m. ind-2

which he had gained over the enemy. — Where is my
ind-2 remporter

watch? — I have not seen it. — They have deceived us. — What
montre f. tromper

answer have they given you? — How many enemies has he not
on faire

conquered!
vaincre

V. After the auxiliary *avoir*, the *Past Participle* remains invariable when the *direct regimen* is placed AFTER the participle, or when there is no direct regimen; as,

Nous avons reçu votre lettre.		We have received your letter.
Ils ont perdu leurs livres.		They have lost their books.
J'ai récompensé mes fils.		I have rewarded my sons.

No agreement here takes place, because the direct regimens *votre lettre*, *leurs livres*, *mes fils*, are placed after the participles *reçu*, *perdu*, *récompensé*.

In the same manner, we write without varying the participle :

Elle a *dansé*.

Nous avons *chanté*.

Ils ont *répondu* à notre attente.

She has danced.

We have sung.

They have answered our expectation.

Because the verbs *danser*, *chanter*, *répondre*, have not here any direct regimen.

REMARK.—It follows from the preceding rule, that the participle of neuter verbs, which are conjugated with *avoir*, never varies, since that class of verbs has no direct regimen. Thus, in *Les cinq heures que j'ai dormi* (the five hours that I have slept), *les dix ans qu'il a vécu* (the ten years that he has lived), the participle of the neuter verbs *dormir* and *vivre* does not vary, and the relative *que* which precedes, although presenting itself under the form of a direct regimen, is in reality but an indirect regimen, equivalent to *pendant lequel*: *les cinq heures PENDANT LESQUELLES j'ai dormi, les dix ans PENDANT LESQUELS il a vécu*.

Note.—Sometimes neuter verbs are employed actively, then their participles agree, if preceded by a direct regimen; as, *La langue que Cicéron a parlée*, the language which Cicero has spoken.

EXERCISE CCXIV.

I have received no answer.—He has named several persons.
plusieurs

—Cromwell governed England under the title of Protector. —
ind-4

Men have never reaped the fruit of happiness from the tree of
cueillir sur

injustice. — The Romans triumphed successively over the
ind-4 successivement de

²(most warlike) ¹nations. — They danced a great deal at the
belliqueux f. ind-4

last ball. — We have laughed heartily. — We must deduct
bal m. de bon cœur. Il retrancher

from life the hours we have slept.
on

VI. The verb *être* being used instead of *avoir* in pronominal or reflected verbs, the participle of these verbs follows exactly the same rules as the participle conjugated with *avoir*; that is, the participle of a reflected verb agrees with the direct regimen when preceded by it, but remains invariable, when the direct regimen is placed after it, or when there is none.

So we write with agreement:—

Nous <i>nous</i> sommes <i>blessés</i> .		We have hurt ourselves.
Lucrèce <i>s'est tuée</i> .		Lucretia killed herself.

Because the participles *blessés*, *tuée*, are preceded by their direct regimens *nous*, *se*.

But we write without agreement:—

Lucrèce <i>s'est donné</i> la mort.		Lucretia destroyed herself.
-------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------

Because the participle *donné* is followed by its direct regimen *la mort*. In this example, *se* is an indirect regimen or dative.

We write also without varying the participle:—

Ils <i>se</i> sont <i>écrit</i> .		They have written to each other.
Nous nous sommes <i>succédé</i> .		We have succeeded one another.

Here, the participles *écrit* and *succédé* have no direct regimen. It is as if it were: *Ils ont écrit à eux*; *Nous avons succédé à nous*.

REMARK.—It follows from the foregoing rule, that verbs essentially pronominal, that is, verbs which cannot be conjugated without two pronouns of the same person, as *je me repens*, *je m'abstiens*, require their participles always to agree, because these verbs have for direct regimen their second pronoun; as,

Nous nous sommes <i>abstenus</i> de toute réflexion.		We have abstained from all reflections.
Mes amis, vous vous êtes <i>repentis</i> .		My friends, you have repented.

EXERCISE CCXV.

Madame de Sévigné *has rendered herself* celebrated by the *se rendre* graces of her style. — She *perceived* herself in that glass.
 — m. *s'apercevoir* ind-4 *glace* f.

—That woman has *bestowed* on herself fine gowns.— Some
se donner * * * *Quelques-uns*
 of our modern authors have *imagined* that they surpassed the
s'imaginer
 ancients. — They have *spoken* to one another. — They have
se parler
succeeded one another. — Those boys have *repented.* — The
se repentir
 troops have *seized* the town.
s'emparer de

VII. The participle of a unipersonal (or impersonal) verb is always invariable : —

Les chaleurs qu'il a FAIT cet été.

The heat which we have had this summer.

La disette qu'il y a EU l'hiver dernier.

The scarcity which there was last winter.

Here the verbs *faire* and *avoir* have not their active signification, but simply express existence, and the *que* which precedes is not the regimen of any verb, for we do not say *faire des chaleurs*, as we say *faire des habits*. That *que* must be considered a *gallicism*.

VIII. The *Past Participle*, followed by an infinitive, agrees with the antecedent noun, when that noun is the regimen or object of the participle, but it remains invariable when the noun is the object of the infinitive ; as,

La lettre *que* je lui ai DONNÉE à copier.

The letter which I have given him to copy.

La lettre *que* je lui ai DIT de copier.

The letter which I have told him to copy.

Note. — The regimen or object is known to belong to the participle when the antecedent can be placed after the participle, as in the first example, which may be turned, *Je lui ai donné la lettre à copier.*

As we cannot say, *Je lui ai dit la lettre de copier*, but we may say, *Je lui ai dit de copier la lettre*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the infinitive.

For the same reason, the participles *dû, owed, ought; pu, been able, and voulu, been willing, remain invariable when an infinitive is understood after them ; as,*

Je lui ai rendu tous les services *que* j'ai pu (understood.)

I have rendered him all the services that I have been able.

REMARK.—When the French participle happens to be placed between two *que*, the first *que* is not the regimen of the participle, but of the verb which follows it, consequently the participle is invariable; as,

Les raisons *que* vous avez *CRU*
que j'approuvais.

Les mathématiques *que* vous avez
VOULU *que* j'étudiasse.

The reasons which you thought I
approved.

The mathematics which you would
have me to study.

EXERCISE CCXVI.

The heavy rains which we *had* in the spring, have
grand pluie f. * *il faire ind-4*
been the cause of many diseases. — That young lady sings well;
maladie f.

I have *heard* her sing. — That song is charming; I *heard* it
ind-4

sung. — I have used all the endeavours I *could*. — He has
inf-1 faire effort m. † ind-4

obtained all the favours he *wished*. — These are the answers
grâce f. † vouloir ind-4 Voilà

which I had *foreseen* they would give you. — The difficulties
que † faire embarras m.

which I knew you were in have accelerated my departure.
*ind-4 † avoir * départ m.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

The rain which has *fallen* has prevented me from going out
f. fait empêché sortir
to-day. — Have you finished the letter which I *gave* you to
ind-4

write? — Have you finished the letter which you *had begun* to
ind-2

write? — Have you read the books which I *advised* you
conseiller ind-4

to read? — Is that the actress whom we *heard* sing? — Sing the
266 -ce là actrice ind-4

song which we *heard* her sing. — Imitate the virtues which you
ind-4 lui

have *heard* praised.

† See Rule and Note, foot of page 249.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE ADVERB.

I. Adverbs, in French, are generally placed after the verb in the *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the *compound tenses*, but never between the subject and the verb, as is frequently the case in English; as,

Je pense SOUVENT à vous.		I often think of you.
J'ai TOUJOURS pensé à vous.		I have always thought of you.

Compound adverbs are usually placed *after* the participle; as, *Vous êtes venu à PROPOS*, you have come seasonably. In some instances, however, the ear alone is consulted; for we say, *Je l'avais TOUT À FAIT oublié*, I had quite forgotten it.

II. The adverbs AUJOURD'HUI, *to-day*; DEMAIN, *to-morrow*; HIER, *yesterday*, may be placed either before or after the verb, but never between the auxiliary and the participle; as, *Il fait AUJOURD'HUI beau temps, il pleuvra* DEMAIN; or, *AUJOURD'HUI il fait beau temps, DEMAIN il pleuvra*, 'To-day, it is fine; it will rain to-morrow.

III. The adverbs BIEN, *well*; MIEUX, *better*; MAL, *ill*; PAS, *worse*, may be placed either before or after an *infinitive*; as, BIEN *faire son devoir*, or *Faire BIEN son devoir*, to do one's duty well. But they are always placed after the verb in the *simple tenses*; as, *Vous fîtes BIEN, il fit MAL*, you did well, he did ill. And, with the *compound tenses*, they are placed between the auxiliary and the participle; as, *Vous avez MAL fait*, you have done wrong.

IV. The adverbs, *comment, où, combien, quand, pourquoi*, are always placed before the verb; as,

Comment se porte monsieur votre frère?		How is your brother?
Où allez-vous?		Whither are you going?

Remarks on some Adverbs.

1. **BEAUCOUP** is not as the English *much*, susceptible of being modified by any preceding adverb; thus, *très beaucoup*, *trop beaucoup*, *si beaucoup*, would be barbarisms.

2. **BIEN** before another adverb means *very*, *much*, *quite*, etc.; as, *Bien tard*, very late; *bien moins*, much less; *bien assez*, quite enough. After the adverb, it signifies *well*; as, *Assez bien*, pretty well; *moins bien*, not so well.

3. **PLUS** and **DAVANTAGE**, both mean *more*, but they are not used indiscriminately. *Davantage* can never modify an adjective, and cannot like *plus*, be followed by the preposition *de* nor the conjunction *que*. We say: —

Il a **PLUS** *de* brillant *que* *de* solide.

Il se fie **PLUS** à ses lumières *qu'à* celles des autres.

He has more brilliancy than solidity.

He relies more on his own knowledge than on that of others.

We could not say, *Il a DAVANTAGE de brillant, il se fie DAVANTAGE à ses lumières*, etc.

Davantage is always used absolutely, either at the end of a sentence, or at the end of a member of a sentence; as,

Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est *davantage*.

The youngest is rich, but the eldest is still more so.

4. **PLUS TÔT** means *sooner*, and has for its opposite **PLUS TARD**, *later*. **PLUTÔT** signifies *rather*.

EXERCISE CCXVII.

I very seldom go out. — *Homer sometimes* slumbers in the
sortir *sommeiller à*

midst of his gods and heroes. — She has sung *very well*. —
milieu m. *très*

Where hatred prevails, truth (is sacrificed). — That grieves
dominer *fait naufrage.* *chagriner*

me very much. — This letter is *pretty well* written. — I would

like you *much more*, if you were reasonable. — He has arrived
bien *ind-2* *est*

sooner than usual. — I will die *rather* than suffer it,
de coutume. *de*

Remarks on the Negatives.

1. The negative expressions *ne-pas*, *ne-point*, etc. form only one negation.

2. *Point* denies more strongly than *pas*.

3. *Pas* is used in preference to *point*; 1st, Before *plus*, *beaucoup*, *moins*, *si*, *autant*, and other comparative words; as, *Milton n'est PAS MOINS sublime qu'Homère*, Milton is not less sublime than Homer; 2dly, Before nouns of number; as, *Il n'y a PAS DIX ans*, it is not ten years ago.

4. *Pas* and *point* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; and *pouvoir*, to be able; as,

Elle ne CESSE de gronder.
On n'OSE l'aborder.
Je ne PUIS me taire.

| She does not cease scolding.
| They dare not accost him.
| I cannot be silent.

5. After *savoir*, to know, when this verb is used to express a state of uncertainty, it is better to omit *pas* and *point*; as,

Je ne SAIS où le prendre.
Il ne SAIT ce qu'il dit.

| I do not know where to find him.
| He does not know what he says.

But, *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is employed to declare anything positively; as,

Je ne SAIS pas le français. | I do not know French.

(See former Remarks on *Pouvoir* and *Savoir*, used with a negative, p. 131 and 132.)

6. *Pas* and *point* are suppressed after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, or some other equivalent; as,

Il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle.
Il est moins riche, plus riche qu'on ne croit.
C'est autre chose que je ne croyais.

| He writes better than he speaks.
| He is less rich, richer than is believed.
| It is different from what I thought.

7. *Pas* and *point* are omitted with a verb in the preterite, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time; as,

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous ai vu?
Il y a six mois que je ne lui ai parlé.

| How have you been since I saw you?
| I have not spoken to him these six months.

But they are not omitted when the verb is in the present tense :—

Comment vit-il depuis que nous
ne le voyons point?

Il y a six mois que nous ne nous
parlons point.

*How does he live now that we do
not see him?*

*It is six months since we do not
speak to one another.*

EXERCISE CCXVIII.

There is *no* happiness without virtue. — The rich are *not*
† bonheur m. riche †
always happier than the poor. — There will *not* be much
pl.

fruit this year. — You will *not* find two of your opinion. —
année f. en avis m.

You do *not cease* scolding me. — I *dare not* speak to him.
inf-1

— I *cannot* understand what he means. — I do *not know*
comprendre ce qu' vouloir dire.

what to do. — She sings much *better than* she did. — He
que ne ind-2

is richer *than* he was. — That child has grown (very much)
ne ind-2 grandir bien

since I saw it.
ne ind-4

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

Since the world has been a world, said Boileau, one has
299 est * * on
not seen a great poet, son of a great poet. — She does *not* like
de

(people to flatter her.) — Do you *not* believe what he says? —
qu'on la flatte. ce qu'

That is *not* worth *more* than a guinea. — Do *not* go so fast. —
134 d' si

There are I *know not* how many people at the door. — When
96 198

Darius proposed to Alexander to divide Asia equally with
ind-3 partager 186 également

him, he answered: The earth *cannot* admit of two suns, nor
ind-3 souffrir ni

Asia of two kings.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

RULE. I. In French, the preposition is always placed immediately *before* its object, whereas in English it is sometimes placed *after* it; as,

A qui parlez-vous ?

De quoi vous plaignez-vous ?

To whom do you speak ?

Of what do you complain ?

or,

What do you complain of ? *

* The English practice (says Mr. M'Culloch, in his Philosophical Grammar) of separating the preposition from its object is condemned by some critics, but obviously on insufficient grounds.

EXERCISE CCXIX.

To whom does that house belong ? — What house are you
appartenir

speaking of ? — Of that white house. — It belongs to the
ind-1

gentleman whom we are going to dine *with*. — He has two
monsieur ind-1

footmen *behind* his carriage. — Tiberius was emperor *after*
laquais *voiture* f. *Tibère* ind-3

Augustus. — The liberty of the Roman republic expired *under*
Auguste. ses p. 216 ind-3

Tiberius. — A serpent biting its tail was, *among* the
qui se mord art. *queue* f. ind-2 *chez*

Egyptians, the emblem of eternity.
art.

RULE II. The prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en*, must be repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb which they govern, whether they are repeated or not in English; as,

Il dut la vie *à* la clémence et *à*
la magnanimité du vainqueur.

Il tâche *de* mériter et n'obtenir
votre confiance.

J'ai été *en* France et *en* Suisse.

*He owed his life to the clemency and
generosity of the conqueror.*

*He is endeavouring to merit and
obtain your confidence.*

I have been in France and Switzerland.

The other prepositions, especially those of one syllable, are repeated before words which have meanings totally different, but seldom before words that are nearly synonymous; as,

DANS la ville et DANS la campagne.	In the town and in the country.
PAR la force et PAR l'adresse.	By force and by address.
DANS la mollesse et l'oisiveté.	In effeminacy and idleness.
PAR la force et la violence.	By force and violence.

EXERCISE CCXX.

Here is the road from London to York and Edinburgh. —
route f.

You will receive a letter either from my father or my brother. —
ind-7 *

The celebrity of literary men keeps pace with that of
f. * littéraire * marcher de pair art.
great kings and heroes: Homer and Alexander, Virgil and Cæsar
héros César

equally occupy the voice of fame. — We are going to
voix pl. renommée f. en

France and Germany. — He is a turner in wood and ivory.
Allemagne. see p. 197 tourneur

— I shall come back either by the railroad or the canal. —
* chemin de fer

He is under the safeguard and protection of the laws.
garde f.

Remarks on the use of some Prepositions.

1. EN is used to express a vague and indeterminate sense; as,

J'ai vécu EN pays étranger. | I have lived in a foreign country.

DANS is employed in a limited and determinate sense; as,

Ce livre est DANS la bibliothèque.	That book is in the library.
Elle était DANS sa chambre.	She was in her room.
J'ai lu cela DANS Buffon.	I have read that in Buffon.

N. B. When, in English, a noun is preceded by the definite article, or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun,

IN, INTO, are generally expressed in French by *Dans* ; as,

Il demeure DANS la maison près du parc.	<i>He lives in the house near the park.</i>
Il y a du charme DANS sa société.	<i>There is a charm in her society.</i>
DANS cette guerre malheureuse.	<i>In that unfortunate war.</i>

But when the noun is used in an indefinite sense, and without article or pronoun, IN, INTO, are usually expressed by *En* ; as,

EN paix et EN guerre.	<i>In peace and in war.</i>
Ils sont toujours EN querelle.	<i>They are always in broils.</i>

Owing to its indeterminate nature, **EN** ought not to be followed by the article, except in a few phrases which have been sanctioned by usage ; as, *En la présence de Dieu* ; *Président en la chambre des comptes*, etc.

(See Remark 1st, page 188.)

2. **AUTOUR** and **ALENTOUR**, *around*, must not be confounded. *Autour* is a preposition which requires a regimen ; as,

<i>Autour</i> d'un trône.	<i>Around a throne.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------

Alentour is an adverb which admits of no regimen ; as,

Il était sur son trône, et les grands étaient <i>alentour</i> .	<i>He was upon his throne, and the grandees were around.</i>
---	--

3. **AU TRAVERS** is always followed by the preposition *de*, and **À TRAVERS** is not. We say :—

<i>Au travers</i> de la foule.	} <i>Through the crowd.</i>
<i>À travers</i> la foule.	

4. **AVANT**, *before*, denotes priority of time ; as,

Il est arrivé <i>avant</i> moi.	<i>He arrived before me.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------

It serves also to mark priority of order and place ; as,

Mettez ce chapitre <i>avant</i> l'autre.	<i>Put this chapter before the other.</i>
--	---

DEVANT, *before*, is never used, nowadays, with reference to time. It is a preposition of place, and has the meaning of *in presence of*, *opposite to*, *in front of* ; as,

Il a prêché <i>devant</i> le roi.	<i>He has preached before the king.</i>
<i>Devant</i> la porte ; <i>devant</i> l'église.	<i>Before the door ; before the church.</i>

Devant serves also to mark order ; as,

C'est mon ancien, il marche <i>devant</i> moi.	<i>He is my senior, he goes before me.</i>
--	--

When *Before* has no noun or pronoun after it, it is generally expressed by the adverb *auparavant*; as,

Je l'en avais averti longtemps <i>auparavant</i> .		<i>I had warned him of it long before.</i>
Un mois, un an <i>auparavant</i> .		<i>A month, a year before.</i>

5. *Près de* and *prêt à*, are not the same expressions. *Près* is a *preposition* which governs *de*; as,

Il est bien <i>PRÈS DE</i> midi.		<i>It is very near twelve o'clock.</i>
----------------------------------	--	--

But *Prêt* is an adjective which governs *à*; as,

Il est <i>prêt à</i> partir.		<i>He is ready to set out.</i>
------------------------------	--	--------------------------------

EXERCISE CCXXI.

I was in France, in the province of Burgundy.—The glory
ind-2 *Bourgogne*.

of a sovereign consists less in the extent of his states,
souverain m. grandeur f. état m.

than in the happiness of his people.—They ranged themselves
peuple pl. se ranger ind-3

around him.—Here is a sad accident for my creditors, said a
Voilà fâcheux m. créancier m. ind-2

Gascon officer, who had just received a ball through his body.
see p. 216 venait de inf-1 balle f. art.

— I saw that *before* you. — She was walking *before* the house.
ind-4 se promener

— He was *near* dying. → I am *ready* to maintain my opinion,
ind-2 inf-1 maintenir

pen in hand, until the last drop of my ink.
art. à art. jusqu'à goutte f.

6. The following prepositions require *DE* before the noun or pronoun which they govern:—

Auprès,	}	<i>near.</i>		<i>au-dessous, under, below.</i>
<i>près,</i>				<i>autour, around.</i>
<i>proche,</i>				<i>le long, along.</i>
<i>au-dessus, above.</i>				<i>vis-à-vis, opposite.</i>

EXAMPLES.

<i>Près DE</i> la poste.		<i>Near the post-office.</i>
<i>Autour DU</i> bras.		<i>Round the arm.</i>

Note. — In the familiar style, and in conversation, the preposition *DE* is sometimes omitted after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis*; as, *Je loge PRÈS l'arsenal, vis-à-vis la nouvelle rue.*

7. The prepositions **JUSQUE**, *till*, *until*, *even*, *as far as*, and **QUANT**, *as to*, *as for*, require the preposition **À** after them; as,

Depuis Pâques jusqu'à la Pentecôte. | From Easter till Whitsunday.
Quant à moi. | As for me.

EXERCISE CCXXII.

I live *near* the gate Saint-Martin.—*Above* the door were
demeurer *porte* f. ind-2
written these words.—In the ²ecclesiastical ¹hierarchy,
† *moi* m. *ecclésiastique hiérarchie* f. *à* asp
the bishop is *below* the archbishop.—The queen had her
archevêque
daughters *around* her.—We came *along* the river side.—
ind-4 *rivière* f. *
He lodges *opposite* my windows.—All fathers, *even* the most
art.
grave, play with their children.—Let us go together *as far*
jouer
as Oxford.—*As for* him, he (shall act) as he pleases.
en usera *lui* ind-7

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

²Æsculapius ¹(is represented) with a snake in his hand
Esculape *on représente* *coulevre* f. *à*
or *around* his arm, and a cock *near* him.—The Falls of
coq *cataracte* f. s.
the Niagara are *near* the boundaries of the United States
— m. *se trouve* *limite* f. *Etats-Unis*
and Canada.—The Americans place Washington and
† art. — m.
Bolivar *above* Alexander and Cæsar.—The planets are opaque
— † *planète* f. —
bodies which turn *around* the sun, from which they derive
tourner *où* *tirer*
light and heat.—There are forests of canes *along* the
lumière f. *chaleur* f. *forêt* f. *canne* f.
Ganges.—I will wait for you *till* two o'clock.
Gange m. 76

† See Rule II, p. 283.

‡ Rule II, p. 294.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

IN French, some conjunctions require the verb which follows them to be in the indicative, some in the subjunctive, and others in the infinitive mood.

The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the indicative mood : —

Ainsi que,	<i>as, as well as.</i>	depuis que,	<i>since.</i>
après que,	<i>after.</i> [<i>as.</i>]	lorsque,	<i>when.</i>
attendu que,	<i>considering that,</i>	parce que, †	<i>because.</i>
aussitôt que,	} <i>as soon as.</i>	pendant que,	} <i>while, whilst.</i>
dès que,		tandis que,	
autant que,	<i>as much as.</i> [<i>what.</i>]	peut-être que,	<i>perhaps.</i>
à ce que,	<i>as, as far as, from</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
à mesure que,	<i>as, in proportion</i>	tant que,	<i>as long as.</i>
au lieu que,	<i>whereas.</i> [<i>as.</i>]	vu que,	<i>seeing that.</i>

They require the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses affirmation in a direct and positive manner.

† *Observation.* — *Par ce que* (in three words) is not a conjunction, though sometimes mistaken for one. It signifies, *by that which, by what.*

EXERCISE CCXXIII.

As soon as the Khan of Tartary has dined, a herald cries that
—————
héraut

all the other princes of the earth may go and dine, if
terre f. ind-l *

(they please).—A child ought not to obtain anything, *because*
bon leur semble. *ne doit* * *rien*

he asks for it, but *because* he has need (of it). — We
* besoin en *Il*

must not judge of a man *by what* he (is ignorant of), but *by*
falloir ignore

what he knows. — *Whilst* we are in prosperity, we must
 savoir on art. il se
 prepare for adversity. — *As long as* I have money, you shall
 à art. ind-7

not want some.
 manquer en

*The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions,
 require the subjunctive mood.*

Afin que,	} <i>that, in order that.</i>	pour peu que,	} <i>if . . . ever so little.</i>
pour que,		si peu que,	
avant que,	<i>before.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided that.</i>
à moins que,†	<i>unless.</i>	quoique,	} <i>though, although.</i>
au cas que,	<i>in case that.</i>	bien que,	
de crainte que,†	} <i>for fear, lest.</i>	encore que,	
de peur que,†			
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till, until.</i>	sans que,	<i>without.</i>
non que,	} <i>not that.</i>	soit que,	<i>whether.</i>
non pas que,			supposé que,

They require the subjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, uncertainty.

Remark on the conjunction QUE. — Learners are often mistaken, by supposing that QUE always requires the verb which follows it to be in the *subjunctive mood*; but QUE does not govern any particular mood. It is the positive or doubtful sense of the first verb that requires the second to be in the indicative or subjunctive.† There are, however, several cases in which QUE requires the subjunctive after it. These are when QUE is used instead, or in the sense of some conjunctions which themselves always govern the subjunctive, such as *afin que*, *avant que*, *à moins que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *quoique*, *sans que*, *soit que*, *supposé que*; as,

Approchez, QUE je vous voie (<i>afin que.</i>)	Come near, that I may see you.
Attendez QUE la pluie soit passée (<i>jusqu'à ce que.</i>)	Wait until the rain be over.

† *A moins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, although not having a negative sense.

‡ See the syntax of this mood, p. 276-279.

EXERCISE CCXXIV.

The Apostles received the gift of tongues, *that* they might
 ind-3 *don m.* *pouvoir*
 preach the Gospel to all the nations of the earth. — If my
Evangile m.

brother come *before* I am up, show him into the dining-
 ind-1 *levé faire entrer*
 room, and give him a newspaper to amuse himself with *till*

I come down. — *Unless* you be useful, you will not be sought after.
descendre *recherché.*

— Speak low, *for fear* (any body) should hear you. — *Though*
on *entendre*
 you are learned, be modest. — Get in *without* his seeing you.
instruit *Entrer*

The following Conjunctions govern the infinitive :—

Afin de,	to, in order to.	au lieu de,	instead of.
avant de,†	} <i>before.</i>	loin de,	<i>far from.</i>
avant que de,		de crainte de,	} <i>for, or from</i> <i>fear of.</i>
à moins de,	} <i>unless.</i>	de peur de,	
à moins que de,			plutôt que de,

† *Avant de*, and *avant que de*, are both correct expressions; but present usage is decidedly in favour of *avant de*.

Note.—*A cause que*, *devant que*, *durant que*, *malgré que*, are found among the Tables of Conjunctions, and in the Exercises of many Grammars; but these are antiquated expressions. *A cause que* is replaced by *parce que*; *devant que*, by *avant que*; *durant que*, by *pendant que*; and *malgré que*, by *quoique*.

EXERCISE CCXXV.

He works *in order to* acquire riches and consideration.—*Before*
acquérir *f.*
 granting him my confidence, I shall examine if he is worthy of
confiance f.

it.—*Instead* of studying, he does nothing but amuse himself.

— *Far from* thanking me, he has scolded me. — Charles VII,
ne ** que se divertir.*

king of France, abstained from eating, in *fear* of being
gronder
 ind-3 *par art. crainte f.*

poisoned, and allowed himself to die *from fear* of dying. —
se laisser ind-3 *peur*

Rather die *than* do a dishonourable action.
 inf-1 *lâcheté f.*

The INTERJECTIONS have been treated of in page 181 : their construction is the same in French as in English, they require, therefore, no further explanation. The soul is the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the student, since they do not require any rules.

OF ABBREVIATIONS.

There are certain French words which it is customary to abridge and represent by capital letters, as follows : —

J.C.	for Jésus-Christ.
N.S.	... Notre-Seigneur.
N.S. J.C.	... Notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ.
S.S.	... Sa Sainteté.
S.M.	... Sa Majesté.
LL. MM.	... Leurs Majestés.
S.M.I.	... Sa Majesté Impériale.
S.M. T.C.	... Sa Majesté Très-Chrétienne.
S.M.C.	... Sa Majesté Catholique.
S.M.T.F.	... Sa Majesté Très-Fidèle.
S.M.B.	... Sa Majesté Britannique.
S.M.S.	... Sa Majesté Suédoise.
S.A.	... Son Altesse.
S.A.R.	... Son Altesse Royale.
S.A.I.	... Son Altesse Impériale.
S.Ex.	... Son Excellence.
S.Em.	... Son Eminence.
M ^{sr}	... Monseigneur.
M. or M ^r *	... Monsieur.
MM. or M ^{rs} *	... Messieurs.
M ^{me}	... Madame.
M ^{lle}	... Mademoiselle.
M ^d	... Marchand.
M ^{de}	... Marchande.
Nég ^t	... Négociant.

(*Encycl. méthod.* — *Gram. des Gram.* — *Acad.*)

* The first is more used in print, and the latter in writing. *Mess^{rs}* is also a good abbreviation of *Messieurs*.

INDEX.

	Page		Page
A , with and without accent,	2	Apostrophe	3
Proper names ending in <i>a</i> , how translated into French,	31	Article ; its function and deri- vation.....	7, 6
Eng. indef. art., how trans- lated.....	8, 190, 197	Contracted.....	8
Its principal use as a pre- position.....	176, 210	Used in a <i>partitive</i> sense... ..	10
Verbs which require <i>d</i>	264	57, 189 ^b	
Abbreviations used in the Ex- ercises.....	vi	Cases in which it is used, 183 to 193	
Of Titles.....	302	Cases in which it is not used.....	188, 193 to 200
Abstain (<i>to</i>), <i>s'abstenir</i>	124	Aucun, aucune	49
Accents ; number and use.....	2	Autru ; its derivation, gender, and use.....	46
Adjective ; how known.....	14	Avant, devant	296
Formation of the feminine, 14 to 19		<i>avant de, avant que de</i>	301
Formation of the plural....	19, 20	Avoir ; its conjugation.....	55
Possessive.....	36	Beaucoup , Rem. on.....	291
Demonstrative.....	38	Before ; how expressed.....	236
Concord of the.....	211 to 215	Cases ; if any in French.....	6
Used adverbially.....	212	Cedilla	4
Place of the.....	215 to 221	Cent ; when it takes <i>s</i>	28
Government of the....	221 to 224	Chacun	46
Of Number, its synt.....	224	Differs from <i>chaque</i>	49
Of Dimension.....	225	Its syntax.....	253
Adverb ; its place.....	166, 290	Chaque, chacun	49
How formed from an adj....	170	Collective nouns	11, 256
Of Quantity.....	198, 257	Comparative degree ; how form- ed.....	21, 22
Synt. of the.....	290	Synt. of the.....	226
Allez, s'en aller	108, 109	Compound substantives , 206 to 211	
Alphabet (<i>French</i>),.....	1	Compound tenses ; how formed,	54
Antecedent ; its meaning.....	40		
Any ; how expressed in French,	10		

	Page		Page
<i>Compound tenses</i> ; how used.....	273	<i>Ellipsis</i> ; <i>Note on</i>	249
<i>Concord between the tenses</i>	279	<i>En</i> ; relative pronoun.....	43
<i>Conditional mood</i>	275	Its various meanings.....	43
<i>Conjunctions</i> (four); how distinguished.....	53, 61	Its place.....	44
First in <i>et</i>	64	Preposition.....	178
Second in <i>et</i>	68	Governs the Particip. pres.....	264
Third in <i>où</i>	71	Its synt.....	294, 295
Fourth in <i>re</i>	74	<i>En, dans</i>	295
Negatively.....	78, 79	<i>Entre</i> ; when written <i>entr'</i>	4
Interrogatively.....	82, 83	<i>Etre</i> ; its conjugation.....	58
Interrogatively and negatively.....	85	<i>Fort</i> (very); its derivation,	23
Of <i>Passive verbs</i>	87	<i>Genders</i> ; how many.....	5
Of <i>Pronominal or Reflected verbs</i>	91	Of inanimate objects.....	5, 201
Of <i>Impersonal or Unipersonal verbs</i>	94 to 98	<i>Half</i> (demi); its Synt.....	212
Of verbs ending in <i>ger, éer, cer, uer, éler, éler, yer, ier</i>	99 to 108	<i>Hyphen</i> ; when used.....	4
<i>Conjunction</i> ; its definition....	179	Notes on the.....	230, 234
A list of the principal.....	179	<i>Il</i> ; its derivation.....	7
Syntax.....	299	<i>Imperfect</i> ; when used.....	271
Some govern the ind.....	299	<i>In, into</i> ; how expressed.....	295
Some the subj.....	300	<i>Indefinite pronouns</i>	44
Some the infin.....	301	Syntax of.....	252
<i>Connaitre</i> , to know.....	143	<i>Interjection</i> ; its definition.....	181
Its difference from <i>savoir</i>	133	A list of.....	181, 182
<i>Cris</i> ; with and without accent,	3	Remark on the.....	302
<i>D</i> ; takes the sound of <i>t</i>	85	<i>Ion</i> ; gender of nouns ending in,	5
<i>Dans, en</i> ; how used.....	295	<i>Irregular verbs</i> of the 1st conj.,	108
<i>De</i> , preposition; its use.....	6 2d conj.,	111
173, 177, 209	 3d conj.,	127
Verbs which require <i>de</i>	265 4th conj.,	137
<i>Degrees of comparison</i>	20	<i>Know</i> (<i>to</i>), <i>savoir</i>	132
<i>Demi</i> ; its syntax.....	212	<i>Connaitre</i>	143
<i>Demonstrative adjectives</i>	38	<i>La</i> ; with and without accent,	2
<i>Dès</i> ; with and without accent,	2	When it loses the <i>a</i>	3, 8
<i>Devant, avant</i>	296	When it retains the <i>a</i>	4
<i>Diæresis or Dialysis</i>	4	Its derivation.....	7
<i>Du</i> ; with and without accent,	3	<i>Le</i> ; article.....	8
<i>E</i> ; gender of nouns ending in.....	5	When it loses the <i>e</i>	3, 8
<i>Elision of vowels</i>	3	When it retains the <i>e</i>	4
<i>Elle</i> ; its derivation.....	7	Its derivation.....	7
		Relative pronoun.....	42
		<i>L'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre</i> , 47, 48	
		Syntax of.....	255

	Page		Page
<i>Même</i>	49	<i>Près de, prêt à</i>	297
<i>Mille</i> ; when it takes <i>s</i>	28	<i>Preterite definite</i>	272
When abbreviated into <i>mil.</i>	28	<i>Indefinite</i>	273
<i>Moïse</i> ; its pronunciation.....	4	<i>Pronouns</i> ; how divided.....	32
<i>Monsieur</i> ; its plural.....	244	<i>Personal</i>	32
How abbreviated.....	302	Place of <i>Pers. pron.</i>	32, 228
And <i>gentilhomme</i> ; foot-note.....	251	Syntax of the <i>pers. pron.</i>	228-241
<i>Moods and Tenses</i>	270	<i>Possessive</i>	35, 37
<i>Mur</i> ; with and without accent.....	2	Syntax of the <i>Possessive</i>	240, 244
<i>Names</i> (proper), see <i>Proper</i>		<i>Demonstrative</i>	37, 38
<i>Negatives</i>	78, 292	Syntax of the <i>Demonst.</i>	244-247
<i>Noun</i> , see <i>Substantive</i>		<i>Relative</i>	40
<i>Nul, nulle</i>	49	Syntax of the <i>Relative</i>	247-252
<i>Numbers</i>	6	<i>Indefinite</i>	44
<i>Cardinal</i>	25	Syntax of the <i>Indef.</i>	252
<i>Ordinal</i>	25	<i>Proper names</i> ; definition of... ..	11
Rules on the use of the car- ..		Of Sovereigns.....	29
dinal and ordinal Num- ..		Ending in <i>a</i>	31
bers.....	28, 29, 195	Which take the article.....	186
<i>O</i>		188, 194, 204	
<i>a</i> ; indefinite pronoun.....	45	When they take the sign of ..	
Synt. of.....	252	the plural.....	204
<i>Où</i> ; with and without accent.....	2	<i>Que</i> ; when it loses the <i>e</i>	41
<i>Où</i> ; relative pronoun.....	43	Rem. on the conj. <i>que</i>	300
<i>Parce que, par ce que</i>	299	<i>Quel, quelle</i> ; when used.....	51
<i>Participle Present</i>	282	<i>Quelconque</i>	50
<i>Past</i>	283	<i>Quelque</i> ; <i>quel que</i>	51, 52
<i>Parts of speech</i>	7	<i>Quelqu'un</i> ; its feminine and ..	
<i>Pas, point</i> ; when suppressed.....	292	plural.....	46
<i>Personne</i> ; masculine as a pro- ..		<i>Qui</i> ; if it changes.....	41
noun, and feminine as a ..		<i>Quiconque</i>	45, 46
noun.....	46, 47	<i>Railroad, or railway</i> ; how ..	
When it takes <i>ne</i> before ..		translated into French.....	295
the verb.....	46	<i>Regimen</i> ; its definition.....	201
<i>Plus, davantage</i>	291	231, 261, 284	
<i>Plusieurs</i>	50	<i>Relative pronouns</i>	40
<i>Plus tôt, plutôt</i> ; their diffe- ..		<i>Saül</i> ; its pronunciation.....	4
rence.....	291	<i>Savoir, to know</i>	132
<i>Possessive adjectives</i>	36	How to distinguish it from ..	
<i>Preposition</i> ; its definition.....	173	<i>connaître</i>	133
Place of <i>cases</i> supplied by, 6, ..		When <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> may ..	
173		be omitted after.....	292
Govern the Infinitive.....	264	<i>Se</i> ; place of.....	34
Syntax of the.....	294	Various meanings of.....	35
Some govern <i>de</i>	297	Syntax of.....	239
Some govern <i>à</i>	298	<i>Soi</i> ; place of.....	34
<i>Present Indicative</i> ; when used, ..			
270			

	Page		Page
<i>Sai</i> ; various meanings of.....	35	<i>Verb</i> ; its definition.....	53
Syntax of.....	239	How many kinds of <i>verbs</i>	53
<i>Some</i> ; how expressed.....	10	Regular, irregular, defective,	53
<i>Steam-engine</i> ; how translated,	177	Used negatively.....	78, 79
<i>Subjunctive mood</i> ; when used,	276	Interrogatively.....	82, 83
<i>Substantive</i> ; its nature and		Interrogatively and negativ.	85
division.....	11	Passive verbs.....	87, 262
Formation of the plural of,	11-14	Neuter.....	89
Gender of	5, 201	Pronominal, reflected, reci-	
Number in.....	204, 205	procal.....	91
Plural of compound.....	206	Impersonal or unipersonal,	94
<i>Superlative degree</i> ; how formed,	22	Verbs ending in <i>ger, éer, cer,</i>	
to 25		<i>uer, éler, éter, yer, ier</i>	99
Syntax of the.....	226	to 107	
<i>Sur</i> ; with and without accent,	2	Agreement of the.....	254
Syntax	183	Place of the subject of the..	259
<i>Tel, telle</i>	48	Government of the.....	261
<i>Tenses</i> ; formation of the.....	54, 61, 62	Verbs which require <i>d</i>	264
Syntax of the.....	270	Verbs which require <i>de</i>	265
Concord of the.....	279	Verbs which require no pre-	
<i>To</i> ; how translated.....	8, 263	position.....	268
When expressed by <i>pour</i> ...	269	<i>Vingt</i> ; when it takes an <i>s</i>	28
<i>Tout</i> ; various kinds.....	50	<i>Vowels</i>	1
<i>Très</i> ; its derivation.....	23	Which are cut off, and when,	3
<i>Tu</i> ; with and without accent,	3	<i>W</i> ; when used.....	1
<i>Unipersonal verbs</i>	94	<i>Y</i> ; its power as a letter.....	1
<i>Venir</i> ; takes <i>être</i> for its		Its place, and various mean-	
compound tenses.	125	ings as a relative pronoun,	44
		Adverb, its derivation.....	169

FINIS.

PRINTED AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

MODERN GUIDE
TO
CONVERSATION;

FOR TOURISTS
Etcum :

SALES ET CON.

SAITS MÉMORABLES, ANECDOTES IN LILARY;

Third Edition; Price 2s. 6d. neatly bound.

Dedicated, by permission, to Her Grace the Duchess
of BUCCLEUCH and QUEENSBERRY.

* * This Work is beautifully and accurately printed on fine paper; and it has appended to it a complete and well-digested Dictionary, French and English, of all the words contained in the volume.

"We pass over our general rule of not noticing elementary school-books in favour of this little work, which we consider a simple, well-arranged, and useful first French reading-book, whether for schools or adult pupils." — (*Tait's Magazine*.)

"All the works of M. DE FIVAS have been highly and deservedly approved of; and we feel pretty confident that an equal share of approbation awaits this improved edition, which presents a description of reading at once easy, entertaining, and instructive. — Besides its suitableness for the learner, we do not know a book better adapted than this for brushing up the neglected French of those whose school days, like ours, have been over for some little time past." — (*Scotsman*.)

"The plan of this book is altogether incomparably superior to that of former works in use as Introductions." — (*Scottish Guardian*.)

"We know of no class-book so suitable as this for beginners. We strongly recommend it to the heads of schools, and to all who are professionally engaged in teaching the French language." — (*East Anglian*.)

"We recommend this work to the attention of Teachers and students of the French language." — (*Edinburgh Observer*.)

"At once the most useful and the most attractive French reading-book of its class. We hope it will be generally introduced into the Academies in this quarter." — (*Perthshire Courier*.)

BEAUTÉS DES ÉCRIVAINS FRANÇAIS MODERNES ; ou, Choix de Morceaux des meilleurs Prosauteurs et Poètes Français du XIX^e siècle.

Nouvelle Edition, avec des Notes, et le portrait de M. de Jouy. 4s. neatly bound.

Very appropriate for a French present or prize book.

" This is a work which was much wanted, and which will not fail of proving highly acceptable to the youthful student. The exertions of M. DE FIVAS to furnish a selection, suited to youth of both sexes, have been crowned with success, and we most warmly recommend it to all who are studying the French language, and to those to whom the education of youth is more particularly intrusted."—(*La Belle Assemblée*.)

" A very excellent class-book—the selections from modern French writers are made with much judgment and taste ; and the student will find these pages facilitate his progress both in the language and the literature of France."—(*London Literary Gazette*.)

" A very neat, judiciously selected, well-arranged, desirable volume, containing a large quantity of excellent matter."—(*Court Journal*.)

" This work is replete with that enticing variety so desirable in publications of this kind. French teachers, and those who wish to attain a knowledge of that polite language, will find it a valuable acquisition."—(*Glasgow Free Press*.)

" In this book, the student will learn the style of modern French of the highest polish. Specimens of the peculiar *esprit* of the French, and articles of deep moral and religious feeling, adorn the pages. At the present day, this is one of the best possible works to be put in the hands of the student of the French language, and its beauty, cheapness, and convenient size, are every thing that could be desired."—(*Aberdeen Advertiser*.)

" This is an elegant volume, containing a selection of pieces both in prose and verse, which, while it furnishes a convenient reading book for the student of the French language, at the same time affords a pleasing and interesting view of French literature."—(*Edinburgh Observer*.)

" This volume contains selections from the works of the most popular French authors of the present day. They relate to all manner of subjects ; politics, history, biography, memoirs, sketches of character, tales, essays, and poetry. Chateaubriand, De Staël, De Genlis, Jouy, Constant, Sismondi, Dupin, Volney, Ségur, Béranger, and fifty other writers of greater or lesser note, have contributed to make the pages of this volume as interesting and varied as any miscellany of the kind could be rendered. The reader is favoured with a specimen of the whole circle of modern French authorship."—(*Scottish Literary Gazette*.)

MODERN GUIDE
TO
French Conversation;

OR,
THE STUDENT AND TOURIST'S
French Vade-mecum :

CONTAINING
A COMPREHENSIVE VOCABULARY;
AND
PHRASES AND DIALOGUES
ON EVERY USEFUL OR INTERESTING TOPIC;

TOGETHER WITH
Models of Letters, Notes, and Cards;
AND
COMPARATIVE TABLES OF THE BRITISH AND FRENCH
COINS, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

The whole exhibiting, in a distinct manner, the true
Pronunciation of the French Language.

BY A. DE FIVAS.

LONDON:
SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.
Newcastle-on-Tyne : A. DE FIVAS.
Dublin : SAM. J. MACHEN.

SOLD ALSO BY ALL BOOKSELLERS IN THE UNITED KINGDOM.

M DCCC XLIII.

[Price 2s. 6d. bound.]

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

	Page
Days of the week,	1
Months of the year,	ib.
The seasons,	ib.
Cardinal points,	ib.
Cardinal numbers,	2
Ordinal numbers,	3
Collective numbers,	4
Adverbial members,	5
The colours,	ib.
Titles and dignities,	ib.
Of the clergy,	6
Modes of address,	ib.
Names of the principal countries,	7
Remarkable provinces, islands, seas, rivers, &c.	ib.
Names of principal towns,	8
National names,	ib.
Of the heavens,	9
Of the world,	10
Of the sea,	ib.
Of fire, &c.	ib.
Of mankind,	ib.
Of the human body,	11
Faculties of the body,	ib.
Diseases,	12
Degrees of kindred,	ib.
Of a house,	13
Household goods,	14
Of food,	16
Of liquors,	17

CONTENTS.

	Page
Details of a town,	18
Professions, trades, and mechanical arts,	19
Of education,	21
Children's games and playthings,	22
Fruits and fruit-trees,	23
Of vegetables,	24
Of quadrupeds,	ib.
Of birds,	25
Creeping insects,	26
Flying insects,	ib.
Minerals,	27
Metals,	ib.
Precious stones,	ib.
Weights and measures,	ib.
Of the army,	28
Of the navy,	29
Offensive and defensive arms,	30
Of fortification,	ib.
Railroad,	ib.
Names of men,	31
Names of women,	ib.
Miscellany,	32

PART SECOND.

I. Of time and epochs,	33
II. To express hunger,	36
III. To express thirst,	ib.
IV. For speaking,	37
V. Reading,	38
VI. To question,	ib.
VII. To consult,	40
VIII. To affirm,	41
IX. To entreat,	42
X. To consent and grant,	43
XI. To refuse,	44

CONTENTS.

	Page
XII. To offer,	44
XIII. To return thanks,	45
XIV. To express satisfaction and pleasure,	46
XV. To express displeasure and reproach,	47
XVI. To express sorrow,	48
XVII. To express astonishment,	49
XVIII. To express admiration,	50
XIX. To express probability and improbability,	ib.
XX. To deny and call in question,	51
XXI. To express friendship,	52
XXII. To express antipathy,	53
XXIII. Of the weather,	54
XXIV. Of the seasons,	57
XXV. Of the hour,	59
XXVI. Of the age,	61
XXVII. Of the health,	62
XXVIII. To pay customary compliments,	64
XXIX. Of news,	67
XXX. On the French language,	68
XXXI. Of a lady's accomplishments,	70
XXXII. Going and coming,	72
XXXIII. To inquire about a person,	73
XXXIV. To inquire for the residence of a person,	75
XXXV. To ask the way,	77
XXXVI. Inquiries before undertaking a journey,	78

PART THIRD.

I. To go on board a packet or a steam-boat,	80
II. During the passage,	83
III. The landing, and at the custom-house,	85
IV. On reaching the inn,	87
V. Dinner at the inn,	89
VI. Supper,	93
VII. Going to bed,	94
VIII. At the coach office,	96

CONTENTS.

	Page
IX. On a journey,	97
X. To take lodgings,	101
XI. To engage a man servant,	105
XII. To hire a maid-servant,	107
XIII. Rising in the morning,	108
XIV. Breakfast,	109
XV. The walk,	112
XVI. To receive a visit,	114
XVII. To take leave,	116
XVIII. Of the church,	117
XIX. Of France,	119
XX. Paris,	121
XXI. At the restaurateur's,	132
XXII. At the coffee-house,	134
XXIII. With a banker,	135
XXIV. With the tailor,	136
XXV. With the tailor (continued),	138
XXVI. With the dressmaker,	139
XXVII. With the hatter,	141
XXVIII. With the milliner,	142
XXIX. With the boot and shoe maker,	143
XXX. With the hosier and glover,	145
XXXI. With the hairdresser,	146
XXXII. With the perfumer,	146
XXXIII. With a watchmaker,	147
XXXIV. With a jeweller,	149
XXXV. To buy a carriage,	151
XXXVI. To hire, or to buy a horse,	152
XXXVII. With a groom,	154
XXXVIII. With the laundress,	155
XXXIX. A gentleman's toilet,	156
XL. A lady's toilet,	158
XLI. Before dinner,	161
XLII. At a dinner party,	162
XLIII. At tea,	170
XLIV. Of cards,	172
XLV. To play at chess,	174
XLVI. To play at draughts,	ib.
XLVII. At the theatre,	175
XLVIII. At the opera,	179

CONTENTS.

	Page
XLIX. To write a letter,	181
L. At the bookseller's,	185
LI. Drawing and painting,	188
LII. With a portrait painter,	189
LIII. At an exhibition of paintings,	190
LIV. With a physician,	192
LV. In the garden,	193
LVI. The country,	196
LVII. Of sporting,	198
LVIII. Of fishing,	200
LIX. The return,	201

PART FOURTH.

MODELS OF LETTERS, NOTES, CARDS, &c.

To a Banker to whom you are recommended,	203
To request an interview with a Member of Government,	ib.
On the same subject to a Private Gentleman,	204
CARDS OF INVITATION,	ib.
Thanks,	209
To ask a Letter of Introduction,	ib.
To Tradespeople,	ib.
Receipts,	210
Promissory Note,	ib.

COMPARATIVE TABLES of the Coins, Weights, and Measures of England and France,	211
--	-----

TABLES OF EXCHANGE,	215
--------------------------------------	-----

